

# MECHANIC MOTOR VEHICLE

NSQF LEVEL - 5

1<sup>st</sup> YEAR

---

**TRADE PRACTICAL**

---

SECTOR: Automotive



Directorate General of Training

DIRECTORATE GENERAL OF TRAINING  
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT & ENTREPRENEURSHIP  
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA



**NATIONAL INSTRUCTIONAL  
MEDIA INSTITUTE, CHENNAI**

---

Post Box No. 3142, CTI Campus, Guindy, Chennai - 600 032

**Sector : Automotive**

**Duration : 2 Years**

**Trade : Mechanic Motor Vehicle - 1<sup>st</sup> Year - Trade Practical - NSQF (Level - 5)**

**Developed & Published by**



**National Instructional Media Institute**

Post Box No. 3142

Guindy, Chennai - 600032

India

Email - chennai - nimi@nic.in

Website: www. nimi.gov.in

**Printed in India at**

National Instructional Media Institute

Post Box No. 3142

Guindy,

Chennai - 600032

First Edition: November 2019

**Rs. 245/-**



## FOREWORD

The Government of India has set an ambitious target of imparting skills to 30 crores people, one out of every four Indians, by 2020 to help them secure jobs as part of the National Skills Development Policy. Industrial Training Institutes (ITIs) play a vital role in this process especially in terms of providing skilled manpower. Keeping this in mind, and for providing the current industry relevant skill training to Trainees, ITI syllabus has been recently updated with the help of Mentor Councils comprising of various stakeholder's viz. Industries, Entrepreneurs, Academicians and representatives from ITIs.

National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI), Chennai has come up with instructional material to suit the revised curriculum for **Mechanic Motor Vehicle - 1<sup>st</sup> Year - Trade Practical - NSQF (LEVEL - 5)** in **Automotive** sector under yearly Pattern required for ITIs and related institutions imparting skill development. The NSQF (LEVEL- 5) will help the trainees to get an international equivalency standard where their skill proficiency and competency will be duly recognized across the globe and this will also increase the scope of recognition of prior learning. NSQF (LEVEL - 5) trainees will also get the opportunities to promote life long learning and skill development. I have no doubt that with NSQF (LEVEL - 5) the trainers and trainees of ITIs, and all stakeholders will derive maximum benefits from these IMPs and that NIMI's effort will go a long way in improving the quality of Vocational training in the country.

The Executive Director & Staff of NIMI and members of Media Development Committee deserve appreciation for their contribution in bringing out this publication.

Jai Hind

**RAJESH AGGARWAL**

Director General / Addl. Secretary,  
Ministry of Skill Development & Entrepreneurship,  
Government of India.

New Delhi - 110 001

## **PREFACE**

The National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI) was established in 1986 at Chennai by then Directorate General of Employment and Training (D.G.E & T), Ministry of Labour and Employment, (now under Ministry of Skill Development and Entrepreneurship) Government of India, with technical assistance from the Govt. of the Federal Republic of Germany. The prime objective of this institute is to develop and provide instructional materials for various trades as per the prescribed syllabi (NSQF) under the Craftsman and Apprenticeship Training Schemes.

The instructional materials are created keeping in mind, the main objective of Vocational Training under NCVT/NAC in India, which is to help an individual to master skills to do a job. The instructional materials are generated in the form of Instructional Media Packages (IMPs). An IMP consists of Theory book, Practical book, Test and Assignment book, Instructor Guide, Audio Visual Aid (Wall charts and Transparencies) and other support materials.

The trade practical book consists of series of exercises to be completed by the trainees in the workshop. These exercises are designed to ensure that all the skills in the prescribed syllabus are covered. The trade theory book provides related theoretical knowledge required to enable the trainee to do a job. The test and assignments will enable the instructor to give assignments for the evaluation of the performance of a trainee. The wall charts and transparencies are unique, as they not only help the instructor to effectively present a topic but also help him to assess the trainee's understanding. The instructor guide enables the instructor to plan his schedule of instruction, plan the raw material requirements, day to day lessons and demonstrations.

IMPs also deals with the complex skills required to be developed for effective team work. Necessary care has also been taken to include important skill areas of allied trades as prescribed in the syllabus.

The availability of a complete Instructional Media Package in an institute helps both the trainer and management to impart effective training.

The IMPs are the outcome of collective efforts of the staff members of NIMI and the members of the Media Development Committees specially drawn from Public and Private sector industries, various training institutes under the Directorate General of Training (DGT), Government and Private ITIs.

NIMI would like to take this opportunity to convey sincere thanks to the Directors of Employment & Training of various State Governments, Training Departments of Industries both in the Public and Private sectors, Officers of DGT and DGT field institutes, proof readers, individual media developers and coordinators, but for whose active support NIMI would not have been able to bring out this materials.

**Chennai - 600 032**

**R. P. DHINGRA  
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR**

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI) sincerely acknowledges with thanks for the co-operation and contribution extended by the following Media Developers and their sponsoring organisations to bring out this Instructional Material (**Trade Practical**) for the trade of **Mechanic Motor Vehicle - 1<sup>st</sup> Year - NSQF (LEVEL - 5)** under **Automotive** Sector for ITIs.

### MEDIA DEVELOPMENT COMMITTEE MEMBERS

- |                       |   |   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Shri. K. Thaniyarasu  | - | Principal (i/c),<br>Govt. I.T.I, Viralmalai                     |
| Shri. W. Nirmal Kumar | - | Training Officer,<br>Govt. I.T.I, Manikandam.                   |
| Shri. R. Rajesh Kanna | - | Training Officer,<br>NSTI, Chennai.                             |
| Shri. A. Duraichamy   | - | Asst. Training Officer,<br>Govt. I.T.I, Coonoor.                |
| Shri. S. Devakumar    | - | Principal (Retd.),<br>Govt. I.T.I, Nettapakkam,<br>Pondicherry. |
| Shri. A. Thangavelu   | - | Asst. Training Officer (Retd.)<br>Govt. I.T.I, Chennai.         |

### NIMI CO-ORDINATORS

- |                         |   |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| Shri. K. Srinivasa Rao  | - | Joint Director<br>NIMI, Chennai - 32.     |
| Shri. S. Gopalakrishnan | - | Assistant Manager,<br>NIMI, Chennai - 32. |

NIMI records its appreciation for the Data Entry, CAD, DTP operators for their excellent and devoted services in the process of development of this Instructional Material.

NIMI also acknowledges with thanks the invaluable efforts rendered by all other NIMI staff who have contributed towards the development of this Instructional Material.

NIMI is also grateful to everyone who has directly or indirectly helped in developing this Instructional Material.

## INTRODUCTION

This manual for trade practical is intended for use in the ITI workshop. It consists of a series of practical exercises that are to be completed by the trainees during the **first year** course of the trade **Mechanic Motor Vehicle under Automotive Sector. It is National Skills Qualifications Framework NSQF (LEVEL- 5)**, supplemented and supported by instructions/information to assist the trainees in performing the exercise. The exercises are designed to ensure that all the skills prescribed in the syllabus are covered including the allied trades. The syllabus is divided into fourteen modules. The allocation of time for the various modules is given below:

Module 1 - Workshop Safety Practice	05 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 2 - Engineering Measurement	16 Exercises	125 Hrs
Module 3 - Basic Workshop Practice	03 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 4 - Basic Electrical and Electronics	06 Exercises	125 Hrs
Module 5 - Hydraulic and Pneumatic	03 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 6 - Classification of Vehicles and Engines	09 Exercises	125 Hrs
Module 7 - Engine Components	21 Exercises	200 Hrs
Module 8 - Cooling and Lubrication System	07 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 9 - Intake and Exhaust System	04 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 10 - Fuel System	04 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 11 - Engine Performance Testing	06 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 12 - Emission Control System	04 Exercises	025 Hrs
Module 13 - Charging and Starting System	02 Exercises	050 Hrs
Module 14 - Troubleshooting	01 Exercises	025 Hrs
Total	91 Exercises	1025 Hrs

The syllabus and the content in the modules are interlinked. It is necessary to interpolate the exercises in the modules to form a proper teaching and learning sequence. The sequence of instruction is given in the schedule of instruction which is incorporated in the Instructor's Guide. With 25 practical hours a week of 5 working days 100 hours of practical per month is available.

### Contents of Trade Practical

The procedure for working through the 91 exercises for the 1<sup>st</sup> Year with the specific objectives as the learning outcome comes at the end of each exercise is given in this book.

## CONTENTS

Exercise No.	Title of the Exercise	Page No.
	<b>Module 1 : Workshop Safety Practice</b>	
1.1.01	Visit various sections and draw the layout of ITI	1
1.1.02	Practice on cleaning workshop and machineries	3
1.1.03	Perform first aid treatment and fire safety	5
1.1.04	Identify the workshop machineries and equipments	9
1.1.05	Determine the energy consumption of electrical components in I.T.I	11
	<b>Module 2 : Engineering Measurement</b>	
1.2.06	Mark parallel lines by using surface gauge	14
1.2.07	Draw lines & angles on metallic surface by marking aids/tools	16
1.2.08	Measure wheel base by using tape and plumb bob	19
1.2.09	Measure valve spring tension	21
1.2.10	Remove wheel nut by using impact wrench	22
1.2.11	Practice on handling general workshop tools	23
1.2.12	Measure outside diameter of cam and crankshaft, valve stem and piston by micrometer	34
1.2.13	Measure the height of oil pump rotor by using depth micrometer	37
1.2.14	Measure the valve spring free length	38
1.2.15	Measure cylinder bore diameter by using telescopic gauge	39
1.2.16	Measure cylinder bore taper and ovality by dial bore gauge	41
1.2.17	Measure wear on crankshaft and valve guide by using dial indicator	42
1.2.18	Check engine head flatness by using straight edge with feeler gauge	44
1.2.19	Check piston ring end gap and piston to cylinder wall clearance by using feeler gauge	45
1.2.20	Perform engine vacuum test by using vacuum gauge	46
1.2.21	Set the recommended tyre pressure	47
	<b>Module 3 : Basic Workshop Practice</b>	
1.3.22	Practice on marking and drilling in metal surface	48
1.3.23	Cut internal threads in blind hole by using tap	53
1.3.24	Cut external threads by using dies	54
	<b>Module 4 : Basic Electrical and Electronics</b>	
1.4.25	Practice on crimping and soldering of wires	58
1.4.26	Verify Ohm's Law	64
1.4.27	Perform cleaning and topping up of a lead acid battery	67
1.4.28	Charge and test the lead acid battery	69
1.4.29	Test diodes function	73
1.4.30	Test transistors function	76
	<b>Module 5 : Hydraulic and Pneumatic</b>	
1.5.31	Identify hydraulic clutch components	78
1.5.32	Trace hydraulic circuit	79
1.5.33	Identify air brake components	82

## CONTENTS

Exercise No.	Title of the Exercise	Page No.
	<b>Module 6 : Classification of Vehicle and Engine</b>	
1.6.34	Identify different types of vehicle	83
1.6.35	Read and interpret vehicle specification data	84
1.6.36	Identify Vehicle Information Number (VIN)	86
1.6.37	Identify the parts of diesel engine	91
1.6.38	Identify the parts of petrol engine	92
1.6.39	Practice on starting and stopping of engine	94
1.6.40	Check the performance of running engine by observing the dash board meters / warning lights	95
1.6.41	Practice identification of difference in petrol and diesel engine components	97
1.6.42	Practice dismantling of diesel engine	98
	<b>Module 7 : Engine Components</b>	
1.7.43	Perform overhauling of cylinder head	100
1.7.44	Remove valves from the cylinder head	102
1.7.45	Check valve seat and valve guide	105
1.7.46	Check valve spring and rocker arm assembly	107
1.7.47	Refit the cylinder head assembly, manifolds and adjust valve tappet clearance	108
1.7.48	Overhaul the piston and connecting rod assembly	110
1.7.49	Remove piston and connecting rod assembly from the engine block	112
1.7.50	Check piston ring side clearance in groove by feeler gauge and measure the piston diameter by micrometer	114
1.7.51	Measure the piston ring eng gap clearance between piston & liner, clearance between crankpin & C. R. big and bearing	115
1.7.52	Check the connecting rod for bend and twist	117
1.7.53	Overhaul the crankshaft	118
1.7.54	Remove the crankshaft and check oil retainer & thrust surfaces	122
1.7.55	Measure the crankshaft taper and ovality	126
1.7.56	Check flywheel mounting and spigot bearing	128
1.7.57	Check the vibration damper and camshaft	130
1.7.58	Inspect camshaft and measure cam lobe lift	132
1.7.59	Assemble the crankshaft in block	133
1.7.60	Clean and check cylinder block	135
1.7.61	Check cylinder block surface	136
1.7.62	Clean oil passages and descale water passages	137
1.7.63	Remove and refit new liners	139
	<b>Module 8 : Cooling and Lubrication system</b>	
1.8.64	Practice on checking and topup coolant	141
1.8.65	Remove and replace the hoses and radiator	142
1.8.66	Check the radiator pressure cap and thermostat valve	144



## CONTENTS

Exercise No.	Title of the Exercise	Page No.
1.8.67	Perform cleaning the radiator by reverse flushing	146
1.8.68	Overhaul the water pump	147
1.8.69	Replace oil filter and change the engine oil	149
1.8.70	Overhaul oil pump, oil pipe line, oil cooler, air cleaner and adjust oil pressure relief valve	150
	<b>Module 9 : Intake and Exhaust System</b>	
1.9.71	Overhaul the turbocharger	155
1.9.72	Check the exhaust system in engine	159
1.9.73	Remove and refit exhaust manifold	160
1.9.74	Remove and refit catalytic converter	162
	<b>Module 10 : Fuel System</b>	
1.10.75	Test the MPFI components and its sensors	163
1.10.76	Overhaul the feed pump	167
1.10.77	Remove and replace the fuel filter and bleed the system	169
1.10.78	Remove and refit the F.I.P	171
	<b>Module 11 : Engine Performance Testing</b>	
1.11.79	Reassemble the diesel engine parts	173
1.11.80	Test the cylinder compression and replace cam belt	178
1.11.81	Start the engine and adjust idling speed in pneumatic governor	181
1.11.82	Test the performance of engine with off load	182
1.11.83	Start the engine and adjust idling speed in mechanical governor	183
1.11.84	Check performance for missing cylinder and rectify	184
	<b>Module 12 : Emission Control System</b>	
1.12.85	Perform smoke test in diesel engine	186
1.12.86	Check and clean PCV valve	189
1.12.87	Inspect the EVAP canister purge system by scan tool	191
1.12.88	Remove and refit EGR valve	193
	<b>Module 13 : Charging and Starting System</b>	
1.13.89	Overhaul and test alternator	195
1.13.90	Overhaul and test starter motor	200
	<b>Module 14 : Troubleshooting</b>	
1.14.91	Perform troubleshooting in diesel engine	208
	<b>Project Work &amp; Industrial Visit</b>	<b>217</b>

## **ASSESSABLE / LEARNING OUTCOME**

On completion of this book you shall be able to

- **Recognize & comply with safe working practices, environment regulation and housekeeping**
- **Check & perform measuring & marking by using various measuring & marking tools (Vernier caliper, Micrometer, Telescope gauges, Dial bore gauges, Dial Indicators, Straight edge, feeler gauge, thread pitch gauge, vacuum gauge, tier pressure gauge)**
- **Plan & perform basic fastening & fitting operation by using correct hand tools, machine tools & equipments**
- **Trace and test all Electrical & Electronic components & circuits and assemble circuit to ensure functionality of system.**
- **Join components by using Arc & Gas welding**
- **Check & Interpret vehicle specification data and VIN & select and operate various service station equipments.**
- **Dismantle & assemble of engine form vehicle (LMV/HMV) along with other accessories.**
- **Overhaul engine and check functionality**
- **Trace, test & repair cooling and lubrication system of engine**
- **Trace & test intake and exhaust system of engine**
- **Service fuel system and check proper functionality**
- **Test engine performance and set idling speed.**
- **Monitor emission of vehicle and execute different operation to obtain optimum pollution as per emission norms**
- **Carryout overhauling of alternator and starter motor**
- **Diagnose & rectify the defects in LMV/HMV to ensure functionality of vehicle**

# SYLLABUS FOR MECHANIC MOTOR VEHICLE TRADE

## FIRST YEAR

Week No.	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
1-3	Recognize & comply with safe working practices, environment regulation and housekeeping.	<p>1. Familiarisation with institute, Job opportunities in the automobile sector, Machinery used in Trade. Types of work done by the students in the shop floor. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>2. Importance of maintenance and cleanliness of Workshop. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>3. Interaction with health centre and fire service station to provide demo on First aid and Fire safety, Use of fire extinguishers.(10 Hrs)</p> <p>4. Practice operation of different workshop equipments. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>5. Demonstrate Energy saving Tips of ITI electricity Usage(10 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Admission &amp; introduction to the trade:</b></p> <p>Introduction to the Course duration, course content, study of the syllabus. General rule pertaining to the Institute, facilities available – Hostel, Recreation, Medical and Library working hours and time table</p> <p><b>Occupational Safety &amp; Health</b></p> <p>Importance of Safety and general Precautions to be observed in the shop. Basic first aid, safety signs – For Danger, Warning, caution &amp; personal safety message. Safe handling of Fuel Spillage, Fire extinguishers used for different types of fire. Safe disposal of toxic dust, safe handling and Periodic testing of lifting equipment, Authorization of Moving &amp; road testing vehicles.</p> <p><b>Energy Conservation</b> - Definition, Conservation Opportunities (ECOs)-Minor ECos and Medium ECos, Major ECos), Safety disposal of Used engine oil, Electrical safety tips.</p> <p><b>Introduction to road safety and Automotive emissions.</b></p>
3-5	Check & perform Measuring & marking by using various Measuring & Marking tools (Vernier Calliper, Micrometer, Telescope gauges, Dial bore gauges, Dial indicators, straightedge, feeler gauge, thread pitch gauge, vacuum gauge, tire pressure gauge.)	<p>6. Practice using all marking aids, like steel rule with spring callipers, dividers, scribe, punches, Chisel etc. (15 Hrs)</p> <p>7. Layout a work piece- for line, circle, arcs and circles. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>8. Practice to measure a wheel base of a vehicle with measuring tape. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>9. Practice to measure valve spring tension using spring tension tester. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>10. Practice to remove wheel lug nuts with use of an air impact wrench. (15 Hrs)</p> <p>11. Practice on General workshop tools &amp; power tools. (20 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Hand &amp; Power Tools:-</b></p> <p>Marking scheme, Marking material- chalk, Prussian blue. Cleaning tools- Scraper, wire brush, Emery paper, Description, care and use of Surface plates, steel rule, measuring tape, try square. Callipers-inside and outside. surface gauges, scribe, punches-prick punch, centre punch, pin punch, hollow punch, number and letter punch. Chisel-flat, cross-cut. Hammer- ball pein, lump, mallet. Screw drivers-blade screwdriver, Phillips screw driver, Ratchet screwdriver. Allen key, bench vice &amp; C- clamps, Spanners-ring spanner, open end spanner &amp; the combination spanner, universal adjustable open end spanner. Sockets &amp; accessories, Pliers - Combination pliers, multi grip, long nose, flat-nose, Nippers or pincer pliers, Side cutters, Tin snips, Circlips pliers, external circlips pliers. Air impact wrench,</p>

			air ratchet, wrenches - Torque wrenches, pipe wrenches, car jet washers Pipe flaring & cutting tool, pullers-Gear and bearing.
6-7	Check & perform Measuring & marking by using various Measuring & Marking tools (Vernier Calliper, Micrometer, Telescope gauges, Dial bore gauges, Dial indicators, straightedge, feeler gauge, thread pitch gauge, vacuum gauge, tire pressure gauge.)	<p>12. Carryout Measuring practice on Cam height, Camshaft journal dia, crankshaft journal dia, Valve stem dia, piston diameter, and piston pin dia with outside Micrometers. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>13. Carryout Measuring practice on the height of the rotor of an oil pump from the surface of the housing or any other auto component measurement with depth micrometer. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>14. Carryout Measuring practice on valve spring free length. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>15. Carryout Measuring practice on cylinder bore, Connecting rod bore, inside diameter (ID) of a camshaft bearing with Telescope gauges. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>16. Carryout Measuring practice on cylinder bore for taper and out-of-round with Dial bore gauges. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>17. Perform Measuring practice to measure wear on crankshaft end play, crankshaft run out, and valve guide with dial indicator. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>18. Perform Measuring practice to check the flatness of the cylinder head is warped or twisted with straightedge is used with a feeler gauge. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>19. Perform Measuring practice to check the end gap of a piston ring, piston-to-cylinder wall clearance with feeler gauge. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>20. Practice to check engine manifold vacuum with vacuum gauge. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>21. Practice to check the air pressure inside the vehicle tires is maintained at the recommended setting. (5 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Systems of measurement:</b> Description, care &amp; use of - Micrometers- Outside and depth micrometer, Micrometer adjustments, Vernier callipers, Telescope gauges, Dial bore gauges, Dial indicators, straightedge, feeler gauge, thread pitch gauge, vacuum gauge, tire pressure gauge.</p>
8-9	Plan & perform basic fastening & fitting operation by using correct hand tools, Machine tools & equipments.	<p>22. Practice on Marking and Drilling clear and Blind Holes, Sharpening of Twist Drills Safety precautions to be observed while using a drilling machine. (20 Hrs)</p> <p>23. Practice on Tapping a Clear and Blind Hole, Selection of tap drill Size, use of Lubrication, Use of stud extractor. (20 Hrs)</p> <p>24. Practice Cutting Threads on a Bolt/ Stud. Adjustment of two piece Die, Reaming a hole/ Bush to suit the given pin/ shaft, scraping a given machined surface. (10 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Drilling machine</b> - Description and study of Bench type Drilling machine, Portable electrical Drilling machine, drill holding devices, Work Holding devices, Drill bits.</p> <p><b>Taps and Dies:</b> Hand Taps and wrenches, Calculation of Tap drill sizes for metric and inch taps. Different type of Die and Die stock. Screw extractors.</p>

			<b>Hand Reamers</b> – Different Type of hand reamers, Drill size for reaming, Lapping, Lapping abrasives, type of Laps.
10-11	Trace and Test all Electrical & Electronic components & circuits and assemble circuit to ensure functionality of system.	25. Practice in joining wires using soldering Iron, Construction of simple electrical circuits, measuring of current, voltage and resistance using digital multimeter, practice continuity test for fuses, jumper wires, fusible links, and circuit breakers. (50 Hrs)	<b>Basic electricity:</b> Electricity principles, Ground connections, Ohm's law, Voltage, Current, Resistance, Power, Energy. Voltmeter, ammeter, Ohmmeter Multimeter, Conductors & insulators, Wires, Shielding, Length vs. resistance, Resistor ratings
12	-do-	26. Diagnose series, parallel, series-parallel circuits using Ohm's law, Check electrical circuit with a test lamp, perform voltage drop test in circuits using multimeter, measure current flow using multimeter / ammeter, use of service manual wiring diagram for troubleshooting. (25 Hrs)	Fuses & circuit breakers, Ballast resistor, Stripping wire insulation, cable colour codes and sizes, Resistors in Series circuits, Parallel circuits and Series-parallel circuits, Electrostatic effects, Capacitors and its applications, Capacitors in series and parallel.
13-14	-do-	27. Carryout Cleaning and topping up of a lead acid battery, Testing battery with hydrometer, (15 Hrs)  28. Connect battery to a charger for battery charging, Inspecting & testing a battery after charging, Measure and Diagnose the cause(s) of excessive Key-off battery drain (parasitic draw) and do corrective action. Testing of relay and solenoids and its circuit. (20 Hrs).  29. Test diode for functionality. (10 Hrs). 30. Practice checking Transistors. (5 Hrs)	Description of Chemical effects, Batteries & cells, Lead acid batteries & Stay Maintenance Free (SMF) batteries, Magnetic effects, Heating effects, Thermo-electric energy, Thermistors, Thermo couples, Electrochemical energy, Photo-voltaic energy, Piezo-electric energy, Electromagnetic induction, Relays, Solenoids, Primary & Secondary windings, Transformers, stator and rotor coils.  <b>Basic electronics:</b> Description of Semiconductors, Solid state devices- Diodes, Transistors, Thyristors, Uni Junction Transistors ( UJT), MetalOxide Field Effect Transistors (MOSFETs).
15-16	-do-	31. Identify Hydraulic and pneumatic components used in vehicle. (20 Hrs)  32. Trace hydraulic circuit on hydraulic jack, hydraulic power steering, and Brake circuit. (20 Hrs)  33. Identify components in Air brake systems. (10 Hrs)	Introduction to Hydraulics & Pneumatics: - Definition of Pascal law, pressure, Force, viscosity. Description, symbols and application in automobile of Gear pump- Internal & External, single acting, double acting & Double ended cylinder; Directional control valves-2/2, 3/2, 4/2, 4/3 way valve, Pressure relief valve, Non return valve, Flow control valve used in automobile. Pneumatic Symbols, Description and function of air Reciprocating Compressor. Function of Air service unit (FRL-Filter, Regulator & Lubricator

17-18	<p>Check &amp; Interpret Vehicle Specification data and VIN.</p> <p>Select &amp; operate various Service Station Equipments.</p>	<p>34. Carry out Identification of different type of Vehicle. (20 Hrs)</p> <p>35. Perform Demonstration of vehicle specification data (20 Hrs)</p> <p>36. Perform Identification of vehicle information Number (VIN). Demonstration of Garage, Service station equipments. - Vehicle hoists – Two post and four post hoist, Engine hoists, Jacks, Stands. (10 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Auto Industry</b> - History, leading manufacturers, development in automobile industry, trends, new product. Brief about Ministry of Road transport &amp; Highways, The Automotive Research Association of India (ARAI), National Automotive Testing and R&amp;D Infrastructure Project (NATRIP), &amp; Automobile Association.</p> <p><b>Definition:</b> - Classification of vehicles on the basis of load as per central motor vehicle rule, wheels, final drive, and fuel used, axles, position of engine and steering transmission, body and load. Brief description and uses of Vehicle hoists – Two post and four post hoist, Engine hoists, Jacks, Stands.</p>
19-21	<p>Dismantle &amp; assemble of Engine from vehicle (LMV/HMV) along with other accessories.</p>	<p>37. Identify parts in a Diesel engine of LMV/HMV. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>38. Identify parts in a Petrol engine of LMV/HMV. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>39. Practice on starting and stopping of engines. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>40. Observe and report the reading of Tachometer, Odometer, temp and Fuel gauge under ideal and on load condition. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>41. Practice identification of difference in components of Petrol and Diesel Engines. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>42. Practice on dismantling engine of LMV/HMV as per procedure. (25 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Introduction to Engine:</b> Description of internal &amp; external combustion engines, Classification of IC engines, Principle &amp; working of 2&amp;4- stroke diesel engine (Compression ignition Engine (C.I)), Principle of Spark Ignition Engine (SI), differentiate between 2-stroke and 4 stroke, C.I engine and S.I Engine, Direct injection and Indirect injection, Technical terms used in engine, Engine specification. Study of various gauges/instrument on a dash board of a vehicle-Speedometer, Tachometer, Odometer and Fuel gauge, and Indicators such as gearshift position, Seat belt warning light, Parking-brake-engagement warning light and an Engine malfunction light. Different type of starting and stopping method of Diesel Engine Procedure for dismantling of diesel engine from a vehicle.</p> <p><b>Petrol Engine Basics:</b> 4-stroke spark-ignition engines- Basic 4-stroke principles. Spark-ignition engine components- Basic engine components, Engine cams &amp; camshaft, Engine power transfer, Scavenging, Counter weights, Piston components. Intake &amp; exhaust systems –Electronic fuel injection systems, Exhaust systems. Intake system components, Air cleaners, Carburettor air cleaners, EFI air cleaners, Intake manifolds, Intake air heating. Gasoline Fuel Systems: Description of Gasoline fuel, Gasoline fuel characteristics, Controlling fuel burn, Stoichiometric ratio, Air density, Fuel supply system, Pressure &amp; vacuum.</p>
22-23	<p><b>Project Work/ Industrial Visit</b></p> <p><b>Broad Area:</b></p> <p>a) Simple electrical circuits</p> <p>b) Testing of Battery</p> <p>c) Testing of Ignition Circuit</p> <p>d) Dismantling and assembling of Petrol and Diesel engines.</p>		
24-26	<p><b>Revision</b></p>		

Week No.	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
27 - 28	Overhaul Engine and check functionality	<p>43. Overhauling of cylinder head assembly, Use of service manual for clearance and other parameters, Practice on removing rocker arm assembly manifolds. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>44. Practice on removing the valves and its parts from the cylinder head, cleaning. Inspection of cylinder head and manifold surfaces for warping, cracks and flatness. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>45. Perform Checking valve seats &amp; valve guide – Replacing the valve if necessary check valve overlap. Testing leaks of valve seats for leakage – Dismantle rocker shaft assembly - clean &amp; check rocker shaft-and levers, for wear and cracks and reassemble. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>46. Check valve springs, tappets, push rods, tappet screws and valve stem cap. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>47. Reassemble valve parts in sequence, refit cylinder head and manifold &amp; rocker arm assembly, adjustable valve clearances, starting engine after adjustments. (10 Hrs)</p>	<p><b>Engine Components:</b> Description and Constructional feature of Cylinder head, Importance of Cylinder head design, Type of Petrol and Diesel combustion chambers, Effect on size of Intake &amp; exhaust passages, Head gaskets. Importance of Turbulence</p> <p><b>Valves &amp; Valve Trains-</b> Description and Function of Engine Valves, different types, materials, Type of valve operating mechanism, Importance of Valve seats, and Valve seats inserts in cylinder heads, importance of Valve rotation, Valve stem oil seals, size of Intake valves, Valve trains, Valve-timing diagram, concept of Variable valve timing. Description of Camshafts &amp; drives , Description of Overhead camshaft, importance of Cam lobes, Timing belts &amp; chains, Timing belts &amp; tensioners.</p>
29	-do-	<p>48. Practice Overhauling piston and connecting rod Assembly. Use of service manual for clearance and other parameters(5 Hrs)</p> <p>49. Practice on removing oil sump and oil pump – clean the sump. Practice on removing the big end bearing, connecting rod with the piston. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>50. Practice on removing the piston rings; Dismantle the piston and connecting rod. Check the side clearance of piston rings in the piston groove &amp; lands for wear. Check piston skirt and crown for damage and scuffing, clean oil holes. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>51. Measure -the piston ring close gap in the cylinder, clearance between the piston and the liner, clearance between crank pin and the connecting rod big end bearing. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>52. Check connecting rod for bend and twist. Assemble the piston and connecting rod assembly. (5 Hrs)</p>	<p>Description &amp; functions of different types of pistons, piston rings and piston pins and materials. Used recommended clearances for the rings and its necessity precautions while fitting rings, common troubles and remedy. Compression ratio.</p> <p>Description &amp; function of connecting rod, importance of big-end split obliquely, Materials used for connecting rods big end &amp; main bearings. Shells piston pins and locking methods of piston pins.</p>

30 - 31	-do-	<p>53. Carryout Overhauling of crankshaft by referring service manual for clearance and other parameters(10 Hrs)</p> <p>54. Practice on removing damper pulley, timing gear/timing chain, flywheel, main bearing caps, bearing shells and crankshaft from engine checking oil retainer and thrust surfaces for wear (10 Hrs)</p> <p>55. Measure crank shaft journal for wear, taper and ovality, Checking crankshaft for fillet radii, bend &amp; twist. (5 Hrs)</p>	Description and function of Crank shaft, camshaft, Engine bearings-classification and location – materials used & composition of bearing materials- Shell bearing and their advantages- special bearings material for diesel engine application bearing failure & its causes-care & maintenance. Crank-shaft balancing, Firing order of the engine.
32 - 33	-do-	<p>56. Perform Checking of flywheel and mounting flanges, spigot, bearing. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>57. Check vibration damper for defects, Practice on removing cam shaft from engine block, Check for bend &amp; twist of camshaft. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>58. Perform Inspection of cam lobe, camshaft journals and bearings and measure cam lobe lift. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>59. Practice Fixing bearing inserts in cylinder block &amp; cap check nip and spread clearance &amp; oil holes &amp; locating lugs fix crank shaft on block-torque bolts - check end play remove shaft - check seating, repeat similarly for connecting rod and Check seating and refit. (20 Hrs)</p>	Description and function of the fly wheel and vibration damper. Crank case & oil pump, gears timing mark, Chain sprockets, chain tensioner etc. Function of clutch & coupling units attached to flywheel.
34 - 35	-do-	<p>60. Practice Cleaning and Checking of cylinder blocks. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>61. Check cylinder blocks Surface flatness visually. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>62. Measure cylinder bore for taper &amp; ovality, clean oil gallery passage and oil pipe line, Bore - descale water passages. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>63. Practice Removing cylinder liners from scrap cylinder block, practice in measuring and refitting new liners as per maker's recommendations precautions while fitting new liners. (20 Hrs)</p>	Description of Cylinder block, Cylinder block construction, and Different type of Cylinder sleeves (liner).
36 - 37	Trace, Test & Repair Cooling and Lubrication System of engine.	<p>64. Practice on Checking &amp; Top up coolant, (5 Hrs)</p> <p>65. Drain &amp; refill coolant, Checking / replacing a coolant hose, Testing cooling system pressure, Practice on Removing &amp; replacing radiator/ thermostat. (5 Hrs)</p>	Need for Cooling systems, Heat transfer method, Boiling point & pressure, Centrifugal force, Vehicle coolant properties and recommended change of interval, Different type of cooling systems, Basic cooling system components-



		<p>66. Inspect the radiator pressure cap, testing of thermostat. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>67. Perform Cleaning &amp; reverse flushing. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>68. Carryout overhauling water pump and refitting. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>69. Practice on Checking engine oil, Draining engine oil, Replacing oil filter, Refilling engine oil. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>70. Carryout Overhauling of oil pump, oil coolers, air cleaners and air filters and adjust oil pressure relief valves, repairs to oil flow pipe lines and unions if necessary. (10 Hrs)</p>	<p>Radiator, Coolant hoses, Water pump, Cooling system thermostat, Cooling fans, Temperature indicators, Radiator pressure cap, Recovery system, Thermo-switch.</p> <p>Need for lubrication system, Functions of oil, Viscosity and its grade as per SAE , Oil additives, Synthetic oils, The lubrication system, Splash system, Pressure system, Corrosion/noise reduction in the lubrication system. Lubrication system components - Description and function of Sump, Oil collection pan, Oil tank, Pickup tube, different type of Oil pump &amp; Oil filters Oil pressure relief valve, Spurt holes &amp; galleries, Oil indicators, Oil cooler.</p>
38 - 39	Trace & Test Intake and Exhaust system of engine.	<p>71. Carryout Dismantling &amp; assembling of turbocharger check for axial clearance as per service manual. (15 Hrs)</p> <p>72. Check Exhaust system for rubber mounting for damage, deterioration and out of position; for leakage, loose connection, dent and damage. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>73. Practice on Exhaust manifold removal and installation. (13 Hrs)</p> <p>74. Practice on Catalytic converter removal and installation. (12 Hrs)</p>	<p>Intake system components- Description and function of Air cleaners, Different type air cleaner, Description of Intake manifolds and material,</p> <p>Exhaust system components- Description and function of Exhaust manifold, Exhaust pipe, Extractors, Mufflers- Reactive, absorptive, Combination., Catalytic converters, Flexible connections, Ceramic coatings, Back-pressure, Electronic mufflers.</p>
40 - 41	Service Fuel System and check proper functionality	<p>75. Practice Testing of MPFI components and replacement if necessary. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>76. Check delivery from fuel Pump. Replacing a fuel filter. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>77. Bleed air from the fuel lines, Servicing primary &amp; secondary filters. (15 Hrs)</p> <p>78. Remove a fuel injection pump from an engine-refit the pump to the engine re- set timing - fill lubricating-oil start and adjust slow speed of the engine. (15 Hrs)</p>	<p>Diesel Fuel Systems- Description and function of Diesel fuel injection, fuel characteristics, concept of Quiet diesel technology &amp; Clean diesel technology.</p> <p>Diesel fuel system components – Description and function of Diesel tanks &amp; lines, Diesel fuel filters, water separator, Lift pump, Plunger pump, Priming pump,</p> <p>Inline injection pump, Distributor-type injection pump, Diesel injectors, Glow plugs, Cummins &amp; Detroit Diesel injection. Electronic Diesel control- Electronic Diesel control systems, Common Rail Diesel Injection (CRDI) system, Hydraulically actuated electronically controlled unit injector (HEUI) diesel injection system. Sensors, actuators and ECU (Electronic Control Unit) used in Diesel Engines.</p>

42 - 43	Test Engine Performance and set idling speed.	<p>79. Reassemble all parts of engine in correct Sequence and torque all bolts and nuts as per workshop manual of the engine. (10 Hrs)</p> <p>80. Perform Engine component assembly procedures- Testing cylinder compression, checking idle speed, Removing &amp; replacing a cam belt, Inspecting &amp; adjusting an engine drive belt, Replacing an engine drive belt. (15 Hrs)</p> <p>81. Practice on Start engine adjust idling speed and damping device in pneumatic governor and venture control unit checking (5 Hrs)</p> <p>82. Test Performance of engine with off load adjusting timings. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>83. Start engine- adjusting idle speed of the engine fitted with mechanical governor checking- high speed operation of the engine. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>84. Check performance for missing cylinder by isolating defective injectors and test-dismantle and replace defective parts and reassemble and refit back to the engine (10 Hrs)</p>	Engine assembly procedure with aid of special tools and gauges used for engine assembling. Introduction to Gas Turbine, Comparison of single and two stage turbine engine, Different between gas turbine and Diesel Engine.
44	Monitor emission of vehicle and execute different operation to obtain optimum pollution as per emission norms.	<p>85. Practice Monitoring emissions procedures by use of Engine gas analyser or Diesel smoke meter. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>86. Checking &amp; cleaning a Positive crank case ventilation (PCV) valve. Obtaining &amp; interpreting scan tool data. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>87. Perform Inspection of EVAP canister purge system by use of scan Tool. (5 Hrs)</p> <p>88. Perform EGR /SCR Valve Removal and installation for inspection. (10Hrs)</p>	<p>Emission Control:- Vehicle emissions</p> <p>Standards- Euro and Bhart II, III, IV, V Sources of emission, Combustion, Combustion chamber design. Types of emissions: Characteristics and Effect of Hydrocarbons, Hydrocarbons in exhaust gases, Oxides of nitrogen, Particulates, Carbon monoxide, Carbon dioxide, Sulphur content in fuels Description of Evaporation emission control, Catalytic conversion, Closed loop, Crankcase emission control, Exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) valve, , Controlling air-fuel ratios, Charcoal storage devices, Diesel particulate filter (DPF). Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR), EGR VS SCR</p>

45-46	C a r r y o u t overhauling of Alternator and Starter Motor.	89. Practice on removing alternator from vehicle dismantling, cleaning checking for defects, assembling and testing for motoring action of alternator & fitting to vehicles. (25 Hrs)  90. Practice on removing starter motor Vehicle and overhauling the starter motor, testing of starter motor (25 Hrs)	Description .of charging circuit operation of alternators, regulator unit, ignition warning lamp-troubles and remedy in charging system. Description of starter motor circuit, Constructional details of starter motor solenoid switches, common troubles and remedy in starter circuit.
47	Diagnose & rectify the defects in LMV/ HMV to ensure functionality of vehicle.	91. Practice on troubleshooting in LMV/HMV for Engine Not starting – Mechanical & Electrical causes, High fuel consumption, Engine overheating, Low Power Generation, Excessive oil consumption, Low/High Engine Oil Pressure, Engine Noise. (25 Hrs)	<b>Troubleshooting:</b> Causes and remedy for  Engine Not starting – Mechanical &  Electrical causes, High fuel consumption, Engine overheating, Low Power Generation, Excessive oil consumption, Low/High Engine Oil Pressure, Engine Noise.
48-49	<b>Project Work/ Industrial Visit: -</b> Broad Area: a) Testing of engine after assembling. b) Intake and Exhaust System. c) Emission control d) Charging system e) Vehicle Troubleshooting		
50-51	<b>Revision</b>		
52	<b>Examination</b>		

**Note:**

- 1 Some of the sample project works (indicative only) are given at the mid and end of each year.
- 2 Instructor may design their own project and inputs from local industry may be taken for designing such new project.
- 3 The project should broadly cover maximum skills in the trade and must involve some problem-solving skill. Emphasis should be on Teamwork: Knowing the power of synergy / collaboration, Work to be assigned in group (Group of at least 4 trainees). The group should demonstrate Planning, Execution, Contribution and application of Learning. They need to submit project report.
- 4 If the instructor feels that for execution of specific project more time is required, then he may plan accordingly in appropriate time during the execution of normal trade practical.
- 5 More emphasis to be given on video/real-life pictures during theoretical classes. Some real-life pictures/videos of both conventional & CNC turning operation, production of different components, turning of complex job, etc., may shown to the trainees to give a feel of industry and their future assignment



### Visit various sections and draw layout of ITI

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- make a list of trades, staff name, designation during your institute visit
- note down important telephone numbers like your own ITI, police station, fire station, hospital, railway station, bus stand etc. and their distance from your ITI.
- draw the layout sketch of your ITI indicating various sections
- note down the name of machineries used in MMV trade
- note down the list of job opportunities in automobile sector
- note down the types of work done in trade.

#### Requirements

##### Equipments

- Safety signs Chart
- I.T.I layout chart

### PROCEDURE

**TASK 1: Visit the various section of ITI and acquaint with the staff members and list the trades.**

**Instructor will lead the new recruits (students) to various section of ITI and introduced to staffs.**

- 1 Collect information like the designation of staff member, their name.
- 2 Identify the section of ITI and list the trade in which training is given.

**Table 1**

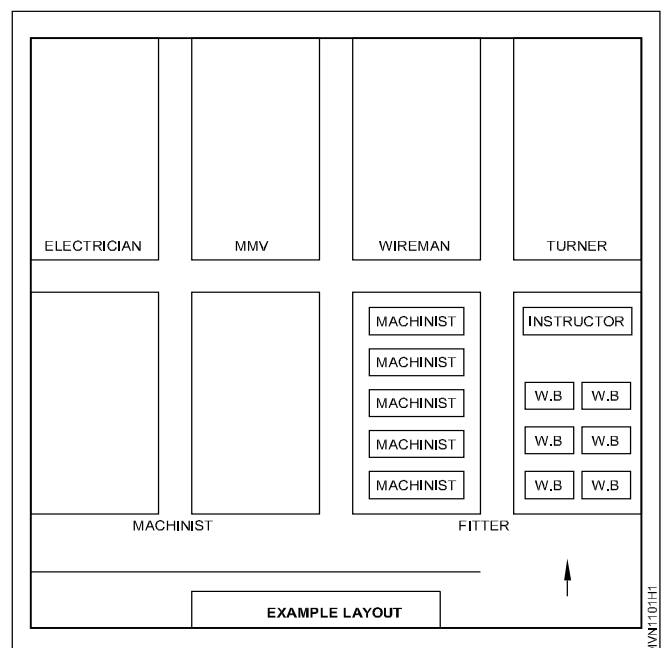
Sl. No	Trade Name

**TASK 2: Location of your ITI.**

- 1 Identify the location of ITI with respect to railway station and bus stand and list of bus route numbers which play near the ITI.
- 2 Collect the telephone numbers of ITI office, nearest hospital, police station and fire station.

**TASK 3 : Draw the layout of your section of the ITI**

- 1 Draw the plan of the section to the suitable scale in a separate sheet of paper. (A4 Size)
- 2 Take the length and the breadth measurements of a machine foundations, work benches, panels, wiring cubicles, doors windows, furniture etc.
- 3 Draw the layout of the machines work benches panels and furniture etc. The section plan should be same scale as in step 1 as per the actual placement of the machine foundation, panels, furniture work benches etc.



**TASK 4: List the job opportunities in Automobile sector**

- 1 List the leading automobile Industries within the country.
- 2 List the automobile ancillary industries.
- 3 List automobile service workshop in your locality
- 4 List the automobile repair garage by self - employed.
- 5 List the driving school in your locality.
- 6 Prepare the list of automobile training institution for in your locality.

— — — — —

**TASK 5: Types of work done**

Sl.No	Jobs	Work done	Remark
1	Electrical system	Dynamo	
2	Lubrication system		
3	Cooling system		
4	Brake system		
5	Steering system		
6	Transmission system		

— — — — —

**TASK 6: List the machineries used in trade**

S. No.	Name of the Machine	Purpose of Machine	Number of machines
1.	Air Compressor		
2.	Car Washer		

— — — — —

**Practice on cleaning workshop and machineries**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- obey safety instruction and use personal protective equipments (PPE)
- maintain tools, instruments and equipments.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 Set.	• Lub oil	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Detergents	- as reqd.
• List of workshop equipments	- as given.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Waste bins	- as reqd.		

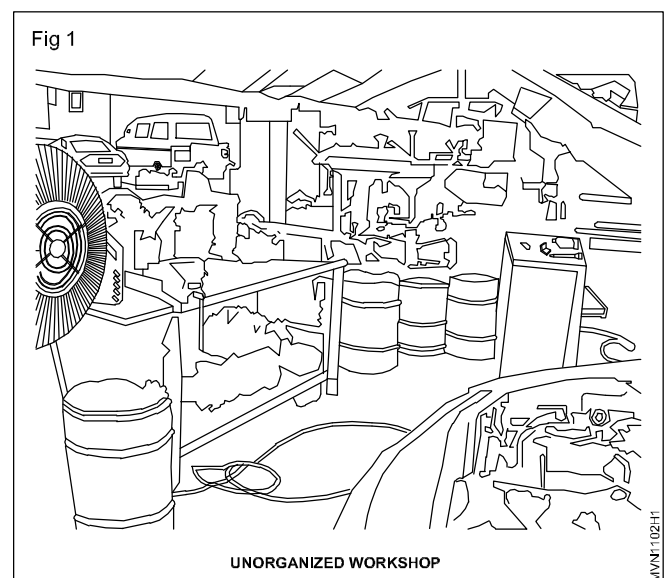
**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Safety instructions and personal protective equipments**

- 1 Some cleaning agents are toxic. Refer to the information about handling use and storage of chemicals that may be hazardous, follow any recommendations made by the supplier before using it.
- 2 Do not use flammable cleaners or water on electrical equipment.
- 3 Make sure designated walkways are kept clear of any obstructions.
- 4 Always wear protective clothing and the appropriate safety equipment.
- 5 Make sure that you understand and observe all legislative and personal safety procedures you are carrying out the following tasks. If you are unsure of these procedures are, ask your instructor.

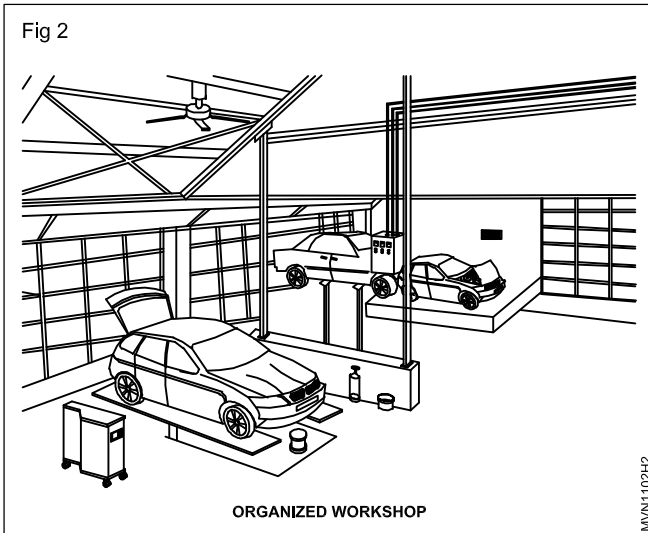
**TASK 2 : Maintenance of tools and equipment**

- 1 Clean tools and equipment work more efficiently. At the end of each working day clean the tools and equipment you used and check them for any damage. If you note any damage, tag the tool as faulty.
- 2 Electrical current can travel over oily or greasy surfaces. Keep electrical power tools free from dust and dirt and make sure they are free of oil and grease.
- 3 All workshop equipment should have a maintenance schedule. Always complete the tasks described on the schedule at the required time. This will help to keep the equipment in safe working order.
- 4 Store commonly used tools in an easy-to-reach location.
- 5 If a tool, or piece of equipment, is too difficult to be returned, it could be left on a workbench or on the floor where it will become a safety hazard. (Fig 1)
- 6 Keep your work area tidy. This will help you work more efficiently and safely. (Fig 2)
- 7 Have a waste bin close to your work area and place any waste in it as soon as possible.



- 8 Dispose of liquid and solid waste, such as oils, coolant and worn components, in the correct manner.
- 9 Do not pour solvents or other chemicals into the sewage system. This is both environmentally damaging and illegal.

Fig 2



- 10 Always use chemical gloves when using any cleaning material because excessive exposure to cleaning materials can damage skin.
- 11 Some solvents are flammable. Never use cleaning materials near an open flame or cigarette.
- 12 The fumes from cleaning chemicals can be toxic, so wear appropriate respirator and eye protection wherever you are using these products.

### TASK 3: Cleaning hand tools, jack, power tool and machinery

#### 1 Clean hand tools

Keep your hand tools in good, clean condition with two sets of cabinet. One cabinet should be lint-free to handle precision instruments or components.

The other should be oily to prevent rust and corrosion.

#### 2 Clean floor jacks

Wipe off any oil or grease on the floor jack and check for fluid leaks. If you find any, top up the hydraulic fluid.

Occasionally, apply a few drops of lubricating oil to the wheels and a few drops to the posts of the safety stands.

#### 3 Clean electrical power tools

Keep power tools clean by brushing off any dust and wiping off excess oil or grease with a clean rag.

Inspect any electrical cables for dirt, oil or grease, and for any chafing or exposed wires.

With drills, inspect the chuck and lubricate it occasionally with machine oil.

#### 4 Clean air powered tools

Apply a few drops of oil into the inlet of your air tools every day. Although these tools have no motor, they do need regular lubrication of the internal parts to prevent wear.

#### 5 Clean hoists and heavy machinery

Locate and checklist or maintenance record for each hoist or other major piece of equipment before carrying out cleaning activities.

**Clean operating mechanisms and attachments of excess oil or grease.**



**Perform first aid treatment and fire safety**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **practice and illustrate demo on first aid and fire extinguishers.**

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 Set.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• First aid tool kit	- as reqd.
• Fire extinguisher	- 1 No.	• Blanket	- as reqd.
• Fire proof apparels	- 1 Set.		
• Buckets filled with water	- as reqd.		
• Buckets filled with sand	- as reqd.		

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Prepare the victim to receive artificial respiration**

**Assumption - For easy manageability, Instructor may arrange the trainees in group and ask each group to perform one method of resuscitation.**

- 1 Loosen the tight clothing which may interfere with the victim's breathing.
- 2 Remove any foreign materials or false teeth from his mouth and keep the victim's mouth open.
- 3 Bring the victim safely to the level ground, taking necessary safety measures. (Fig 1)
- 4 Start artificial respiration immediately without delay. Do not waste too much time in loosening the clothes or trying to open the tightly closed mouth.

Fig 1



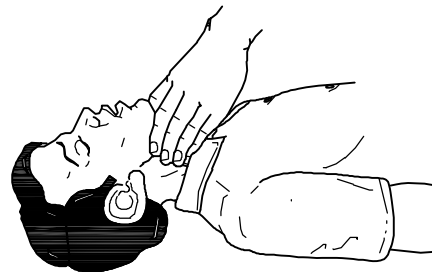
- 5 Avoid violent operations to prevent injury to the internal parts of the victim.
- 6 Send to a doctor immediately.

**TASK 2: Resuscitate a victim who is under cardiac arrest (CPR) cardio pulmonary.**

**In cases where the heart has stopped beating, you must act immediately.**

- 1 Place the palm of one hand on the centre of the lower part of the breastbone, keeping your fingers off the ribs. Cover the palm with your other hand and lock your fingers together.
- 2 Check the cardiac pulse. (Fig 2)
- 3 Move back to the victim's mouth to give two breaths (mouth-to-mouth resuscitation). (Fig 3)
- 4 Continue with another 15 compressions of the heart followed by a further two breaths of mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, and so on, check the pulse at frequent intervals.

Fig 2



- 5 As soon as the heart beat returns, stop the compressions immediately but continue with mouth-to-mouth resuscitation until natural breathing is fully restored.

Fig 3

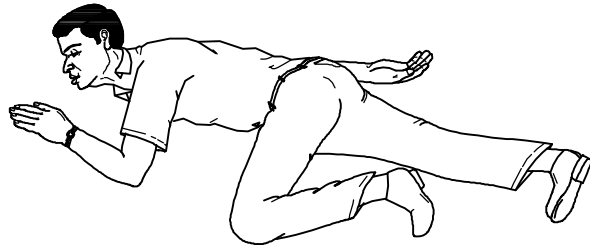


- 11 Place the victim in the recovery position as shown in (Fig 4). Keep him warm and get medical help quickly.

#### Other steps

- 1 Send for a doctor immediately.

Fig 4



- 2 Keep the victim warm with a blanket, wrapped up with hot water bottles or warm bricks; stimulate circulation by stroking the insides of the arms and legs towards the heart.

#### TASK 7: Treatment for bleeding victim (Fig 5 & Fig 6)

- 1 Determine the location of the bleeding.
- 2 Elevate the injured area above the heart if possible.
- 3 Apply direct pressure to the bleeding area with sterile cloth.
- 4 Keep the pressure on for 5 seconds.
- 5 Check to see if the bleeding has stopped if not apply further pressure for 15 minutes.
- 6 Clean the wound.
- 7 Bandage the wound with pad of soft material.
- 8 Advise victims to take treatment from doctor.

Fig 5

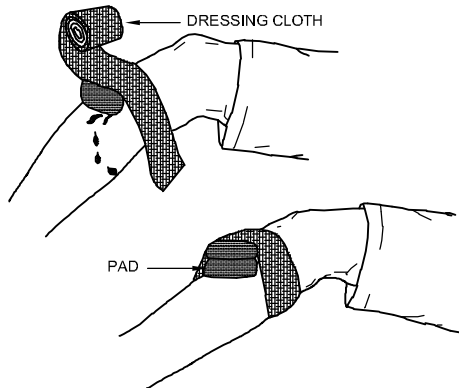
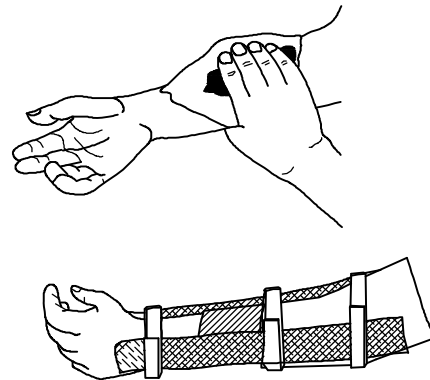


Fig 6



#### Practice on operation of fire extinguisher

General procedure to be adopted in the event of fire.

- 1 Raise an alarm. Follow the method written below for giving an alarm signals when fire breaks out.
  - by raising your voice and shouting Fire! Fire! to call the attention of others.
  - running towards fire alarm/bell to actuate it.
  - other means.
- 2 On receipt of the alarm signal.
  - stop working and put "OFF" electrical power supply
- 3 If you are not involved in fighting the fire.
  - leave calmly using the emergency exit.
  - evacuate the premises.
  - assemble at a safe place along with the others.
  - check if anyone has gone to inform about the fire break to the concerned authority.
  - close the doors and windows, but do not lock or bolt.
- 4 If you are involved in firefighting.

- take instructions/give instructions for an organised way of fighting the fire.
- follow the instructions, and obey, if you can do so safely; do not risk getting trapped.

If giving instructions.

- assess the class of fire
- send for sufficient assistance and inform the fire brigade
- locate locally available suitable means to put out the fire
- judge the magnitude of the fire, ensure emergency exit paths are clear of obstructions and then attempt to evacuate. (Remove explosive materials, substances that can serve as a ready fuel for fire within the vicinity of the fire break)
- fight out the fire with assistance to put it out, by naming the person responsible for each activity.

- Report the fire accident and the measures taken to put out the fire, to the authorities concerned and then analyze and identify the type of fire as per Table 1.

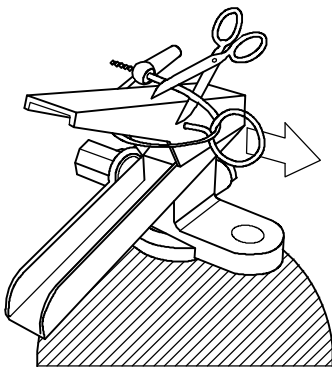
**Reporting all fires however small helps in the investigation of the cause of the fire. It helps to prevent the same kind of accident occurring again.**

**Note: Perform this exercise with the support of fire service station.**

**Assume the fire is 'B' type (flammable liquefiable solids)**

- Select CO<sub>2</sub> (carbon dioxide) fire extinguisher.
- Locate and pick up CO<sub>2</sub> fire extinguisher. Check for its expiry date.
- Break the seal. (Fig 1)

Fig 1



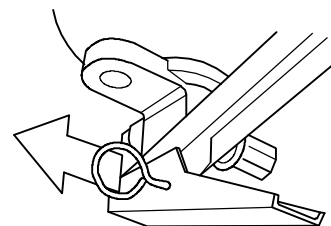
MVNT103.1

- Pull the safety pin from the handle. (pin located at the top of the fire extinguisher) (Fig 2)

**Table1**

Type of fire	Materials/Items associated with	Figure
Class 'A'	Wood, paper, cloth, solid material	
Class 'B'	Oil based fire (grease, gasoline, Oil) & Liquefiable solids	
Class 'C'	Gas and liquefied gases	
Class 'D'	Metals and electrical equipment	

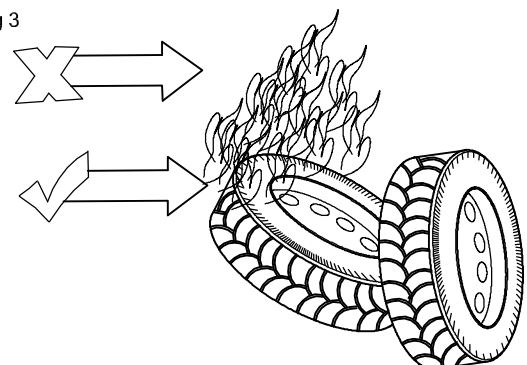
Fig 2



MVNT103.2

- Aim the extinguisher nozzle or hose at the base of the fire. (this will remove the source of fuel fire) (Fig 3)

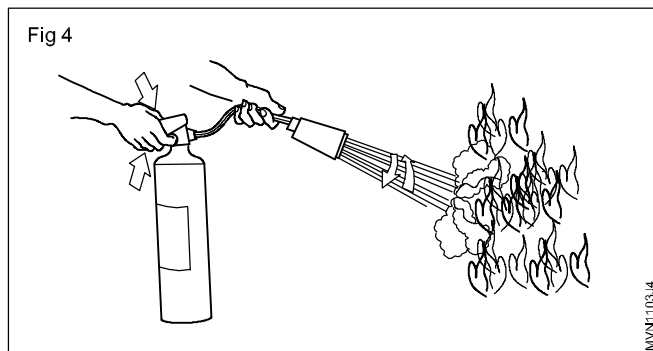
Fig 3



MVNT103.3

**Keep yourself low.Keep your self low.**

- 11 Squeeze the handle lever slowly to discharge the agent (Fig 4)



- 12 Sweep side to side approximately 15 cm over the fuel fire until the fire is put off.

**Fire extinguishers are manufactured for use from the distance.**

#### Caution

- 1 While putting off fire, the fire may flare up.
- 2 Do not be panic so long as it put off promptly

- 3 If the fire doesn't respond well after you have used up the fire extinguisher move away yourself away from the fire point.
- 4 Do not attempt to put out a fire where it is emitting toxic smoke, leave it to the professionals.
- 5 Remember that your life is more important than properly. So don't place yourself or others at risk.

**In order to remember the simple operation of fire extinguisher.In order to remember the simple operation of fire extinguisher.**

**Remember.Remember.**

**P.A.S.S. This will help to use fire extinguisher.P.A.S.S. This will help to use fire extinguisher.**

**P for pull.**

**A for aim.**

**S for squeeze.**

**S for sweep.**

**TASK 5: List out the fire service station equipment and practice to use the equipment**

S. No.	Equipment Name	Purpose	Remarks
1	Fire Extinguishers	Put off fire	
2	Fire Hook		
3	Fire Bucket		
4	Sand		
5	Fire Service vehicle		

## Identify the workshop machineries and equipments

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the machines/equipment installed like compressor and drilling machine
- operate the spark plug tester, wheel balancer.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>			
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.		
<b>Equipment's</b>			
• Air compressor	- 1 No.	• Spark plug tester	- 1 No.
• Jib crane	- 1 No.	• Wheel balancer	- 1 No.
• Drilling machine	- 1 No.	• Display chart (machines & equipment's)	- each
		<b>Materials</b>	
		• Cotton waste	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Take the participants around the workshop.
- 2 Identify the major workshop machinery like compressor, drilling machines.
- 3 Explain the constructional features and the use of compressor, air receiver.
- 4 Explain the use of compressed air and its applications.
- 5 Demonstrate the importance of wheel alignment.
- 6 Explain the use of bench drilling machine, pillar drilling machine.
- 7 Explain about the need for wheel balancing machine.
- 8 Explain the component of a spark plug tester.
- 9 Demonstrate the gap measurement in a spark plug.
- 10 Explain through display charts, the features of all equipment's in an automobile workshop.

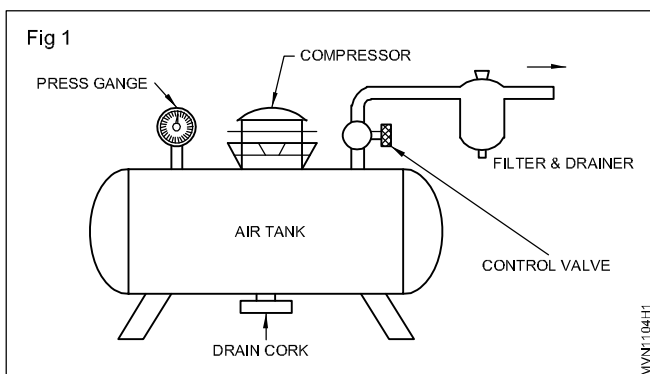
## Skill Sequence

### Identify the machines/equipment's

**Objective:** This shall help you to

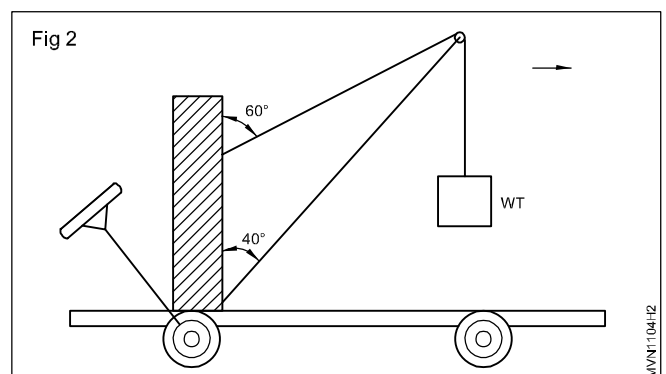
- identify the air compressor, jib crane, bench drill, spark plug tester and wheel balancer.

Compressor is an equipment to produce compressed air at required pressure thro' air hoses. (Fig 1)



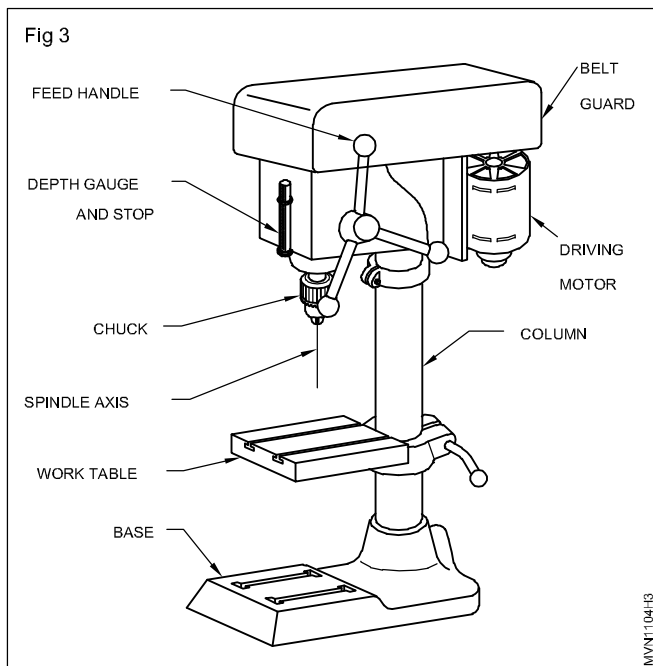
Jib crane is used to transport some objects, from one place to another in the shop floor. (Fig 2)

The sensitive bench drilling machine (Fig 3)



This machine is capable of drilling holes up to 12.5 mm diameter. The drills are fitted in the chuck or directly in the tapered hole of the machine spindle.

For normal drilling, the work-surface is kept horizontal. If the holes are to be drilled at an angle, the table can be tilted.



### Spark plug tester (Fig 4)

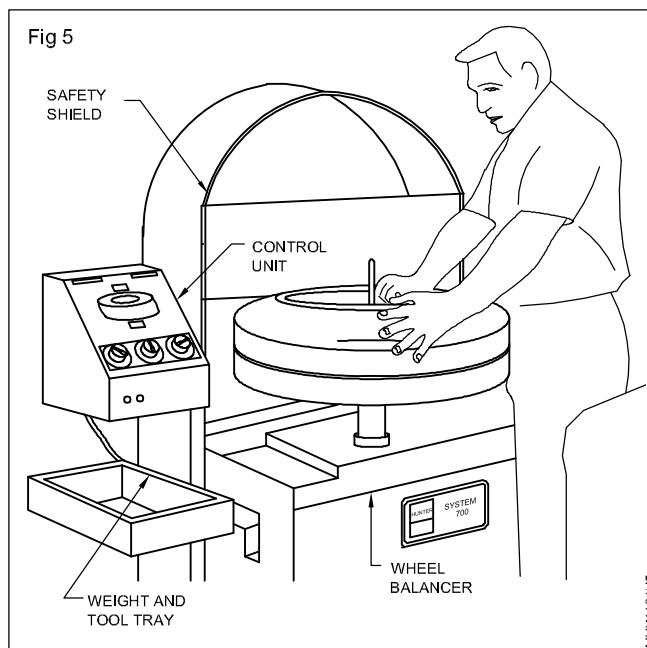
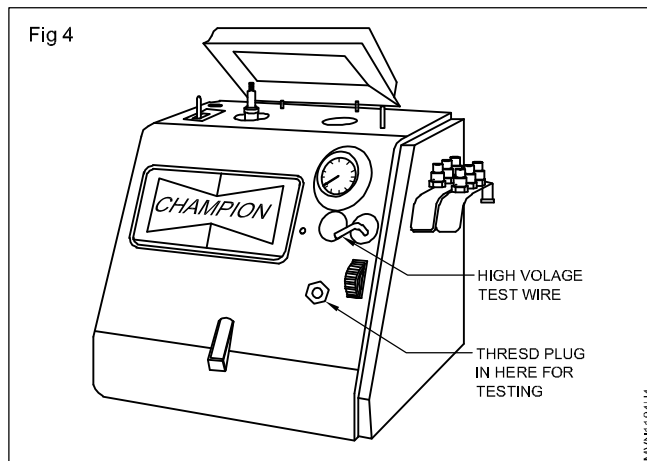
Spark plug tester usually cleans the spark plug. The spark plug gap adjusted to manufacturers specification externally using feeler gauge. Check the sparking voltage in the tester.

### Wheel balancer (Fig 5)

The extent of imbalance is worked out and a balance weight of the same is fixed in appropriate place of the rim as indicated by the balance machine.

**Note: Safety shield is pull down to cover the tire before unit is started. This stops stones and wheel weights which can fly off with lethal force.**

List the machines/equipments in the workshop in Table - 1 and get it checked by your instructor



S. No./ Fig. No.	Machinery/Equipments name	Remarks	Instructor's Signature

**Determine the energy consumption of electrical components in I.T.I**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- prepare the table and list the electrically operated devices used in ITI building
- calculate the amount of electrical energy that is required in the ITI premises on day to day basis
- perform different way of energy conservation.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 Set.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Determine the energy conservation**

- 1 Survey the ITI building premises for lights, fans and other appliances.
- 2 Use the Table 1 below for listing the devices with their actual energy ratings (wattage) and hours of use.

**Table 1**

Applications	Approximate Load (watts)	No of equipment	Total load (watts)	Average hours / day	No. of days in a month	Approximate units/months
	A	B	C = A x B	D	E	Unit=CxDxE/1000
CFL bulbs	5 8 11 15 20					
Regular bulbs	25 40 60 100					
Tube lights	36 40					
Table fan	60					
Ceiling fan	100					
Exhaust fan	150					
Air conditioner	1000 1500					
Refrigerator (165 liters)	150					
Refrigerator (210 liters)	270					
Computer	110					
Other	200					

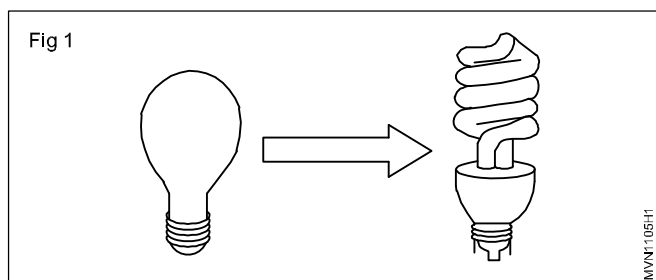
- 3 Record and compare the current year consumption with last year consumption and determine the saved energy in Table 2.

**Table 2**

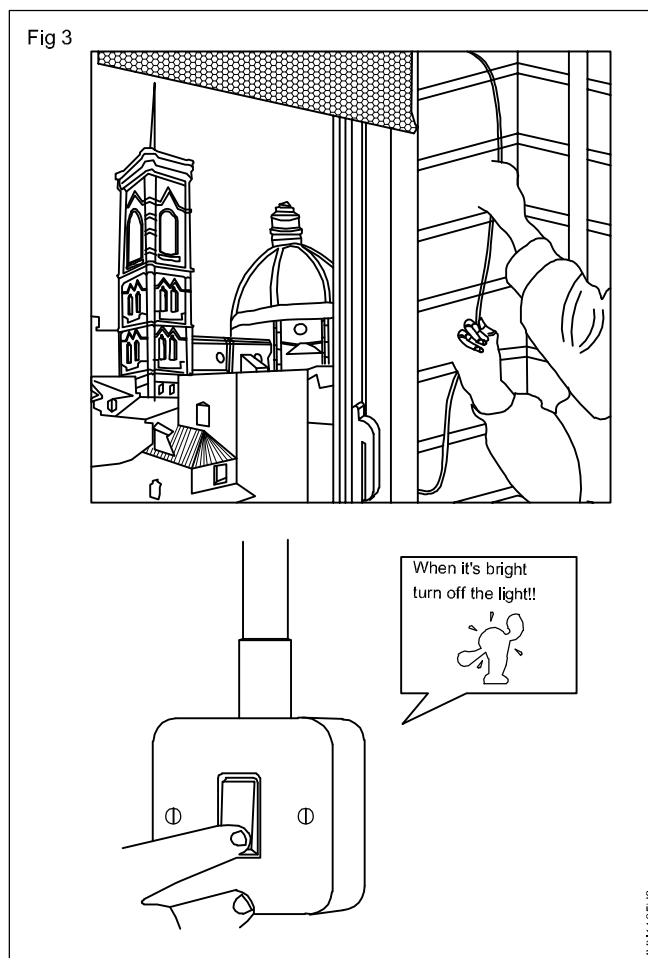
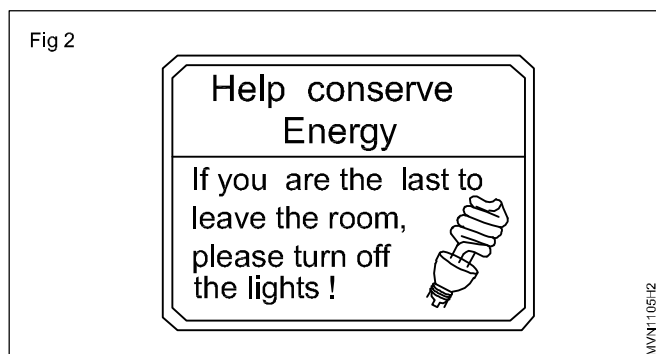
Month	Last year (A)		Current Year (B)		Units saved / Excess (B-A)
	No. of Units	Bill Amount (Rs)	No. of Units	Bill Amount (Rs)	Amount Saved / Excess (Rs) (B-A)
January					
February					
March					
April					
May					
June					
July					
August					
September					
October					
November					
December					

### TASK 2: Perform different way of energy conservation

- 1 Make sure you are not still using tungsten light bulbs. Replace them with CFL bulbs. CFL and Led bulbs tubes reduce energy consumption by about 75% compared with tungsten bulbs, and they last longer.
- 2 Upgrade older fluorescent light fittings with modern high frequency fluorescent fittings. (Fig 1)

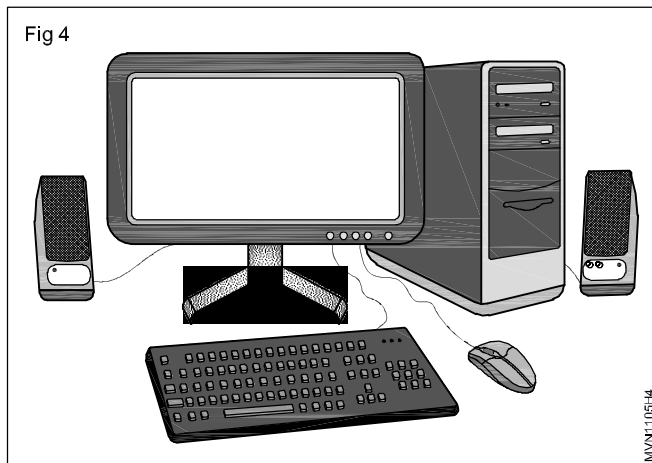


- 3 Post a friendly reminder in each room to prompt students and teachers to turn off lights when not in use. (Fig 2)

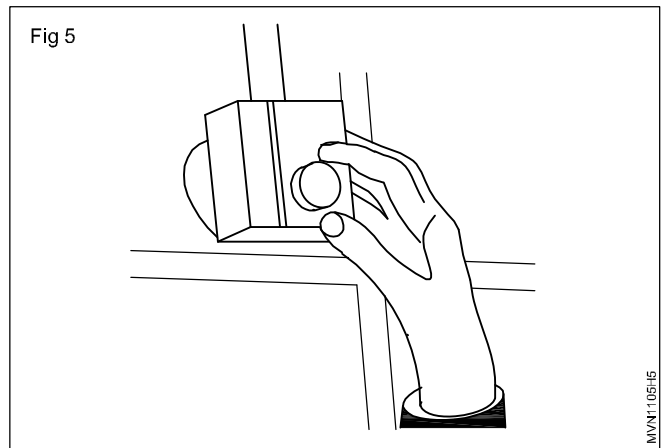




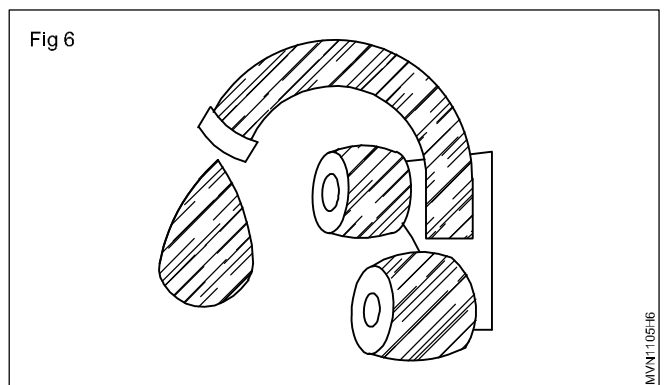
- 4 Lighting in class rooms can use a lot of electricity, which costs money. Classrooms can often be lit with daylight instead. (Fig 3)
- 5 It is best to open the blinds when possible and switch off the lights whenever there is enough daylight.
- 6 At the end of every day, turn off computers and screens.
- 7 Turn off the screens between classes, at break time, and at lunch time.
- 8 Use the Power-Saving options in your computer operating systems. (Fig 4)



- 9 If your classroom is too hot and the heating is on, don't open the window to get rid of the heat. Turn the thermostat down instead.
- 10 Give some thought to what can be switched off before holidays, mid-term breaks and weekends, especially long weekends.
- 11 Printers, copiers, overhead projectors, computers, electrical water heaters, water boilers, and lots of other things can be switched off. (Fig 5)
- 12 Read your electricity, gas, oil and water meters often; at least monthly.
- 13 Start by reading the meters at the beginning and end of each day for the first week, and weekly from then on
- 14 Make a project to keep records of the meter readings and draw graphs of consumption per month and compare each month with the same month last year. Compare the total for the year too.



- 15 By measuring and monitoring your energy and water use, you are more likely to be able to reduce costs.
- 16 use eco-friendly materials and place recycling bins in all rooms.
- 17 Water costs money, so savings it is a good idea.
- 18 Install water displacement devices in WC cisterns.
- 19 Turn off urinals during the holidays or install automatic systems to turn off the urinals.
- 20 Repair leaking taps. (Fig 6)



- 21 Start an ITI sustainability club and promote energy efficiency within the building and community.
- 22 They are either no-cost or low-cost measures. By implementing the above Top-Ten Energy Saving Tips, your ITI management can save money.

— — — — —

## Mark parallel lines by using surface gauge

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- mark parallel lines using a surface gauge
- set the surface gauge to any height dimension.
- check the measurement by using calliper

### Requirements

#### Tools / Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Scriber, Divider - 1 No. each
- Bevel Protractor - 1 No.
- Centre punch & Angle plate - 1 No. each
- Surface gauge & Depth gauge - 1 No. each
- Outside, Inside & Jenny caliper - 1 No. each
- Surface plate - 1 No.

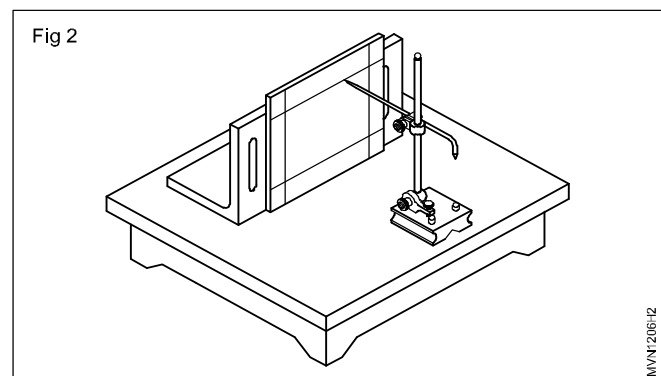
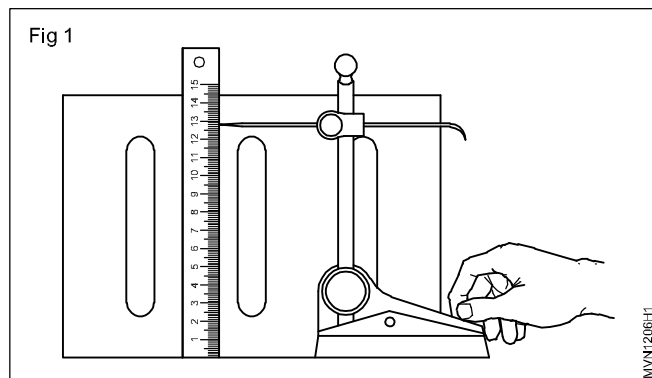
#### Materials

- Chalk powder - as reqd.
- MS Plate - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Marking parallel lines using surface gauge

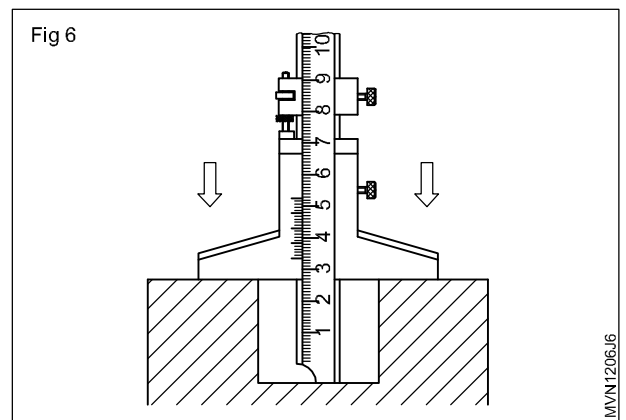
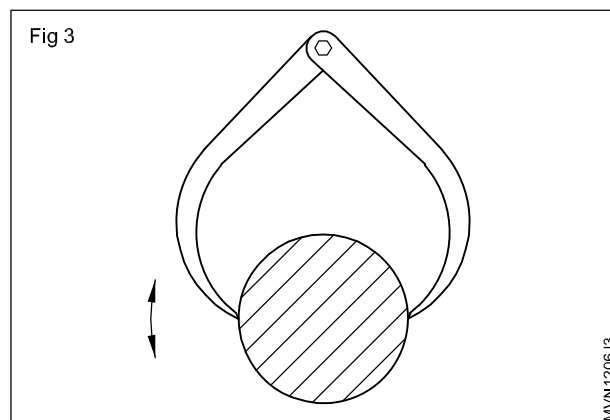
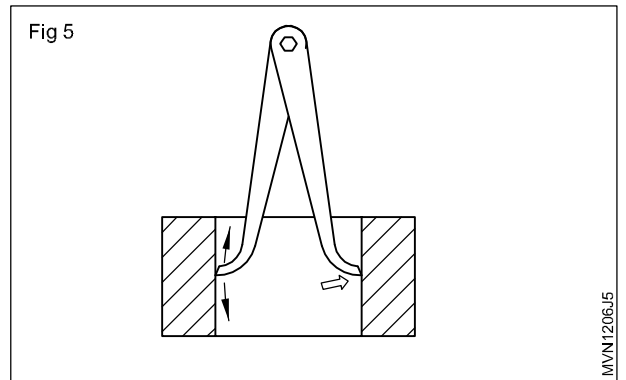
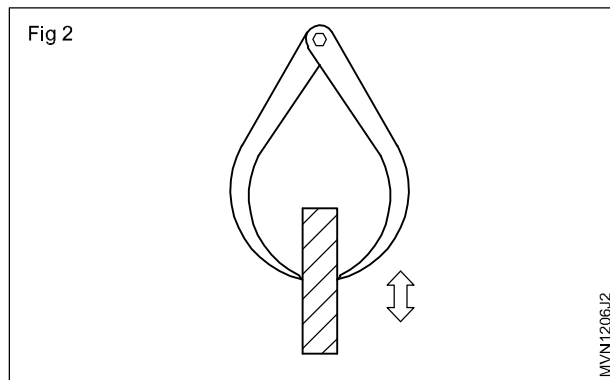
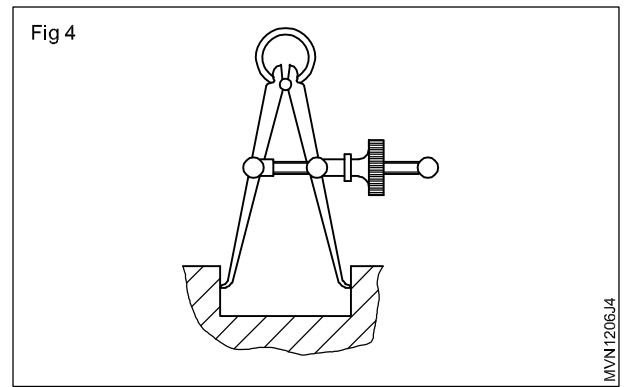
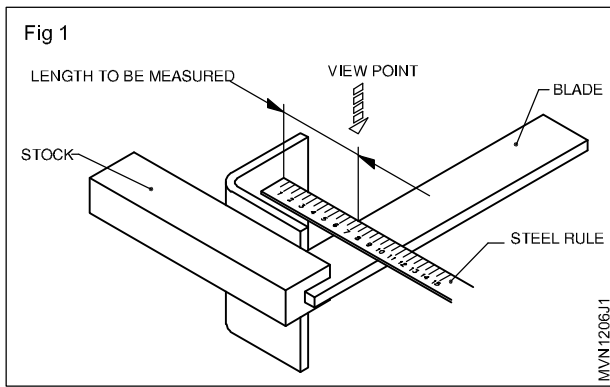
- Check the free movement of the scriber and other sliding units.
- Clean the base of the surface gauge.
- Keep the surface firmly on the surface plate.
- Rest the steel rule against the angle plate and set the scriber to the size to be marked. (Fig 1)
- Make sure that the job has no burrs and has been properly cleaned.
- Apply a thin and even coating of the marking media.
- Butt the job against the angle plate.
- Hold the job in one hand and move the scriber point touching the surface across the work and mark. (Fig 2)



### TASK 2: Marking lines parallel to the edge of the job

1. Apply marking medium on the surface to be marked.
2. Set the jenny caliper to the size to be marked (i.e. dimension) with the help of a steel rule. (Fig 1)
3. Transfer the set dimension to the job. (Fig 2)
4. Incline slightly and move the jenny caliper with uniform speed and mark lines.
5. Make witness marks on the lines marked using a 60° prick punch. The witness marks should not be too close to one another.

**Note to the instructor: Provide old exercise and models as much as possible to the trainees for acquiring measuring skills with simple measuring instruments.**



-----

## Draw lines & angles on metallic surface by marking aids/tools

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- draw lines on metallic surfaces by scribers
- draw angles with a simple protractor and scriber
- bisect the angles with a divider
- draw circles with a divider
- draw curves and tangents with dividers steel rule and scribers
- register the profile by dot punching
- punch the centre of the circle with a centre punch and ball-peen hammer.

### Requirements

#### Tools / Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Scriber, Divider - 1 No. each
- Bevel Protractor - 1 No.
- Centre punch & Angle plate - 1 No. each
- Surface gauge & Depth gauge - 1 No. each
- Outside, Inside & Jenny caliper - 1 No. each
- Surface plate - 1 No.

#### Materials

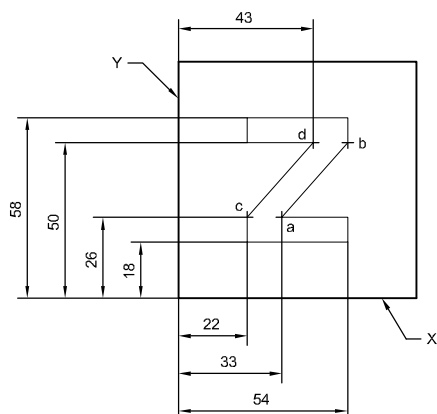
- Chalk powder - as reqd.
- MS Plate - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Marking 1

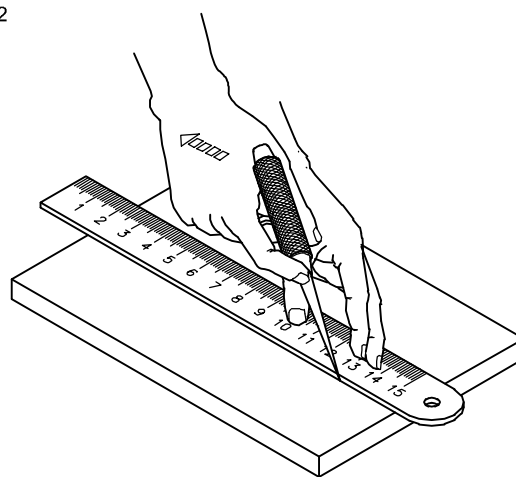
- 1 Check the raw material for its size and its squareness.
- 2 Apply copper sulphate solution on one side of the job and allow it to dry.
- 3 Scribe parallel lines to the edges 'x' and 'y' using a surface gauge. (Fig 1)
- 4 Scribe two lines by joining points ab and cd, using a steel rule and scriber. (Fig 2)
- 5 Punch witness marks and complete 'Z' shape

Fig 1



MVN1207H1

Fig 2



MVN1207H2

**To avoid confusion, do not scribe the line longer than necessary.**

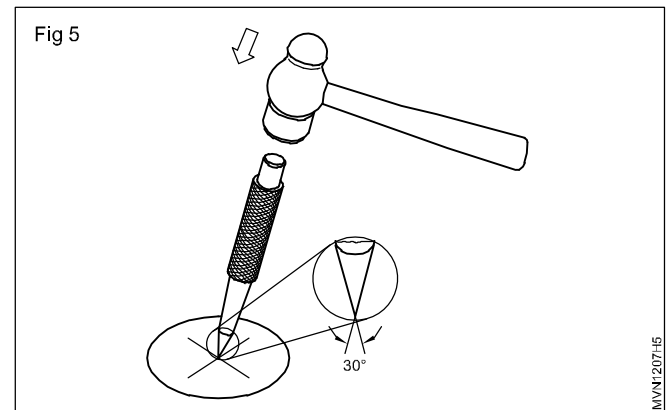
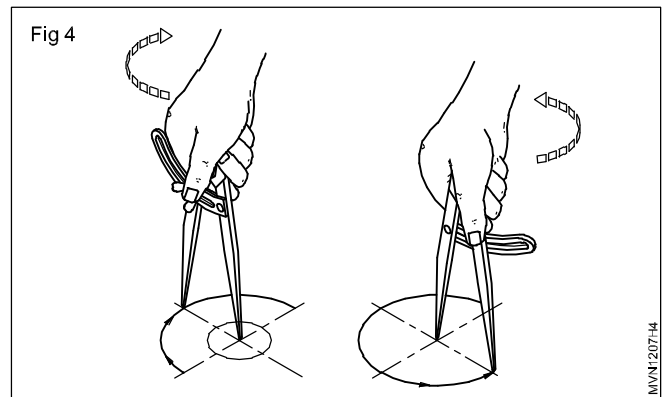
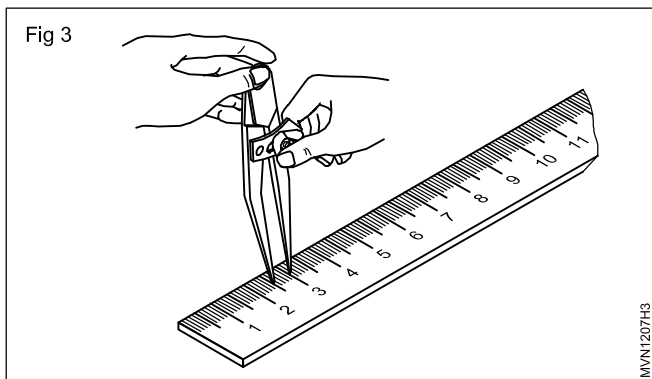
## TASK 2: Marking 2

- 1 Apply the marking medium on the other side of the job and allow it to dry.
- 2 Mark the centre lines of three circles and one semicircle using the jenny caliper.
- 3 Punch all the four centres using a 30° prick punch. (Fig 5)
- 4 Open and set the divider to 5 mm. (Fig 3)

**Make sure that both the legs of the divider are of equal length.**

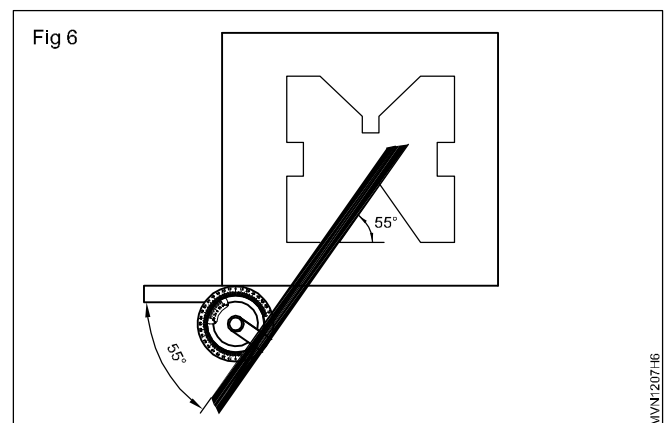
- 5 Draw two circles of  $\varnothing 10$  using the divider. (Fig 4)
- 6 Set the divider and draw  $\varnothing 12$  circle and R35 semicircle.
- 7 Punch witness marks on the circles and semicircles.

**Reuse the same material for marking 3 and 4**

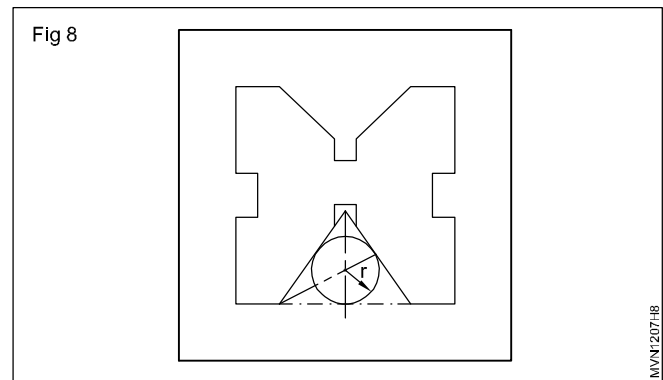
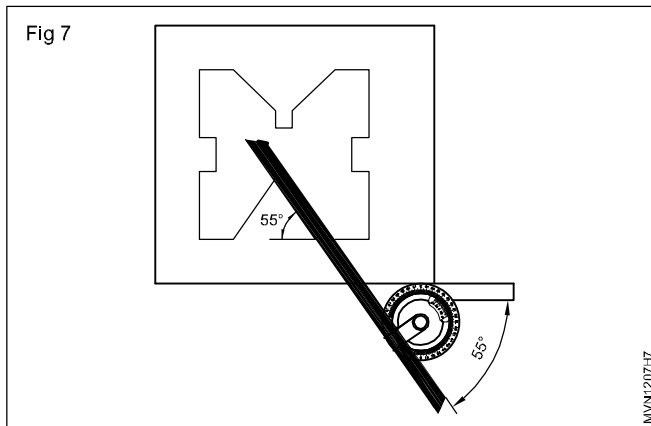


## TASK 3: Marking 3

- 1 File and finish one of the marked surfaces flat and deburr.
- 2 Apply copper sulphate solution on the finished side.
- 3 Butt the job against the angle plate.
- 4 Mark all the parallel lines to the edges using the surface gauge.
- 5 Also mark the starting points of the Vee groove.
- 6 Set and lock the bevel protractor at 55°.
- 7 Butt the bevel protractor on to the edge of the job and mark one side of the Vee groove. (Fig 6)
- 8 Continue the same procedure and complete the 44° Vee groove.
- 9 Complete the Vee block marking.
- 10 Bisect any two sides of the triangle formed by the 55° Vee groove and get the centre and radius of the circle. (Fig 7)

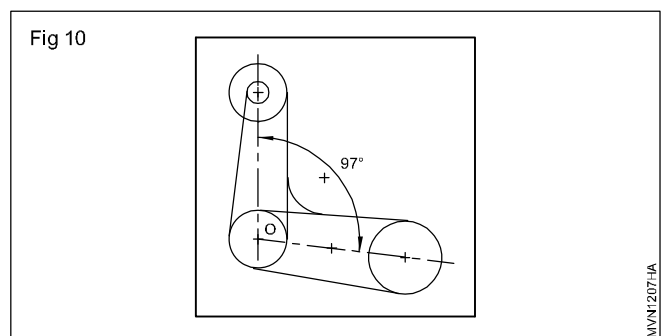
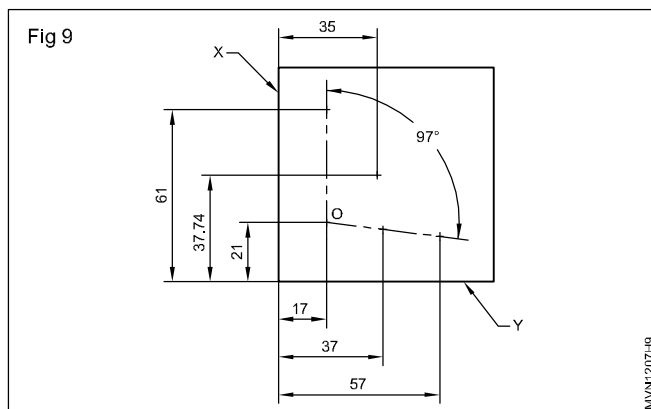


- 11 Draw the circle on the 55° Vee groove. (Fig 8)
- 12 Similarly draw the circle on the 44° Vee groove.
- 13 Punch witness marks.



#### TASK 4: Marking 4

- 1 File and finish the other surface flat, deburr and apply the marking medium.
- 2 Scribe the centre lines and parallel lines to the edges 'x' and 'y'. (Fig 9)



- 3 Set 97° on the bevel protractor.
- 4 Mark 97° line through point 'O' and get the centres of the other two circles. (Fig 10)

- 5 Punch centre marks on all the four circles.
- 6 Draw all the four circles using a divider.
- 7 Draw R8, R8 and R10 curves a little more than the length required.
- 8 Draw two tangents close to the edges of the 'x' and 'y' circles using a steel rule and scriber. (Fig 10) and complete the marking as per shape given.
- 9 Punch witness marks.

## Measure wheel base by using tape and plumb bob

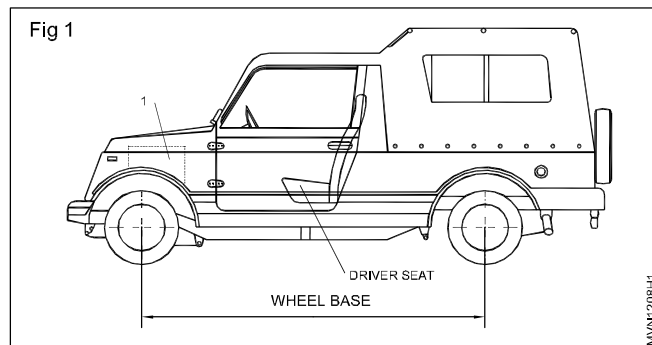
**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **measure a wheel base of a vehicle with a measuring tape and plumb bob.**

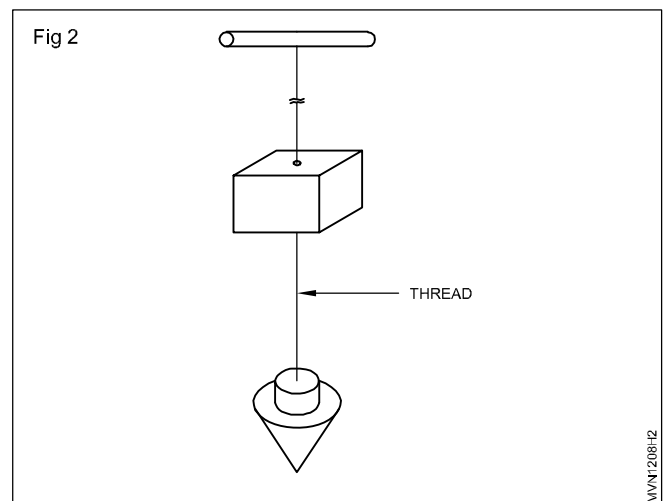
Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainees tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Measuring tape and Plumb bob	- 1 No each.		
<b>Equipments</b>			
• LMV	- 1 No.		
• HMV chassis	- 1 No.		

### PROCEDURE

- 1 Place the vehicle on a plain ground (Fig 1)



- 2 Make the wheels straight ahead
- 3 Apply the vehicle hand brake
- 4 Apply wheel chokes on front and rear wheels
- 5 Close all the doors
- 6 Use the plumb bob and mark the vehicle front wheel centre (from the side view of vehicle) on the ground. (Fig 2)



- 7 Similarly mark the vehicle rear wheel centre (from the same side view of the vehicle) on the ground
- 8 Measure the wheel base using measuring tape between the two markings

### Skill sequence

#### Practice on use of tape and plumb bob

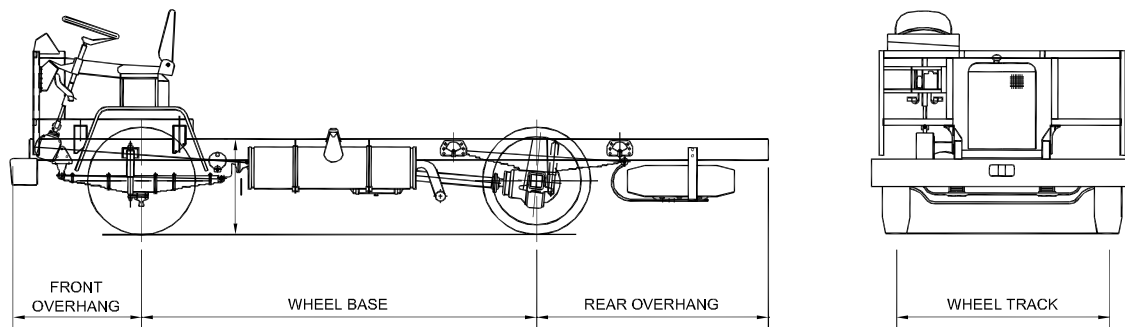
**Objective:** This shall help you to

- **measure heavy vehicle chassis basic specifications.**

### PROCEDURE

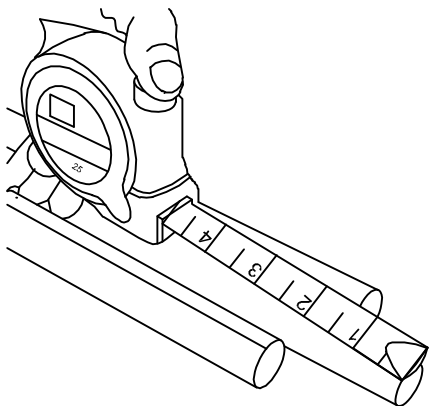
- 1 Place the vehicle on a plain ground (Fig 3)
- 2 Make the wheels straight ahead
- 3 Apply the vehicle hand brake
- 4 Apply wheel chokes on front and rear wheels
- 5 Select the correct measurement tape. (Fig 4)
- 6 Mark the points A, B, C, and D as shown in Fig 3 of HMV chassis from side view of the vehicle by using plumb bob.

Fig 3



MVNT208H3

Fig 4



MVNT208H4

Where,

A - centre of front wheel

B - centre of rear wheel

C - rear farthest point of rear bumper

D - front farthest point of front bumper

E & F - front wheels centre point from front wheel

specification.

- 7 Measure the wheel base of HMV by measuring the distance between A and B by using measuring tape (Fig 4).
- 8 Measure the front overhang of HMV by measuring the distance between A and D.
- 9 Measure the rear overhang of HMV by measuring the distance between B and C.
- 10 Mark the points E & F of HMV chassis from front view of vehicle by using plum bob.
- 11 Measure the front wheel track of vehicle by measuring the distance between E & F.
- 12 Measure the chassis height (I) by measuring the distance between ground floor and top of chassis long member. (Fig 3)
- 13 Check measurement taken with vehicle manufactures



## Measure valve spring tension

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the spring tension on spring tester.

### Requirements

#### Tools / Instruments

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- coil spring tension tester - 1 No.

#### Equipments

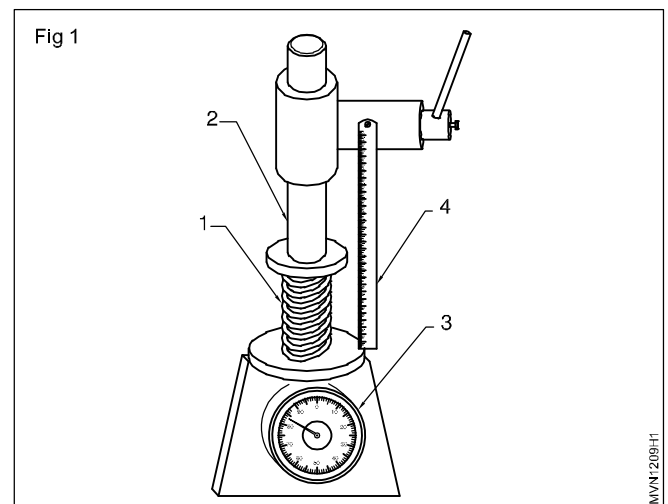
- Work table - 1 No.

#### Materials

- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.

### PROCEDURE

- 1 Clean the spring to be tested
- 2 Place the spring (1) vertically on the spring tester (Fig 1). Ensure that the moveable spindle (2) does not touch the spring (1).
- 3 Note down the height of the spring (1) on the graduated scale (4). This is the free length of the spring.
- 4 Press the spring (1) by moving the column (2) downward. The gauge (3) will show the load on the spring. Press column (2) till the testing load (specified by the manufacturer) is obtained.
- 5 Note down the height of the spring (1) at the testing load.
- 6 Replace the spring, if the free length of the spring and the height at the testing load (or either of these two) is less than the minimum limit specified by the manufacturer.



**Note down the height of the testing load**

**Note down the free length of the spring**

**Table 1**

Sl. No.	Free length of used spring
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	

**Table 2**

Sl. No.	Testing load height of spring
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	

## Remove wheel nut by using impact wrench

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- handle an air impact wrench
- loosen and tighten wheel nuts
- set the required torque.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainees tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Air impact wrench	- 1 Set.		
<b>Equipments</b>			
• Vehicle	- 1 No.		
• Air Compressor unit	- 1 No.		

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Park the vehicle on level ground.
- 2 Apply Hand Brake.
- 3 Close the all doors.
- 4 Put wheel chocks to all the wheels.
- 5 Remove the wheel cap.
- 6 Check the Air impact wrench is connected to the Air lines.
- 7 Select correct size of socket/special socket for wheel lug nut which can with-stand sudden impact force (six-point Impact Socket).
- 8 Fit the socket on the Air-impact wrench. (Fig 1)
- 9 Set the direction of spin forward or backward with the help of wrench lever.
- 10 Set the torque by turning the valve to increase or decrease.
- 11 Insert impact sockets on the wheel lug nut.
- 12 Trigger the switch of the impact wrench to loosen and remove the wheel lug nuts.
- 13 After removing all wheel nuts, place one or two nuts on the wheel bolt to avoid slipping of the wheel while jackup the vehicle for wheel removing.

**Do not use an Impact wrench to tighten the wheel lug nuts**

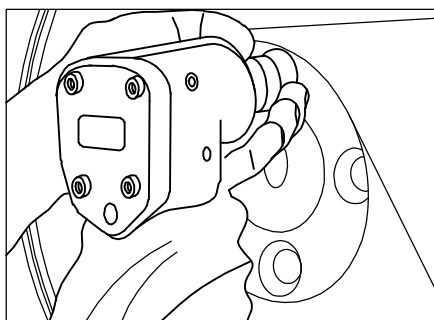
**Wear ear protection device such as ear muffs and ear plugs**

**Wear safety glasses for eye protection**

**Apply a few drops of oil to inlet of the air impact wrench before using**

**Ensure there is no air-leakage on the line and adequate air pressure is available.**

Fig 1



**Practice on handling general workshop tools**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify screw driver for specific purpose and handle it
- identify spanner & wrenches for specific purpose and handle it
- identify pliers for specific purpose and handle it
- operate workshop equipments.

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Screw driver - 1 Set.
- Ring and D/E spanners - 1 Set.
- Pliers - 1 Set.
- Try square - 1 No.

**Equipments**

- Pullers - 1 No.
- Air compressor - 1 No.
- Car washer - 1 No.
- Jack mechanical and hydraulic - 1 No.

- Hydraulic press - 1 No.
- Flaring equipments - 1 No.
- Grease gun and oil spray gun - 1 each.
- Pipe vice - 1 No.
- Pipe cutter - 1 No.
- Puller - 1 No.

**Materials**

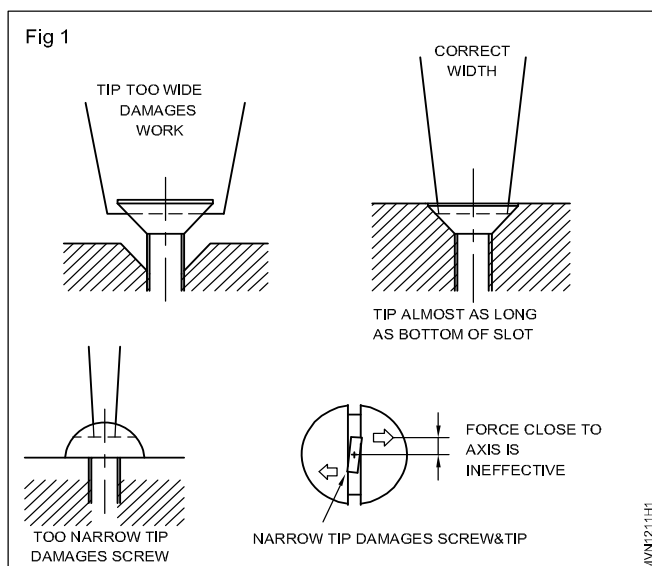
- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Pipe - as reqd.
- Steel wire - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1 : Identify the screw driver for specific purpose and handle it**

**Checking the condition of the fastener to be removed**

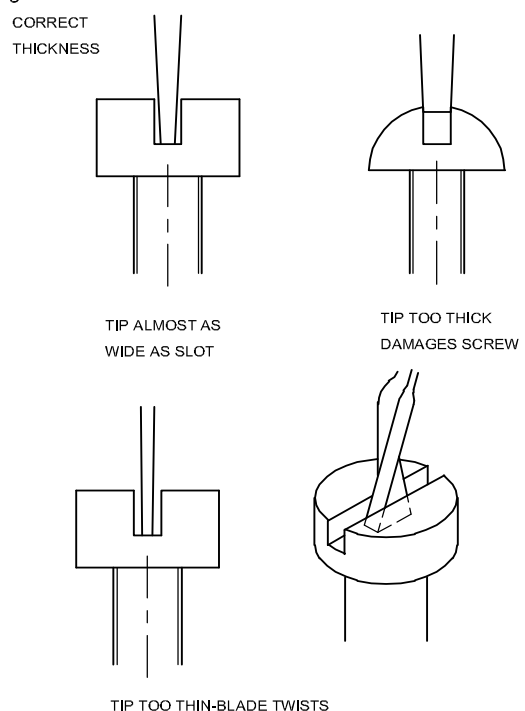
- 1 Clean the surface of the fastener to be removed by using kerosene, banian cloth.
- 2 Check the cornering faces of the fastener for any wear or damage.
- 3 If it is found good, then proceed as follows
- 4 Select the correct size screwdriver to suit the screw slot. (Fig 1)



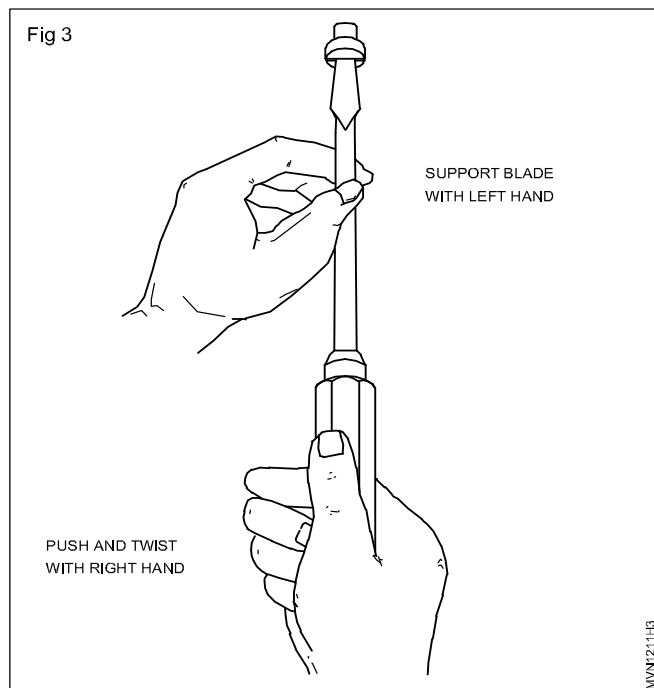
- 5 Select the longest suitable screwdriver with that size of tip. (Fig 2)

**Make sure your hands and the handle are dry and not greasy.**

Fig 2



- 6 Hold the screwdriver with its axis in line with the axis of the screw.
- 7 Guide the blade with the left hand. Apply a little pressure with the right hand to keep the tip in the slot. (Fig 3)



- 8 Twist firmly and steadily.

**Keep the tip centered in the slot and the axis of the blade in line with the axis of the screw.**

**Always brace small works against the bench or other firm support before using a screwdriver.**

**Never hold a small work in your hand while using a screw driver.**

- 9 Turn large screws, use a screwdriver with a square blade. Apply extra twisting force with the aid of a close fitting spanner. (Fig. 4)

**Never use pliers or toothed wrenches to apply twisting force to a screwdriver.**

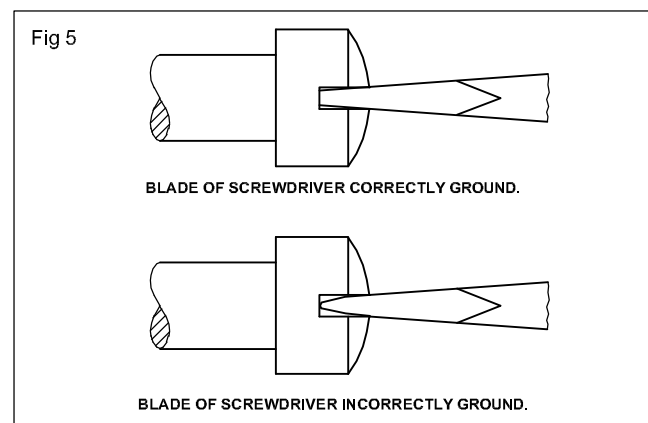
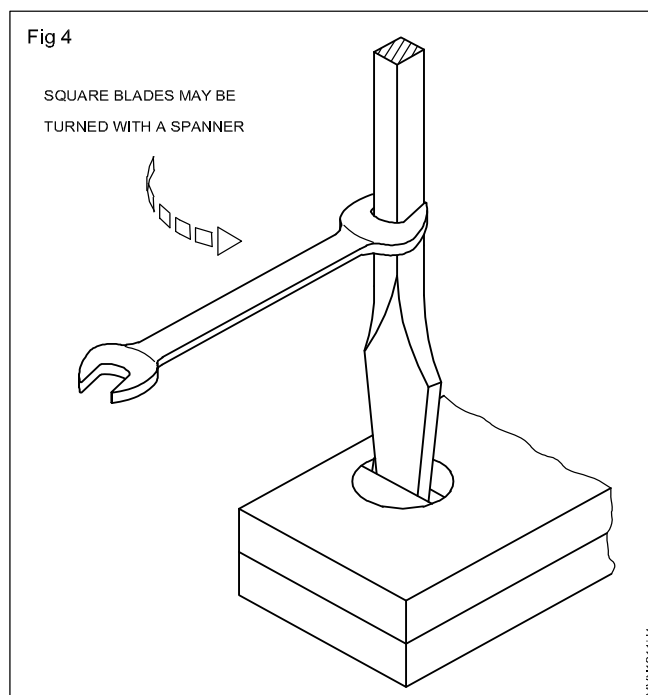
- 10 A Standard screwdriver blade should be ground to  $9^\circ$  so that the faces will be almost parallel with the sides of the screw slot. The end of the blade should be made as thick as the slot in the screw will permit.

**Do not grind the blade to a chisel point, as it has a tendency to slip out of the screw slot.**

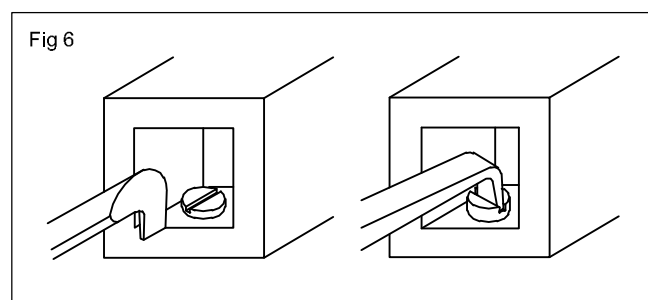
- 11 Grind the width on both sides to an angle of  $11^\circ$ . The width should be equal to the diameter of the head.

**Never grind screwdrivers on a silicon carbide grinding wheel.**

**Standard screwdrivers (Fig 5) can be dressed by filing if they are worn out. Begin filing on the end of the tip. After dressing, the tip must be symmetrical about the axis of the blade. All corners must be square. The end must be at right angles to the axis in both planes.**



- 12 Use offset screw driver (Fig 6) in a restricted place.



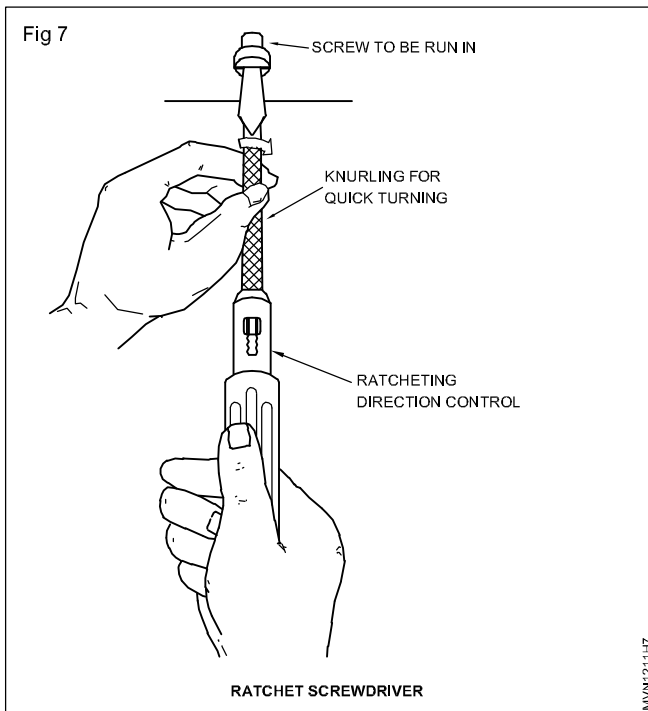
- 13 Reverse the screwdriver after one end to get on quarter turn on .

- 14 Use the other end to get the next quarter turn and so on.

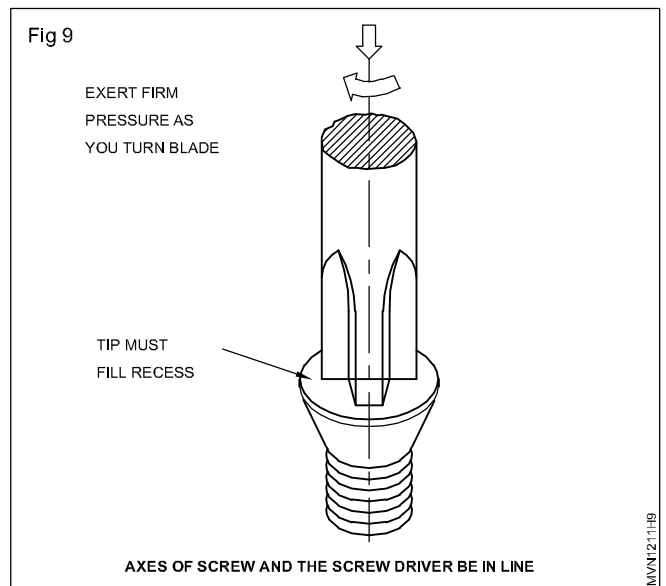
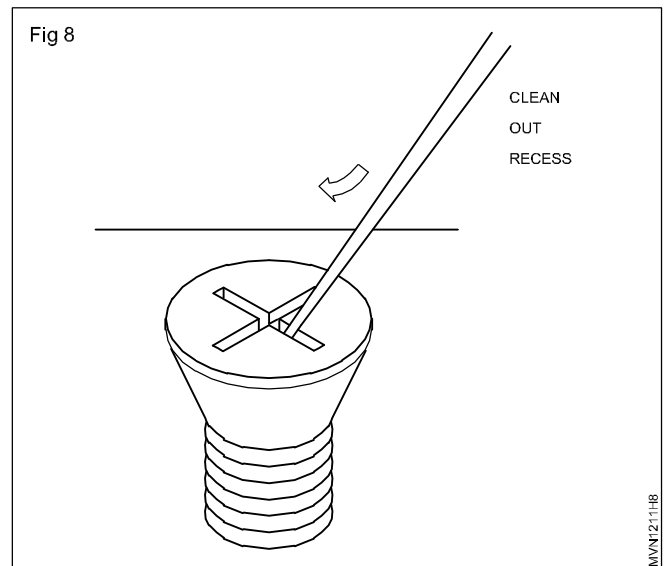
**Keep pressing the tip into the slot as you turn.**

- 15 Use ratchet screwdriver (Fig 7) for quick turning.

- 16 Keep the left hand on knurling, right hand on the ratchet head.



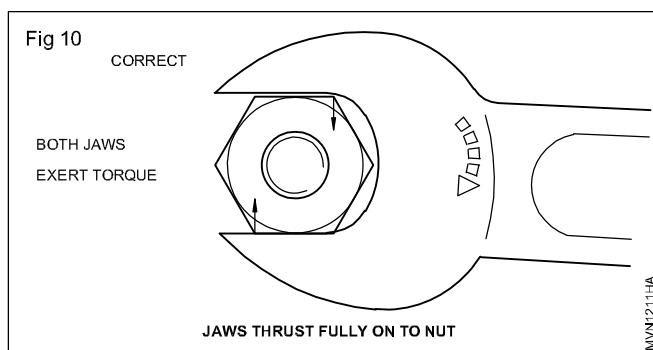
- 17 Change the direction of control depending on your movement.
- 18 Clean out recess for proper grip (Fig 8).
- 19 Phillips (cross-recess) screwdrivers tip must fill recess (Fig 9)



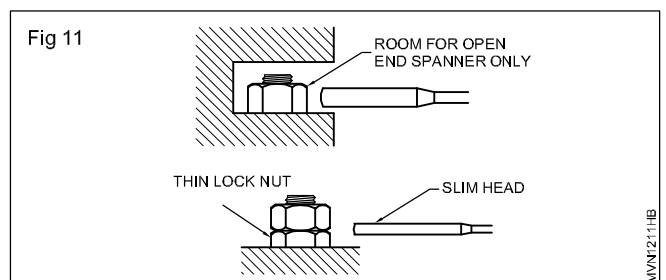
## TASK 2 : Identify spanner & wrenches for specific purpose and handle it

### Identifying the correct size of the tool

- 1 Determine the distance across the flats of a nut or bolt to be removed. (Fig 10)



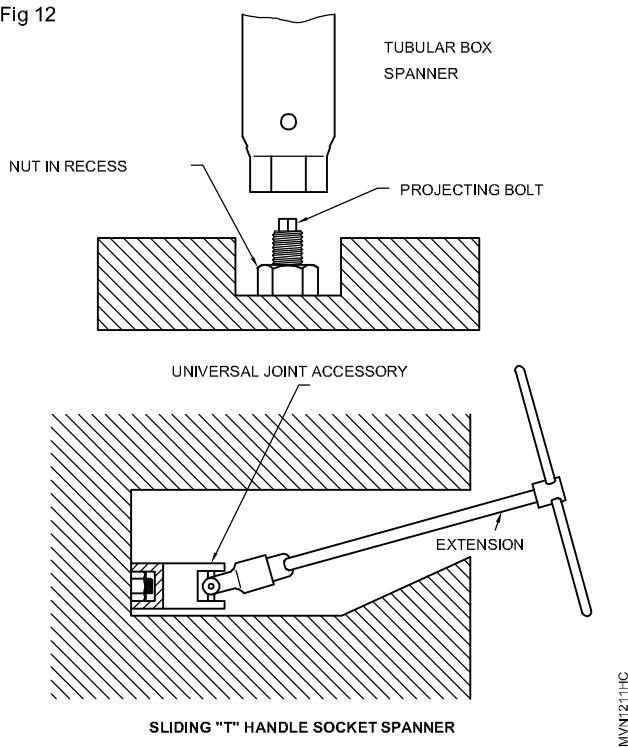
- 2 Decide the size of the spanner.
- 3 Choose the spanner that allows sufficient room without excess clearance for use. (Fig 11)



**Handling the Tool excess clearance will cause slipping of spanner & fasteners corners gets damaged.**

- 4 Select the correct size of the socket. (Fig 12, Fig 13)
- 5 Take a sliding offset handle and insert the drive attachment with square driving ends of a socket.
- 6 Insert the socket wrench on the bolt or nut and confirm whether it inserts fully.

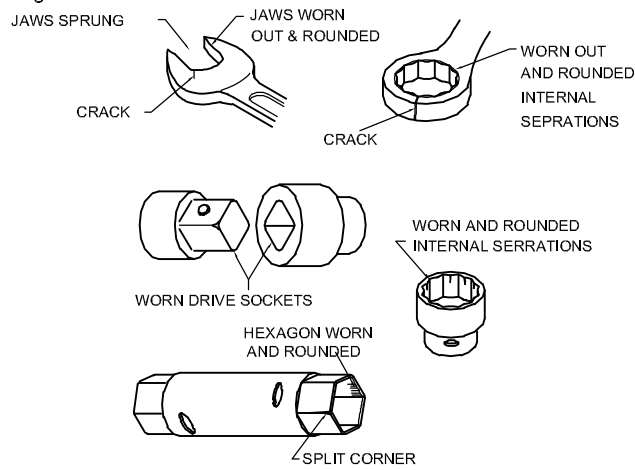
Fig 12



- 7 Keep the position of the handle perpendicular to your forearm which enables you maximum leverage.
- 8 Pull the socket handle and drive out the nut/bolt head.

**Never use worn out or cracked spanners. They will slip and cause injury.**

Fig 13



- 9 Insert the ring spanner on the bolt or nut.
- 10 Keep the position of the shank perpendicular to your forearms which enables you maximum leverage.
- 11 Use D.E. Spanner where ring spanner is not suitable.

**Always try to pull the spanner.**

**If you are forced to push the spanner, use the base of your hand and keep your hand open.**

**Use both hands for large spanner.**

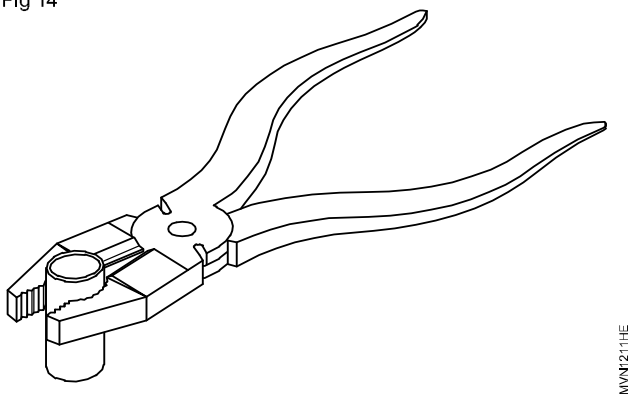
**Keep yourself balanced and firm to avoid slipping.**

### TASK 3 : Handling of Plier

#### Use of combination plier

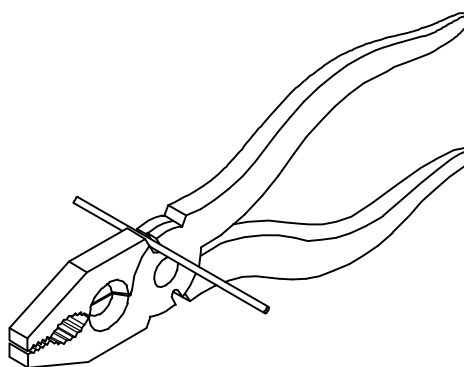
- 1 Select a component with lock wire to nut, which is to be removed.
- 2 Use the combination plier flat grip for untwist the lock wire.
- 3 After untwisting, pull the lock wire from the nut.
- 4 Remove the nut with proper spanner.
- 5 Select a brake pipe line to be removed from a junction.

Fig 14



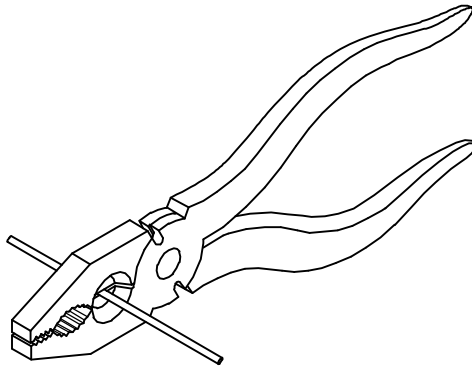
- 6 Hold the brake pipe line with serrated pip grip portion at combination pliers. (Fig 14)
- 7 Select proper size of proper double open end spanner & remove the union nut.
- 8 Select a 3 mm electrical wire to be cut.
- 9 Place the wire between joint cutters at the point which is to be cut. (Fig 15)
- 10 Press the handle to cut the wires.

Fig 15



- 11 Select a steel wire to be cut. (Fig 16)

Fig 16

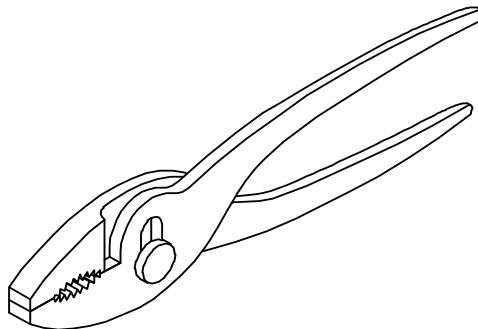


- 12 Place the steel wire in between side cutter.
- 13 Press the handle to cut the wire.

#### Use of flat nose plier

- 1 Select a nut with tab washer to be removed.
- 2 Unfold the tab washer with help of flat nose pliers. (Fig 17)

Fig 17

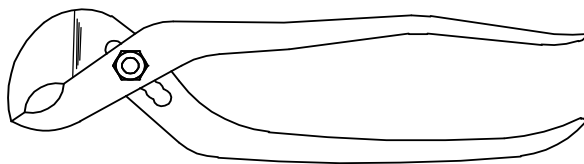


- 3 Use a proper spanner to remove the nut.

#### Use of slip joint plier

- 1 Select a cylindrical component with nut.
- 2 Hold the cylindrical shaft with help of slip joint pliers jaws. (Fig 18)
- 3 Remove the nut with proper spanner.

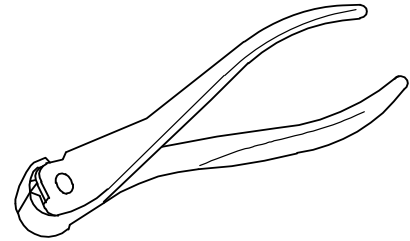
Fig 18



#### Use end cutting plier

- 1 Select a wire to be trimmed.
- 2 Place the end of the wire to be trimmed by end cutting plier in between the cutting end. (Fig 19)
- 3 Apply pressure on handles to cut the wire.

Fig 19

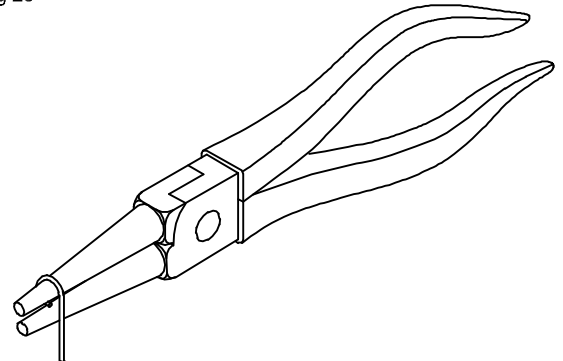


- 4 Select the steel wire to be cut close to the component surface.
- 5 Cut the steel wire by slip joint multigrip plier applying pressure on the handles.
- 6 Use the cutting pliers to spread the cotter pin.
- 7 Select a stand with lock nut, from which lock nut has to be removed.
- 8 Hold the stand by locking pliers adjusting the screw in the handle lock with lever.
- 9 Use a proper spanner to remove the locking nut.

#### Use of round nose plier

- 1 Select a wire which has to be converted into loop.
- 2 Hold the wire between the jaws. (Fig 20)
- 3 Form a loop by tuning the round nose pliers.

Fig 20



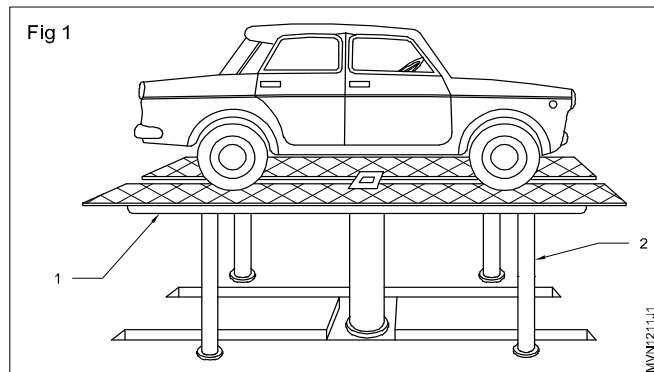
### TASK 4: Handling the Various Workshop Equipments

#### Hydraulic car hoist

- 1 Park the vehicle in the centre of the car hoist (1).
- 2 Clamp the front and rear axle or chock wheels.
- 3 Open the air cock gradually and observe that the car hoist (1) is moving upward.
- 4 Close the cock when it reaches the required height.
- 5 Provide safety stands (2) underneath the hoist. Open the outlet cock slowly so that the vehicle moves down without jerk. Ensure that the hoist side rail sits firmly on the stand.

- 6 After finishing the required job, slightly open the inlet cock and raise the car hoist slightly up. Close the inlet cock.
- 7 Remove the safety stands.

**Ensure that nobody is present underneath the vehicle. (Fig 1)**



- 8 Open the outlet cock slowly so that the hoist comes down without disturbing the vehicle's position.
- 9 Remove the clamps/chocks and remove the vehicle from the hoist.

#### Car washer

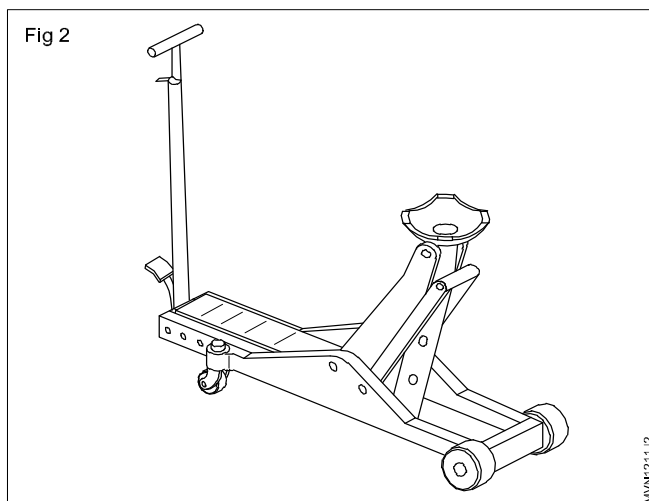
- 1 Check the oil level.
- 2 Check the belt tension.
- 3 Check the belt guard for its position.
- 4 Inspect the electrical connection visually for looseness, disconnections or cuts.
- 5 Open the water tank.
- 6 Check the water level.
- 7 Hold the gun before starting the car washer.
- 8 Switch 'ON' the car washer and adjust the pressure gauge for the required pressure. (200 psi)
- 9 Open the water gun.
- 10 Check the water jet and adjust for force and spray.
- 11 Use the gun for the required purpose.
- 12 After completing the cleaning, stop the car washer.
- 13 Close the water intake cock (water supply).

#### Mechanical jack/hydraulic jack

- 1 Park the vehicle on level ground.

**In case of jacking up the front axle, chock the rear wheels and vice versa.**

- 2 Check the free movements of threads in a mechanical jack by hand and in the hydraulic jack, check the oil level and its operations.
- 3 Place the jack (Fig 2) under the vehicle.



- 4 Rotate the screw gradually with the jack lever and lift the vehicle and in the case of a hydraulic jack move the jack's lever slowly so that the axle jacks up without any jerk.
- 5 Place the support horses below the chassis frame/ axle.
- 6 Lower down the jack and remove it.
- 7 Jack up again after completing the specific job .
- 8 Remove the support horses.
- 9 Lower down the jack after remove the supports.

#### Grease gun

- 1 Select the grease gun according to the vehicle. (Consult your instructor.)
- 2 Check visually the washer, the grease nipple-holder for any damage.
- 3 Fill up the gun with the specified grease.
- 4 Close the grease gun and operate the lever till the grease comes out continuously from the nipple with pressure.
- 5 Use the grease gun for the required purpose.

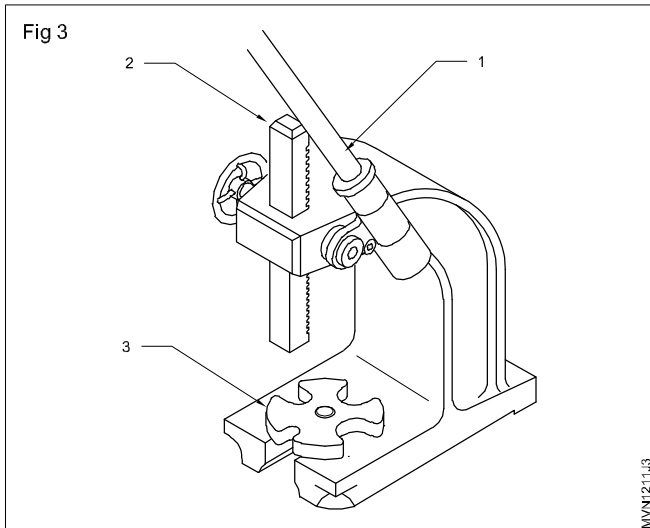
#### Oil spray gun

- 1 Check visually the oil spray gun nozzle, nozzle holder, operating lever, air hose for any damage.
- 2 Fill the specified oil in the oil spray gun.
- 3 Connect the oil spray gun to the air hose connection.
- 4 Operate the oil spray gun.
- 5 See that the oil is sprayed at pressure.
- 6 Use the spray gun for the required purpose.
- 7 Close the air-hose connections and take out the oil spray gun.

#### Mechanical press

- 1 Check for easy movement of the operating lever (1) and rack (2) of mechanical press. (Fig 3)
- 2 Select the plate (3) according to the work.

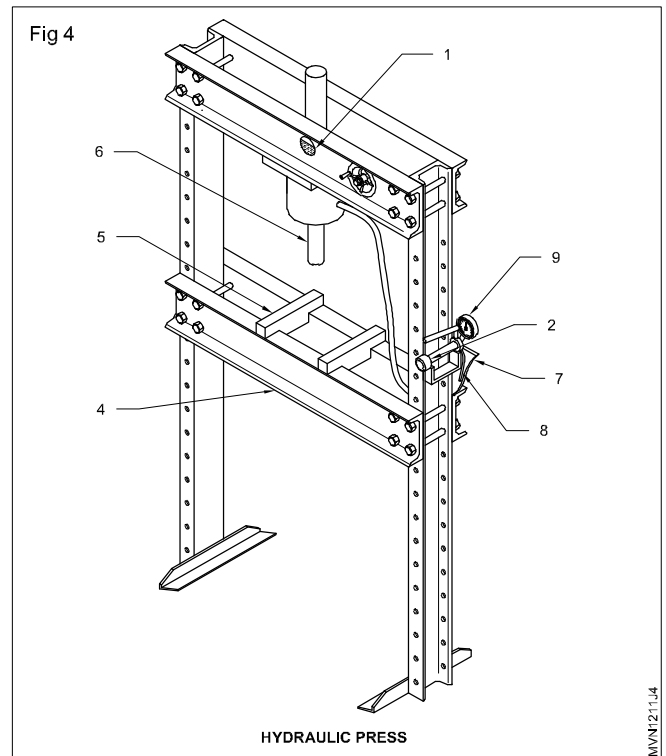




- 3 Place the component on the plate.
- 4 Press the work slowly.

#### Hydraulic press (Fig 4)

- 1 Clean the press.
- 2 Check the oil level (1).
- 3 Check the hydraulic press (Fig 4) for its free function and leakage.
- 4 Lock the cylinder plunger releasing knob (2).
- 5 Adjust the bed (4) to the required height so that, after placing the job, there will be 100 mm clearance between the plunger (6) and the bed (4).
- 6 Align the anvil (5) according to the job.
- 7 Place the job on the anvil (5).
- 8 Select the distance piece in such a way that while pressing the shaft/bush, it does not touch the body (minimum 10 mm gap to be given between the plunger (6) and the distance piece).



- 9 Place the distance piece on the shaft/bush. Ensure that it does not touch the body.
- 10 Operate the low pressure lever (7) and make the plunger (6) to have a contact on the job.
- 11 Operate the heavy pressure lever (8), observe the load on the gauge (9) and the job simultaneously. Ensure the job comes out gradually.

**If the load exceeds more than the specified limit, stop the pressing.**

- 12 Releasing knob (2) after finishing the work loosen the plunger.
- 13 Remove the job and clean.

## Skill Sequence

### Cutting a G.I. pipe

**Objective:** This shall help you to

- cut a G.I. pipe using a pipe cutter.

Measure the required length of pipe and mark it with chalk.

Keep the pipe in the pipe vice and tighten it. (Fig 1)

Fit the pipe cutter on the G.I. pipe (on the scribed line) and tighten the jacking screw so that the cutting wheel is touching the pipe. (Fig 2)

**Ensure that the pipe is kept horizontal and parallel to the serrations such that the marking is visible at the top.**

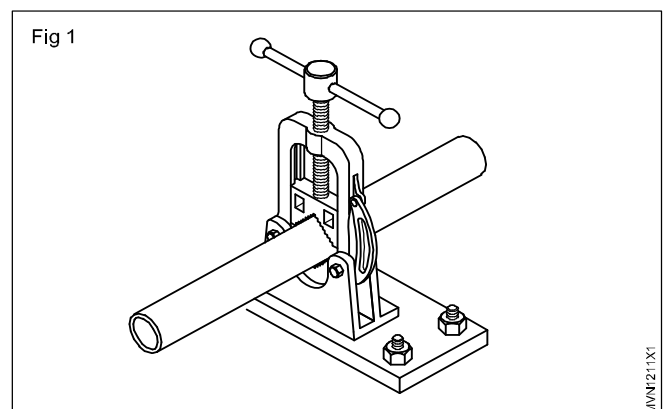
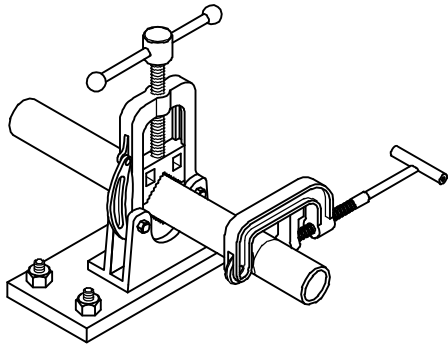


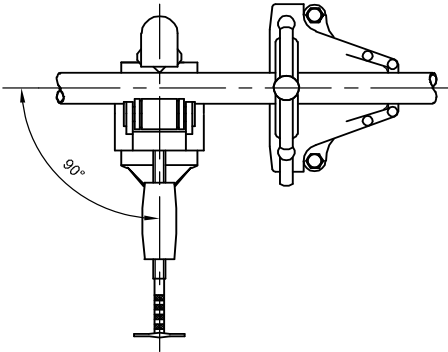
Fig 2



MVN/21/X2

Rotate one or two turns to ensure that the cutting wheel is sitting exactly on the scribed line at 90° to the pipe. (Fig 3)

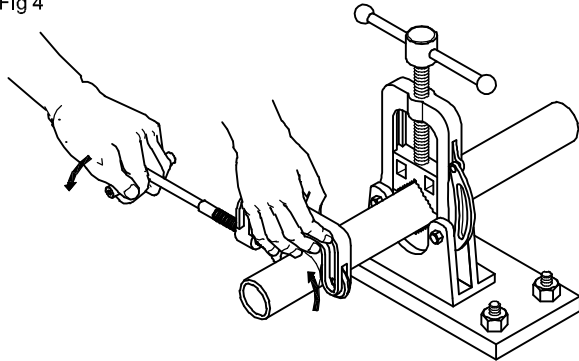
Fig 3



MVN/21/X3

Rotate the pipe cutter around the pipe. (Fig 4)

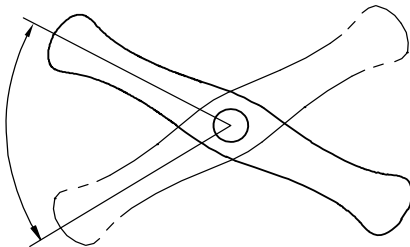
Fig 4



MVN/21/X4

After two or three turns use the jacking screw to apply pressure on the cutting wheel. (Fig 5)

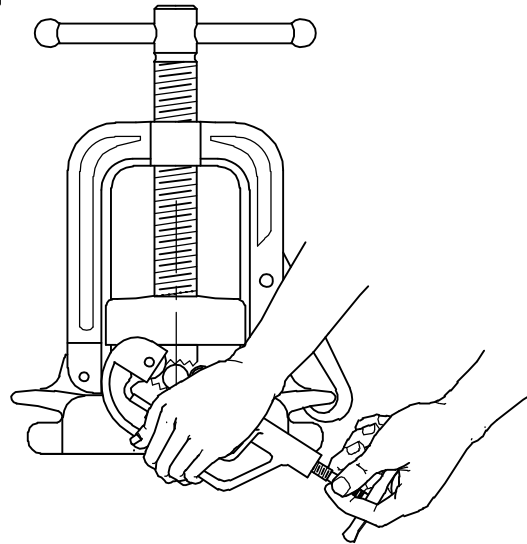
Fig 5



MVN/21/X5

Keep rotating the pipe cutter around the pipe. Increase the pressure to the cutter by repeating the cycle until the pipe is cut through. (Fig 6)

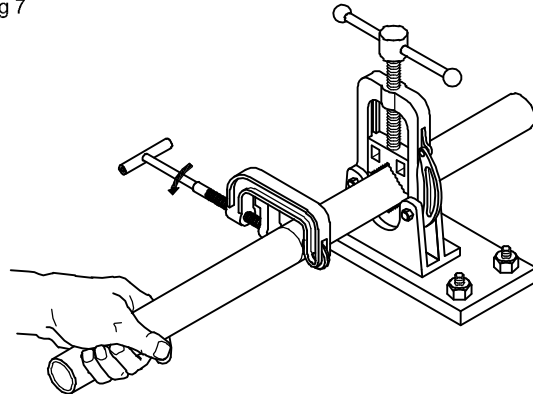
Fig 6



MVN/21/X6

Support the pipe with your left hand so that the free end of the pipe does not fall. (Fig 7)

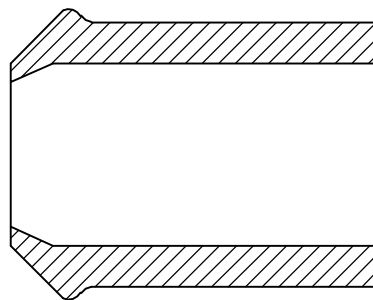
Fig 7



MVN/21/X7

Check the cut portion of the pipe which will appear as shown in Fig 8.

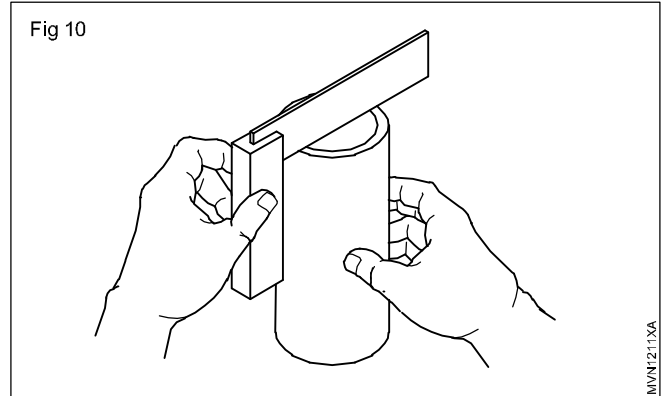
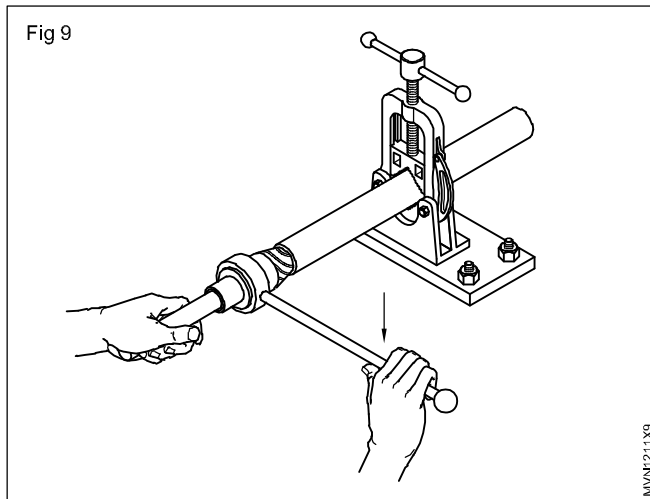
Fig 8



MVN/21/X8

Remove burrs using a pipe reamer. (Fig 9)

Check that the pipe ends are square using try square. (Fig 10)



## Skill Sequence

### Make flare joints and test them with flare fittings

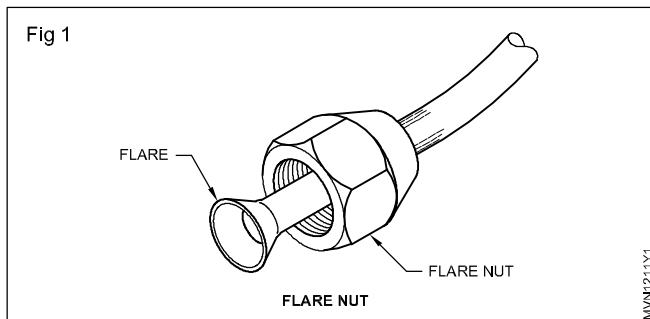
**Objectives:** This shall help you to

- flare the end pipe
- joint flare nut with flare fitting and test it.

#### Flaring

Brake line pipes / Fuel pipe lines / Air conditioner pipe lines are sometimes jointed to fittings by making a flared connection.

The end of the pipe is opened out to form a cone (Fig 1).



Always place the special flare nut on the pipe first before flaring.

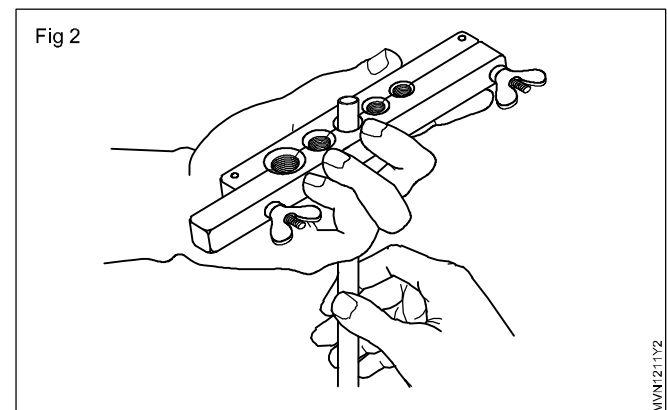
Examine the pipe flaring tool. Make sure that you understand how it works before starting to flare the end of a pipe.

Make sure that the end of the pipe is free of rough edges before flaring

Place the pipe in the tool (Fig 2). Make sure that you have:

- Place the flare nut on the pipe
- Chose the correct size hole in the flaring tool to fit the pipe; (there are 5 holes to fit different sizes of pipe.)

If the pipe is  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) in diameter, position the pipe so that the end is at least 2 mm above the top of the flaring block (Fig 3). (This distance is calculated as "pipe



diameter divided by 3"; in this case, 6 mm divided by 3 = 2 mm).

Tighten the nuts at each end of the flaring block (see drawing).

Fit the yoke to the flaring block (Fig 3)

Oil the cone and slowly screw it into the end of the pipe.

The end of the pipe will be formed into a flare (Fig 4).

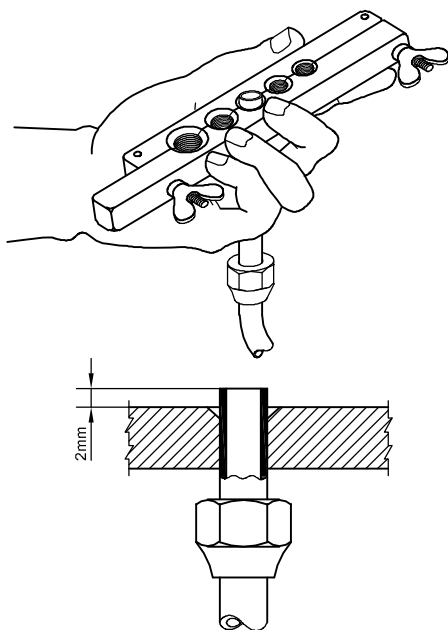
Unscrew & remove the flaring block remove the flared pipe from the block.

Examine the flare. If it has cracked, the cone was screwed down too quickly.

Make sure that the flare is the correct size. It should just fit inside the flare nut. If it is too loose, cut off the flare and start again at instruction 5.

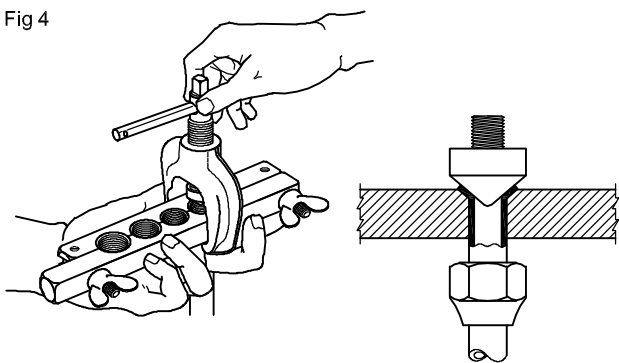
At instruction 7, use 3 mm instead of 2 mm. Repeat until the flare is the correct size for the flare nut-not too loose and not too tight.

Fig 3



MVNI211Y3

Fig 4



MVNI211Y4

Observation Table - 1

Sl. No.	Skills	Remarks
1	Checking Flaring	Cracked/uneven/too small/too long/correct
2	Number of attempts	One/two/three

**Note: Repeat the steps to the various sizes of copper tube**

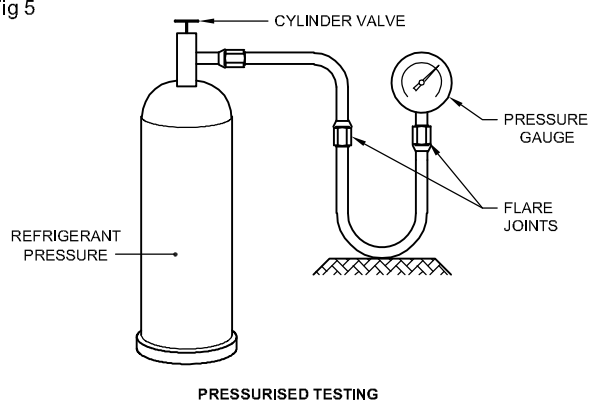
### Joining with flare fittings

Put thread seal tape on the thread

Push back the flare nut and place the flared tube on the fitting, then tighten the flare nut using adjustable wrench or suitable double end spanner.

Tighten the one end of the tube to the cylinder with the flare nut. (Fig 5)

Fig 5



MVNI211Y5

Connect a pressure gauge at the other end of the tube with flare nut.

**Do not give more pressure while tightening since this will spoil flare.**

**Make sure that they should not be loose in the tube.**

Observation Table - 2

Sl. No.	Skills	Remarks
1	Selection of correct fittings	Correct/not correct
2	Joining method	Excellent/good/fair
3	Time taken	Less/very less/more

After joining the tube firmly, open the cylinder valve with help of valve key or ratchet.

**The pressure will be shown in the pressure gauge.**

Then close the cylinder valve. Major leaks will make noise and that needs the nut to be tightened.

If there is no leak, the pressure in the pressure gauge will remain constant.

If it decreases, check the joints with soap solution foam. Leak will bubble, then tight the joints. If it stands still then there is no leak.

Observation Table - 3

Sl. No.	Skills	Remarks
1	Selection of tools	Excellent/good/average
2	Detecting leak and arresting	Excellent/good/average

## Perform handling of puller

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **select, install to use a puller for removing gear from shaft**
- **select, install to use of puller for removing bearing from shaft.**

Identify the object to be removed, i.e Gear / Bearing.

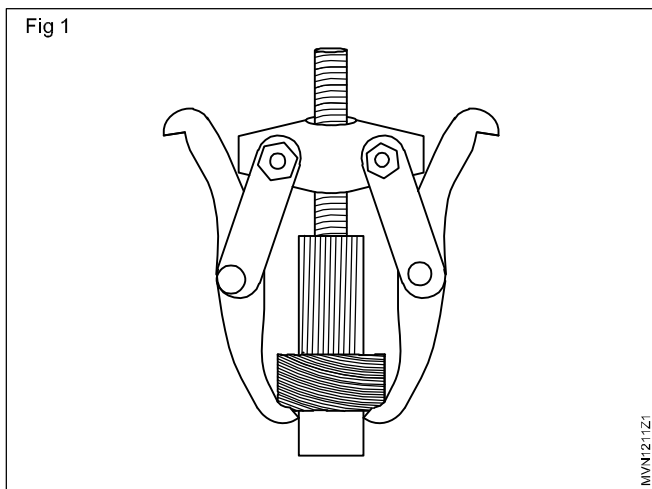
Determine the size of the Gear / Bearing to be removed.

Choose a puller according to Gear / Bearing i.e, 2 or 3 Jaw & External or Internal Jaw puller.

Unscrew the forcing screw of the puller to the optimum length.

Split open the jaw of the puller.

Position the jaws of the puller over gear as shown in the diagram. (Fig 1)



Position the tip of forcing screw on the shaft, as shown in the diagram. (Fig 2)

Tighten the forcing screw till the forcing screw end touches the shaft.

Check the puller is not going to slip from the center of shaft & readjust if necessary.

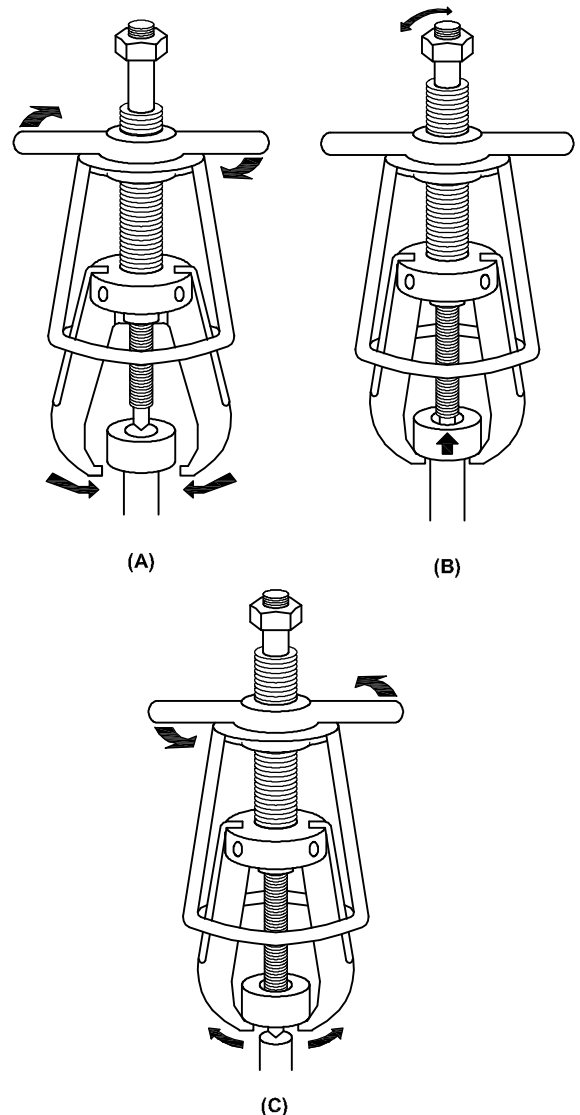
Tighten the forcing screw till the gear comes out from the shaft.

### Warnings

**Always wear proper personal protective gear (i.e. gloves, safety glasses)**

**Never use a tool to strike the puller. Hitting the puller may cause breakage.**

Fig 2



**Applying heat to the puller may damage it, causing the puller to fail at lower than rated load.**

## Measure outside diameter of cam and crankshaft, valve stem and piston by micrometer

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- measure cam height using outside micrometer
- measure camshaft journal diameter using outside micrometer
- measure crankshaft journal diameter using outside micrometer
- measure valve stem diameter using outside micrometer
- measure piston skirt & piston pin diameter using outside micrometer.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Valve</li> <li>• Piston</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 1 Set.</li> <li>- 1 Set.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outside micrometer (0 - 25mm)</li> <li>• Outside micrometer (25 - 50mm)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 1 No.</li> <li>- 1 No.</li> </ul>	<b>Materials</b>	
<b>Equipments</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Brush</li> <li>• Cleaning solvent</li> <li>• Cotton cloth</li> <li>• Wire brush</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 1 No.</li> <li>- as reqd.</li> <li>- as reqd.</li> <li>- 1 No.</li> </ul>
<b>Engine parts</b>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Camshaft</li> <li>• Crankshaft</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 1 No.</li> <li>- 1 No.</li> </ul>		

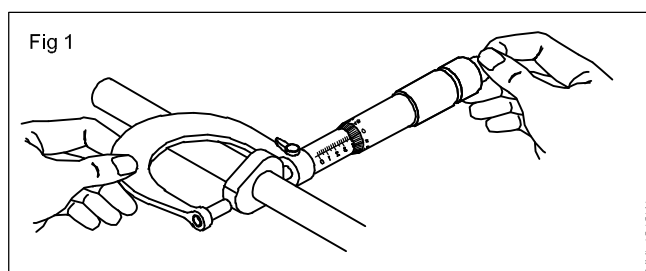
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Check the cam height

- 1 Check the camshaft visually for cracks
- 2 Clean the camshaft using a small brush with recommended cleaning solvent
- 3 Clean sludge and gum deposit
- 4 Blowout the passages with compressed air with the help of micrometer measure the reading
- 5 Before taking the measurement, ensure that micrometer is adjusted for zero setting
- 6 Record the main scale reading and thimble reading
- 7 Measure the cam shaft at 2 or 3 places and record the observed value in the Table 1.
- 8 Compare the cam lobe height of all cams with manufacturer's specification.

**Measuring on Cam height, Camshaft Journal dia., crankshaft journal dia., Valve stem dia., piston diameter, and piston pin dia. with outside micrometers.**

- 9 Using a micrometer, measure the cam lobe height and record the results in a Table 1 (Fig 1).



**Table 1**

Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble scale div (b)	Least Count (c)	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$
Cam lobe height = R		0.01		

## TASK 2: Check the cam shaft journal diameter

- 1 Inspect the journal diameter of the camshaft and record the results in a Table 2 (Fig 2).
- 2 Take two readings for each journal to ensure ovality, with in limit

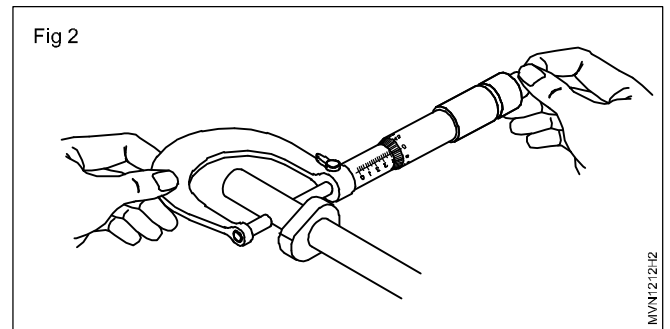


Table 2

Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble scale div (b)	Least Count (c)	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$
Cam shaft journal diameter = R			0.01	

## TASK 3 : Check the crankshaft journal diameter

- 1 Using a micrometer, measure crankshaft journal diameter at two places, 180° apart and at two points along its length. Record the result in a Table 3.
- 2 Clean the crankshaft using a small brush with the recommended cleaning solvent.
- 3 Clear sludge and gum deposits from the drilled oil passages in the crankshaft by the wire brush.
- 4 Blow out the passages with compressed air
- 5 Select suitable micro meter

**With the help of a micrometer measure the journal diameter at '1' '2' '3' & '4'. The difference in reading between '1' & '3' and '2' & '4' will give the ovality. (Fig 3)**

- 6 Measure Record and observed the crankshaft main journal and reading on the Table 3.

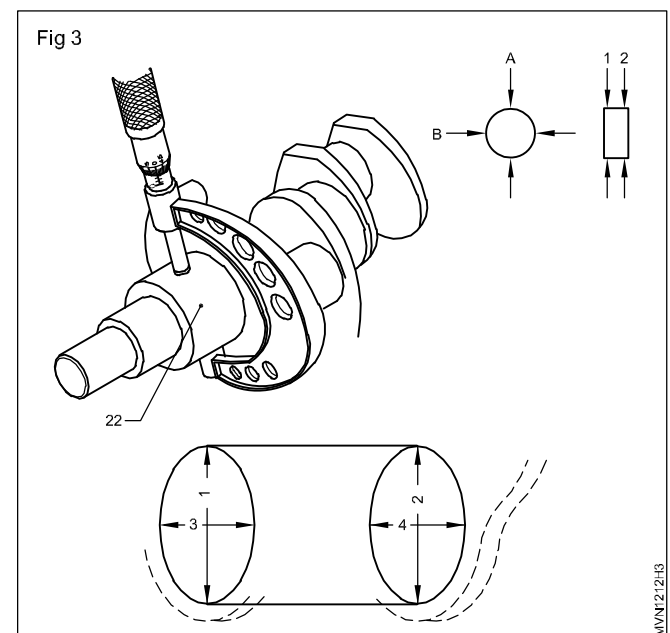


Table 3

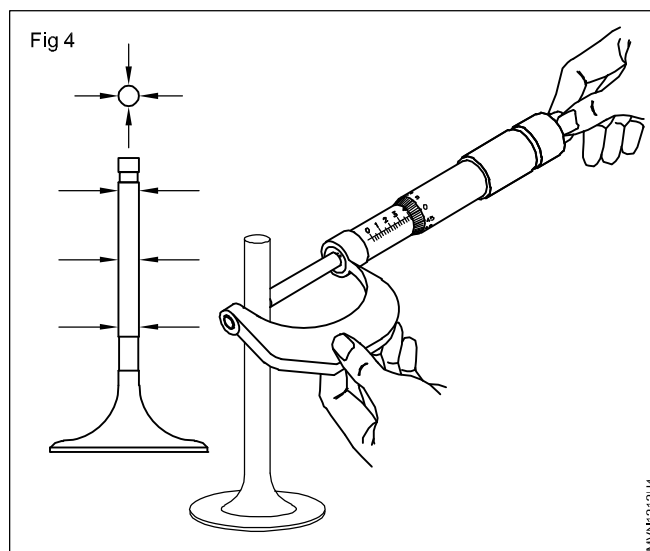
Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble scale div (b)	Least Count (c)	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$
Crank Shaft Journal Dia.			0.01	

## TASK 4 : Check the diameter of the valve stem

- 1 Using a micrometer, measure the diameter of the valve stem and record the results in a Table 4 (Fig 4).

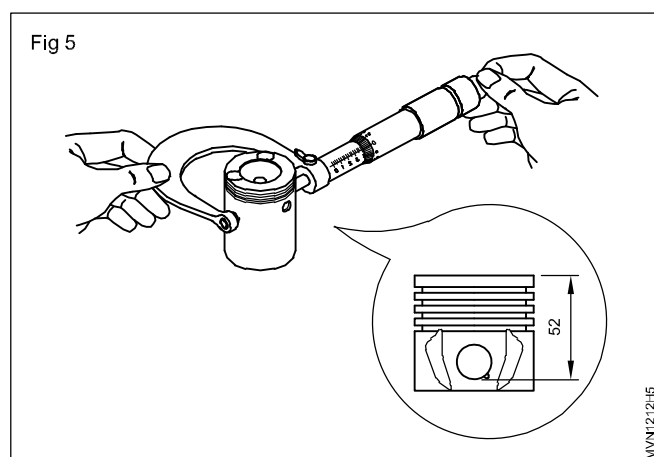
Table 4

Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble (b)	Least Count (c)	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$
Valve stem diameter			0.01	



### TASK 5: Check the piston diameter

1 Using a micrometer, measure the piston diameter at right angles to the piston pin center line, and at a position 52 mm (2.05 in.) from the top of the piston head and record the results in a Table 5 (Fig 5).



2 Using a micrometer, measure the external diameter of the piston pin and record the results in Table 6 (Fig 6).

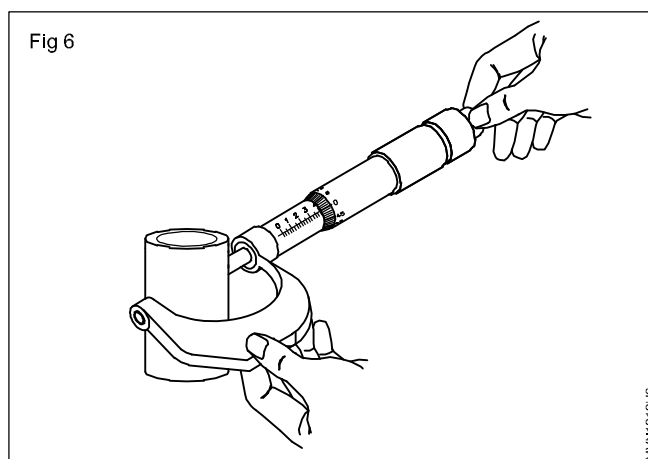


Table 5

Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble scale div (b)	Least Count	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$ (c)
Piston diameter			0.01	

Table 6

Component Name	Main Scale Reading (a)	Coinciding Thimble scale div (b)	Least Count	Result $R = a + (b \times c)$ (c)
Piston Pin diameter			0.01	



**Measure the height of oil pump rotor by using depth micrometer**

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

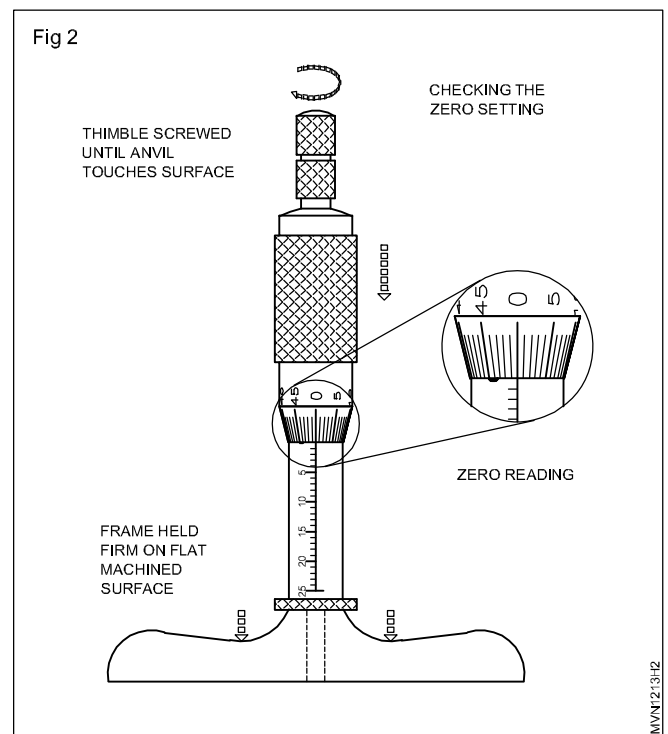
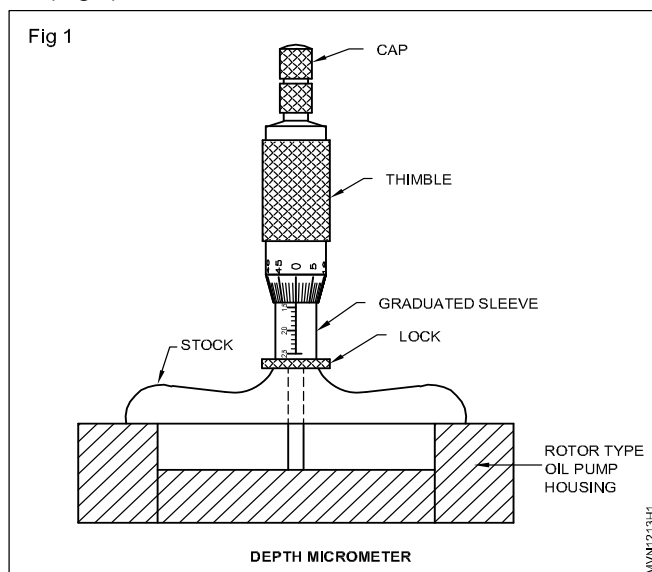
- check height of rotor type oil pump.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Oil pump rotor type	- 1 No.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Depth micrometer	- 1 Set.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
		• Soap oil	- as reqd.

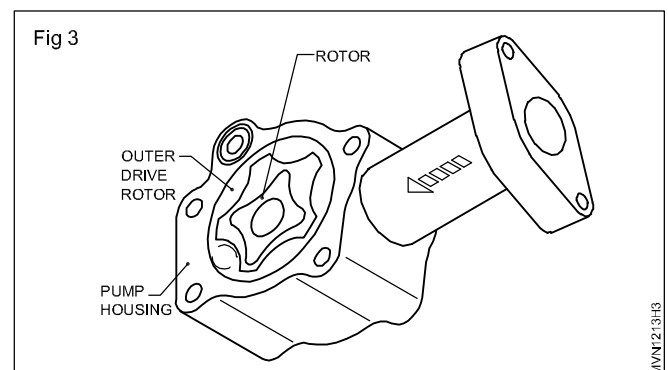
**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Measure the depth of the Rotor type oil pump**

- 1 Check the zero reading of the depth micrometer. (Fig 2)
- 2 Fix the frame surface with surface of the oil pump rotor body.
- 3 Rest your left hand on the surface of the work being measured and hold the anvil to touch the surface. (Fig 1)



- 7 Measure the actual reading the height of the rotor from the surface of the oil pump housing



**When you are satisfied with the feel.**

**Lift the micrometer carefully from the gap.**

**Zero graduation of the sleeve is on the top**

- 6 Measure the actual reading in the gap between housing surface to rotor's surface (Fig 3).

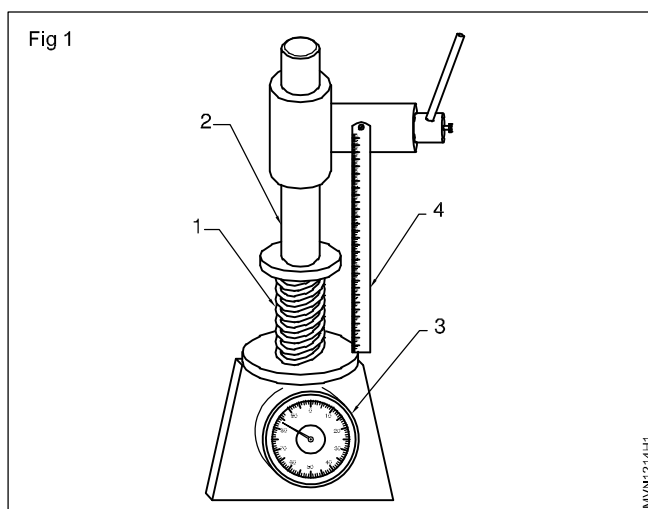
**Measure the valve spring free length**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to  
• **measure the valve spring free length.**

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Valve springs	- as reqd.
• Valve spring tester	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
		• Kerosene	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Clean the valve spring to be measure.
- 2 Clean the spring tester. (Fig 1)
- 3 Place the spring (1) vertically on the spring tester as shown in the fig. Ensure that the moveable spindle (2) does not touches the spring (1).
- 4 Note down the free length (height) of the spring (1) on the graduated scale (4).
- 5 Compare the valve spring free length with service manual specified limit.



## Measure cylinder bore diameter by using telescopic gauge

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- measure the cylinder bore diameter using telescopic gauge
- measure the connecting rod big end diameter using telescopic gauge
- measure the camshaft bearing inside diameter using telescopic gauge.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Outside micrometer - 1 No.
- Telescopic gauge - 1 Set.

#### Materials

- Engine block - 1 No.
- Cotton waste - as reqd.

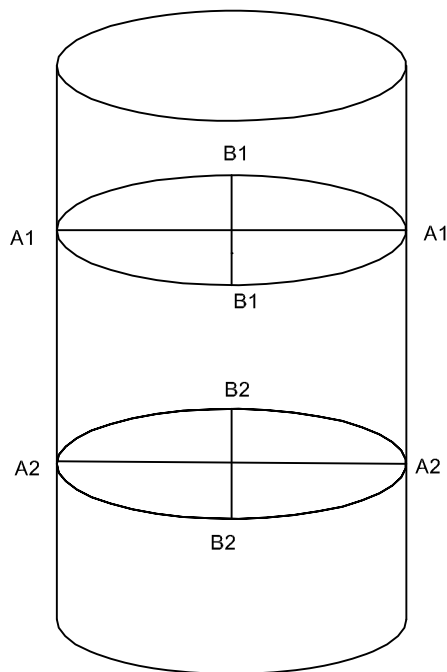
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Measure the inside diameter of a bore using telescopic gauge

1 Clean the cylinder bore with a piece of cloth.

5 Release the pressure and allow both the legs to touch on the wall of the cylinder bore.

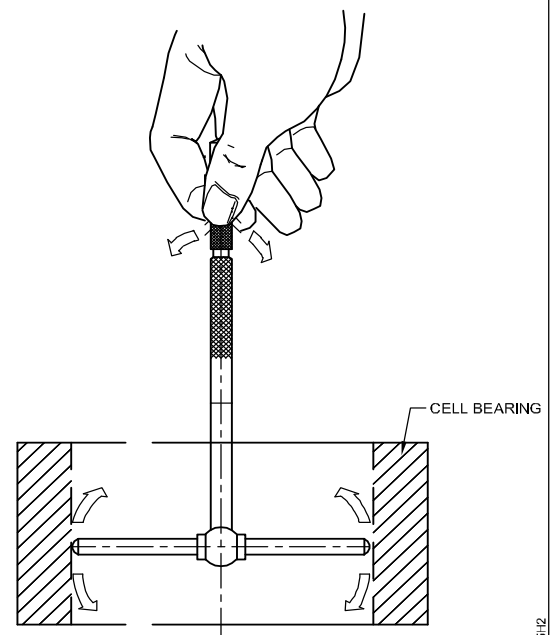
Fig 1



MVN1215H1

- 2 Measure the approximate size of the cylinder bore (Fig 1).
- 3 Select the suitable range of a telescopic gauge (Fig 2).
- 4 Press the moving leg gently and place it inside the cylinder bore.

Fig 2



MVN1215H2

- 6 Keep the telescopic gauge perpendicular to the diameter of the cylinder bore. (Fig 2)
- 7 Move the gauge slightly inside the hole and correct 'feel'.
- 8 Lock the telescopic gauge.

Remove it gently from the cylinder bore.

Transfer the measurement to an outside micrometer and read.

Take the measurement at  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$  and at  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$  and note down in Table - 1.

**Table - 1**

Sl. No.	A	B
1	$A_1$	$B_1$
2	$A_2$	$B_2$
A = NonThrust side. B = thrust side.		

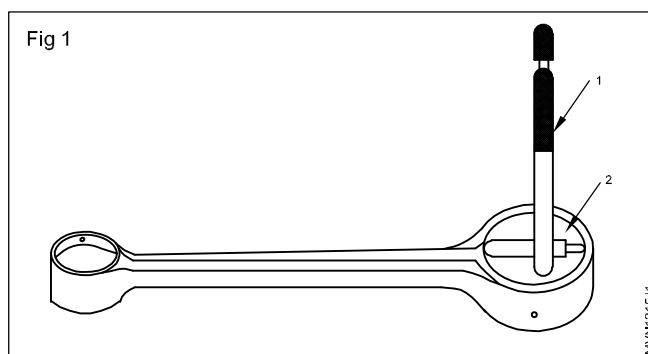
The difference of measurement between  $A_1 - B_1$  and  $A_2 - B_2$  are the ovality

The difference in measurement between  $A_1 - A_2$  and  $B_1 - B_2$  is the taper.

Note down the maximum ovality and taper. If any one of it is found more than the specified limit by the manufacturer, then recommend for reboring or replacement of the liner.

## TASK 2: Measure the connecting rod big end diameter using telescopic gauge

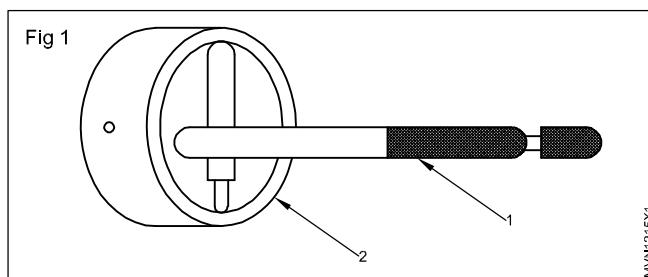
- 1 Measure the approximate size of connecting rod bore with steel rule.
- 2 Select a suitable range of a telescopic gauge (1) (Fig 1).
- 3 Press the moving leg gently and place it inside the connecting rod bore (2).
- 4 Release the press and allow both the legs to touch on the wall of the connecting rod bore (2).
- 5 Keep the telescopic gauge perpendicular to the diameter of the connecting rod bore.
- 6 Move the gauge slightly inside the connecting rod bore and get the correct feel.
- 7 Lock the telescopic gauge (1).
- 8 Remove it gently from the connecting rod bore.



- 9 Transfer the measurement to an o/s micrometer & read compare the reading with service manual specified limit.

## TASK 3 : Measuring practice on inside diameter of a cam-shaft bearing with telescopic gauge

- 1 Measure the approximate size of cam-shaft bearing (2) with steel rule.
- 2 Select a suitable range of a telescopic gauge (1) (Fig 1).
- 3 Press the moving legs gently and place it inside cam-shaft bearing (2).
- 4 Release and press and allow both legs to touch on the wall of the cam-shaft bearing (2).
- 5 Keep the telescopic gauge perpendicular to the diameter of the cam-shaft bearing.
- 6 Move the gauge slightly inside the cam-shaft bearing & get the correct feel.



- 7 Lock the telescopic gauge.
- 8 Remove it gently from the cam-shaft bearing.
- 9 Transfer the measurement to an o/s micro-meter & read the measurement and compare with manufactures standard specification.

**Measure cylinder bore taper and ovality by dial bore gauge**

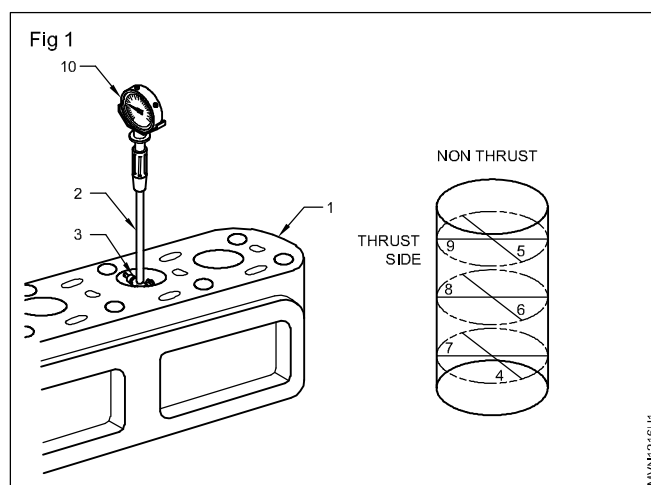
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- clean the cylinder bore
- measure the cylinder bore diameter, taper/ovality with a bore dial gage

Requirements			
<b>Tools / Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
• Dial indication	- 1 No.	• Baniyan cloth	- as reqd.
• Inside micrometer	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Multi cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Lube oil	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Clean cylinder bore with a piece of cloth.
- 2 Measure inside diameter of the bore with an inside micrometer (80 mm).
- 3 Select the correct size of extension rod (1) which is more than measuring range. (80.8 mm)
- 4 Assemble the extension rod on the stem of the dial test indicator (2)
- 5 Press the spring loaded plunger end (3) as it enters inside the bore.
- 6 Keep the bore gauge parallel to the cylinder wall by slightly rotating the gauge (2).
- 7 Set the needle at 'O' in dial indicator (10).
- 8 Take measurement at (6) with the bore gauge and note down the reading.
- 9 Take another reading (5) at right angles to the first reading.
- 10 Repeat the above at three places (7,8 and 9).
- 11 The difference in measurement between (5) & (6), at all places is ovality. The difference in measurement between (7) and (8), (8) and (9) and (7) is taper.
- 12 Note down maximum ovality and taper. If any one of them is more than the specified limit, recommend for reboring/replacement of liner. (Fig 1)



**Measure wear on crankshaft and valve guide by using dial indicator**

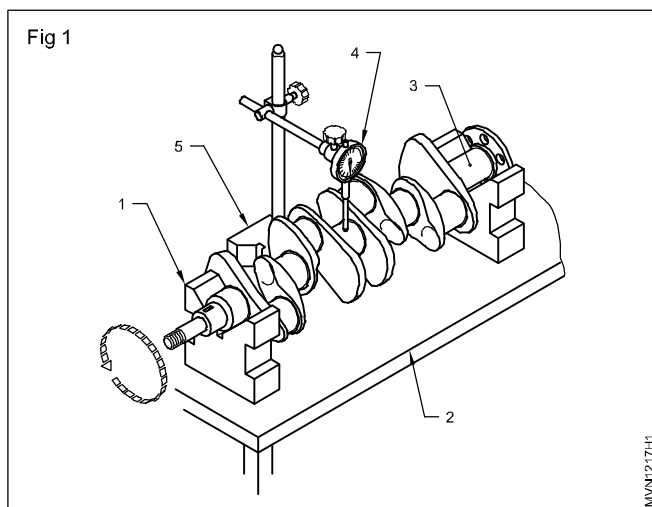
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check wear of crank shaft
- check end play of crank shaft
- check wear of valve guide.

Requirements			
<b>Tools / Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Banian cloth	- as reqd.
• Outside micrometer	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Feeler gauge	- 1 No.	• Crank shaft	- 1 No.
• Dial indicator	- 1 No.	• Valve guide	- 1 No.
• Magnetic base	- 1 No.	• Fly wheel	- 1 No.
<b>Equipments</b>			
• Work bench	- 1 No.		

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Check wear of crank shaft (Fig 1)**



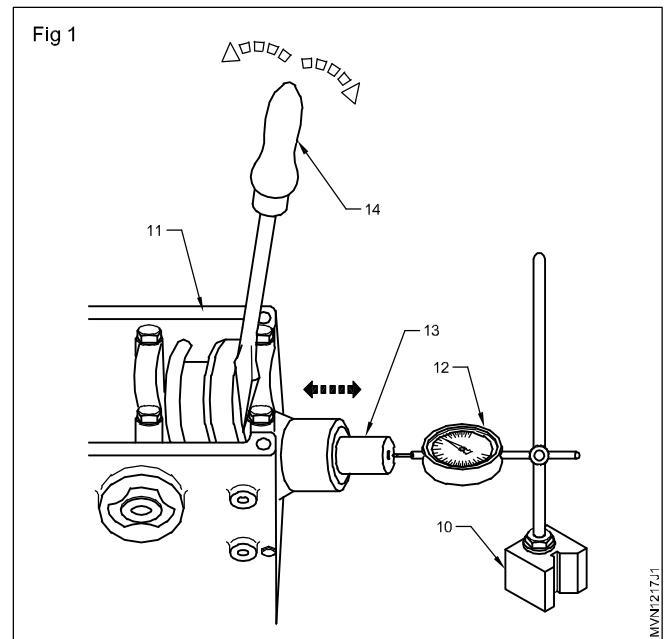
- 1 Place two 'V' blocks (1) on the surface table (2).
- 2 Place the shaft(3) on the 'V' blocks and adjust the distance between the 'V' blocks in such a way that on either side of the 'V' block the shaft does not over hang more than 1/10th of its total length.

- 3 Place the dial indicator with the magnetic base (5) on the surface table.
- 4 Bring the dial indicator (4) at the centre of the shaft (3)
- 5 Push the dial indicator's (4) needle on the shaft so that the needle shows some deflection.
- 6 Adjust the indicator's needle to 'O' position by rotating the dial.
- 7 Rotate the shaft (3) by hand and note down the deflection of the needle. This will give the bend of the shaft at the centre.
- 8 Repeat the above steps at three places, so as to cover the complete length of the shaft (3).
- 9 Note down the maximum wear at all the places.

**Replace the shaft, if the maximum bend at any one or more places is found more than the limit specified by the manufacturer.**

## TASK 2: Checking crankshaft end play (Fig 1)

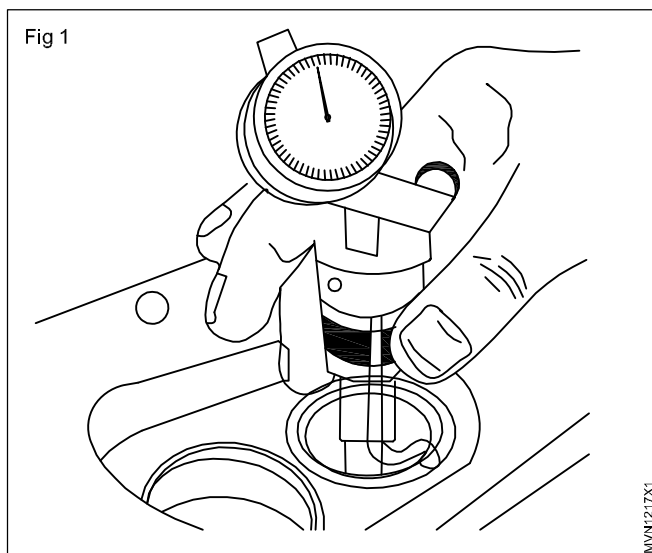
- 1 Fix the magnetic base (10) on the cylinder block (11) or on inspection table.
- 2 Set the dial gauge (12) on the crankshaft flange (13)
- 3 Set the dial gauge for 'O' (zero).
- 4 By using the lever (14) move the crankshaft forward and backward.
- 5 Note down the crankshaft end play and compare with the manufacturer's specifications.



## TASK 3: Check the wear of valve guides

Place the dial indicator with a magnetic base on the face of the cylinder head (Fig 1).

- 1 Set the position of the needle of the dial indicator to zero.  
Place the dial indicator with a magnetic base on the face of the cylinder head (Fig 1).



- 2 Set the position of the needle of the dial indicator to zero.
- 3 Move the valve in a radial direction away from the dial indicator as far as possible.
- 4 Position the contact point of the dial indicator on the edge of the valve head.
- 5 Move the valve in a radial direction towards the dial indicator as far as possible.
- 6 Note the distance of movement on the dial indicator.

**If the distances is greater than the maximum clearance of the valve in the valve guide, replace the valve guide. This is called service wear.**

**Note : All 'lubricant must be removed from the outside of the inlet and exhaust valve guides before the valve seal in installed. Do not cut valve seat before the valve guide is installed.**

**Check engine head flatness by using straight edge with feeler gauge**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check flatness of surface by straight edge and feeler gauge.

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainee's tools kit - 1 No.
- Straight edge - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.
- Long leaf feeler gauge - 1 No.

**Equipments**

- Work table - 1 No.

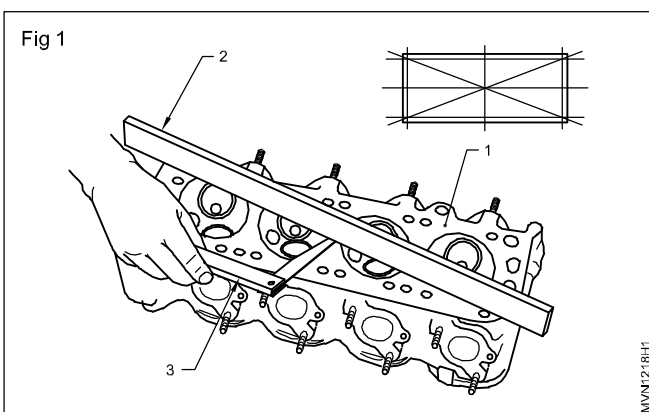
**Materials**

- Cylinder head - 1 No.
- Banian cloth - as reqd.
- Cotton waste - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Check engine head flatness by feeler gauge**

- 1 Clean the cylinder head surface to be checked (Fig 1).



- 2 Place part (1) on a plain surface, so that surface, to be checked, faces upward.

- 3 Keep the straight edge (2) on surface and press the straight edge at the centre with your left hand.
- 4 Insert the feeler gauge (3) leaves between the straight edge (2) and the surface.
- 5 Note down the thickness of the thickest leaf/leaves which can be inserted between the straight edge (2) and the surface. This thickness gives the maximum face out in that direction.
- 6 Repeat the above steps in 4 directions and note down the maximum face out in all the 4 directions.
- 7 Recommend for resurfacing/replacement of parts (1) if maximum face out in any one or more directions is more than the limit specified by the manufacturer.



## Check piston ring end gap and piston to cylinder wall clearance by using feeler gauge

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the piston ring end gap
- check piston to cylinder wall clearance.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tools kit - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Work table - 1 No.

#### Materials

- Piston - 1 No.
- Piston rings - 1 No.
- Engine block with liner - 1 No.
- Banian cloth - 1 No.
- Cotton waste - 1 No.

### PROCEDURE

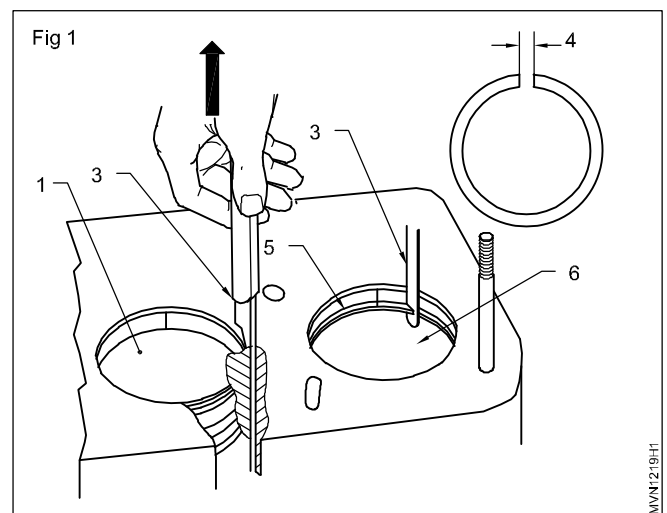
#### TASK 1: Check end gap of piston ring and piston to cylinder wall clearance with the feeler gauge

- 1 Clean the cylinder bore (1) thoroughly.
- 2 Insert the piston ring inside the cylinder bore squarely.
- 3 Use a bore piston to place the piston ring square in the liner/bore.
- 4 Insert feeler gauge (3) and measure the ring end gap (4).
- 5 Clean the cylinder block bore.
- 6 Insert long leaf feeler gauge on the minor dia. of piston.
- 7 Insert a bore piston, which moves with slight pressure up and down. (Fig 1)

**If it is tight, reduce the thickness of feeler gauge and verify with the bore piston.**

**If the bore piston moves very free, increase the feeler gauge thickness.**

- 8 Calculate the thickness of feeler gauge, which allows movement of piston with a slight pressure.



**This thickness is the piston to cylinder wall clearance match the same with the company specification.**

**Perform engine vacuum test by using vacuum gauge**

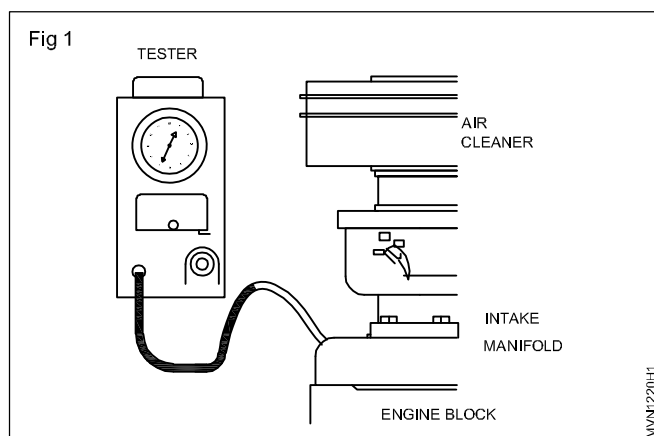
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the engine vacuum test.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 Set.	• Rubber hose	- as reqd.
• Vacuum gauge	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Paper	- 1 Sheet.
• Running Engine Petrol / Diesel	- 1 Set.	• Pencil	- 1 No.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Warm up the given engine.
- 2 Connect the vacuum gauge to the intake manifold (disconnect vacuum booster is used) (Fig 1).



- 3 Read carefully of the vacuum gauge reading at idle speed, normal speed & high speed.
- 4 List the reading (measurement) one by one.

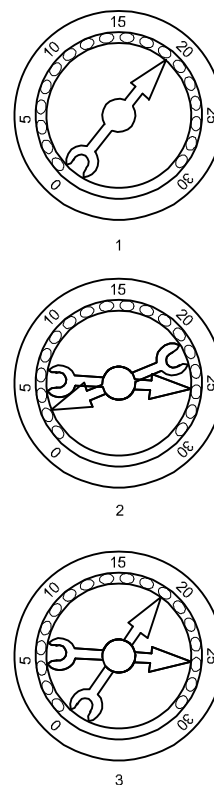
**Adjust the gauge damper until needle moves easily without excessive flutter.**

**Normal reading:** needle between 15 and 22 in holding steady. (Fig 2)

**Intake leak:** A low, steady reading can be caused by an air intake manifold or carburetor mounting flange gasket leak.

**Blown head gasket:** A regular drop of fair magnitude can be caused by a blown head gasket or wrapped head the block surface.

Fig 2



**Deduct 1 inch for each 1,000 feet of elevation.**

## Set the recommended tyre pressure

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to  
• **check existing tyre pressure on a vehicle.**

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Tyre pressure gauge	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Air pressure inflating unit	- 1 No.		
<b>Equipments</b>			
• Running Vehicle	- 1 No.		
• Air compressor	- 1 No.		

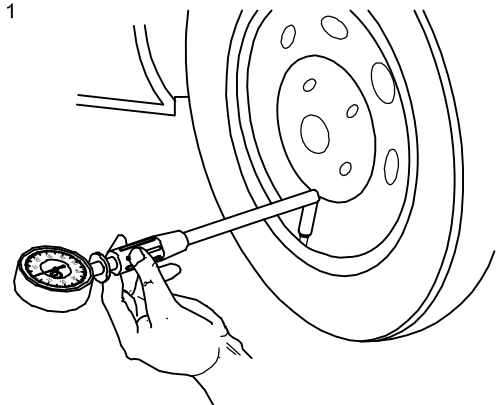
### PROCEDURE

- 1 Clean around valve stem/mouth area.
- 2 Unscrew the valve stem cap from the valve stem on the tyre.
- 3 Press the air pressure gauge evenly on to the valve stem and record the reading given. (Fig 1)
- 4 Compare the gauge reading with the recommended pressure.
- 5 Insert the air inflator unit if the wheel pressure is low.
- 6 Inflate the air in the wheel.

**Some equipments than the facility to preset the air pressure. Once the preset pressure is achieved, it automatically trips.**

- 7 Check the air pressure in the wheel.
- 8 Check air valve for leaking.
- 9 Replace the valve stem cap if there is no leak.

Fig 1



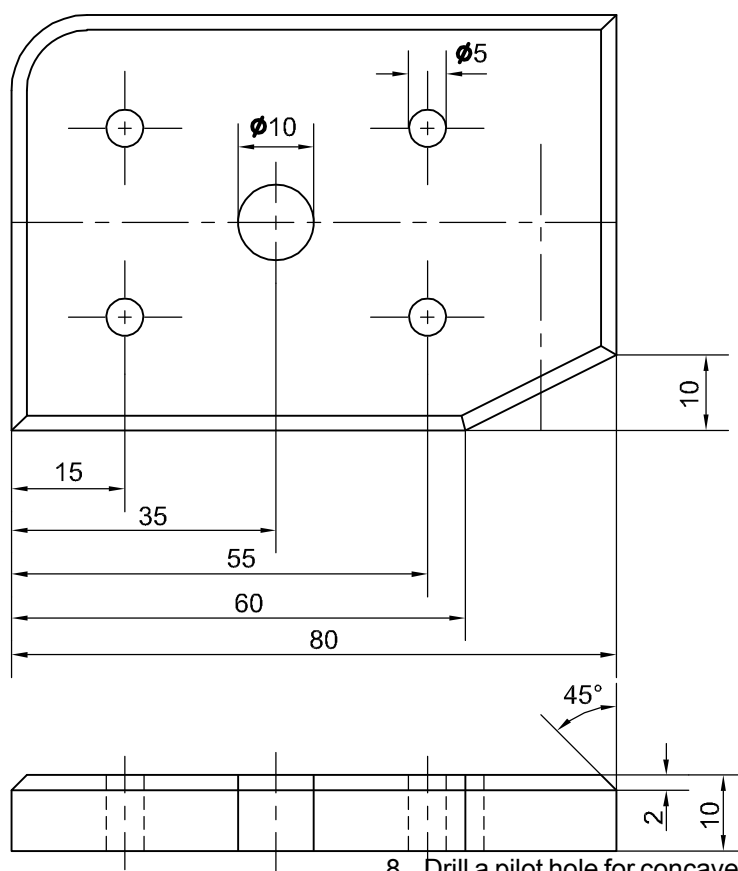
#### Caution:

- 1 **Never check tyre pressure, when tyre is hot after a long run.**
- 2 **Ensure there is sufficient air in Air Pre-Tank free from contamination like water, oil, dust etc.**

**Practice on marking and drilling in metal surface**

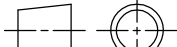
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- file surfaces flat within + 0.5 mm
- file angular surfaces
- chamfer edges by filing
- file concave surfaces
- file convex surfaces
- drill through holes.



**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Check the raw material for its size.
- 2 File flat and square to finish the block 55 x 10 x 80.
- 3 Mark centre lines for the holes as per drawing.
- 4 Mark the angular surface using a combination set.
- 5 Mark the concave profile as per the drawing
- 6 Centre punch the centres for the holes to be drilled.
- 7 Check the angle with a combination set.
- 8 Drill a pilot hole for concave profile.
- 9 Saw cut to remove the excess metal for the profile.
- 10 File with flat file the two sides.
- 11 File with round file for the concave profile and check with the gauge.
- 12 Chamfer the edges of the block for 1 mm width all over.
- 13 Remove the burrs from drill holes.

1	65ISF12x85	-	Fe310	-	-		
NO.OFF	STOCK SIZE	SEMI-PRODUCT	MATERIAL	PROJECT NO.	PART NO.		
SCALE 1:1		DRILLING AND FILING RADIUS				DEVIATIONS ±0.1	
						CODE NO. MVN1322E1	

## Skill sequence

### Drill through hole

**Objective:** This shall help you to

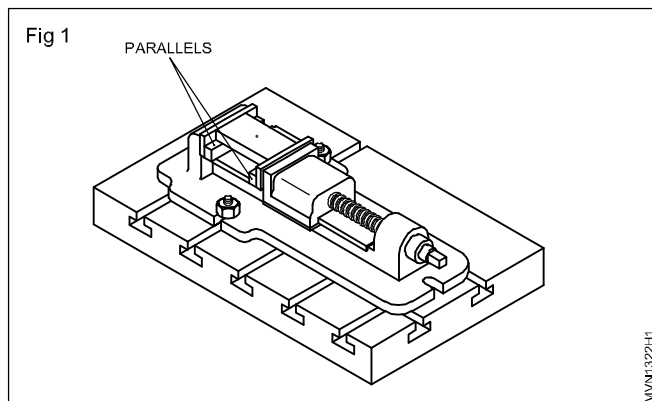
- drill through hole to the required size.

#### Method of Drilling

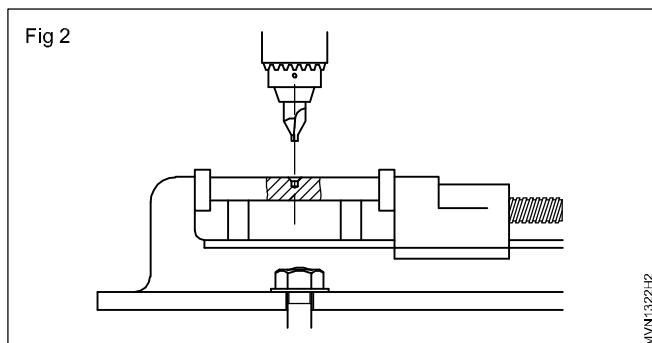
Check the given raw material for its size.

Mark and locate the centres for the hole to be drilled.

Mount the job in the machine vice on the parallels and clamp it securely to the drill-press-table. (Fig 1)



Set the work table (Fig 2) in such a manner that a drill can be fixed and removed without disturbing the vice or the job.



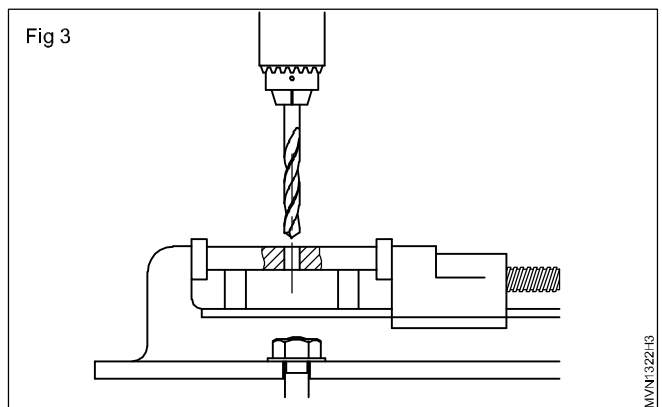
Fix the centre drill on the drilling machine spindle and align with the centre mark on the job.

Spot the hole location with a centre drill.

Remove the centre drill and fix 8 mm drill for pilot hole.

Start the drilling machine.

Feed the drill and drill through hole. (Fig 3)



Set the spindle speed of the drilling machine to the nearest calculating r.p.m.

$$V = \frac{\pi d \times n}{1000}$$

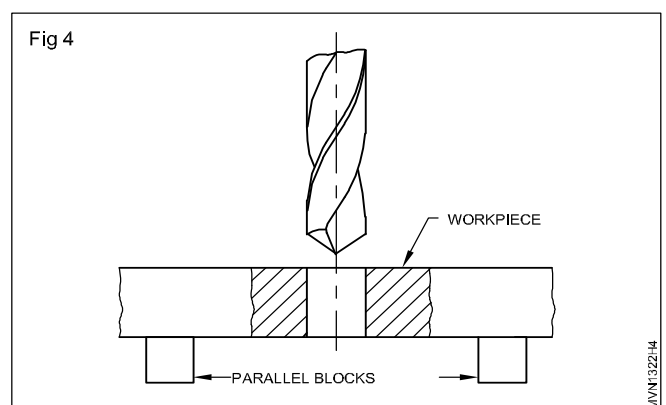
Remove drill from the machine without disturbing the set up.

Fix 14.5 mm drill and drill through hole.

**While drilling use cutting fluid.**

Release the drill frequently from the hole for the chips to be flushed out by the cutting fluid.

Remove the drill and job from the machine. (Fig 4)



## Skill sequence

### Drill blind hole

**Objective:** This shall help you to

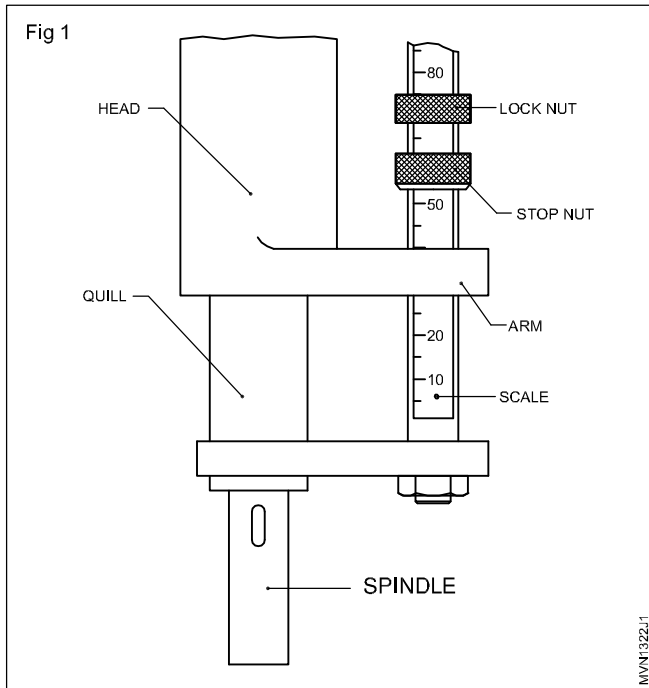
- drill blind holes to the required depth using the depth stop.

#### Method of controlling depth of blind holes

While drilling blind holes, it is necessary to control the feed of the drill. Most machines are provided with a depth stop arrangement by which the downward movement of the spindle can be controlled. (Fig 1)

Most depth stop arrangements will have graduations by which the advancement of the spindle can be observed.

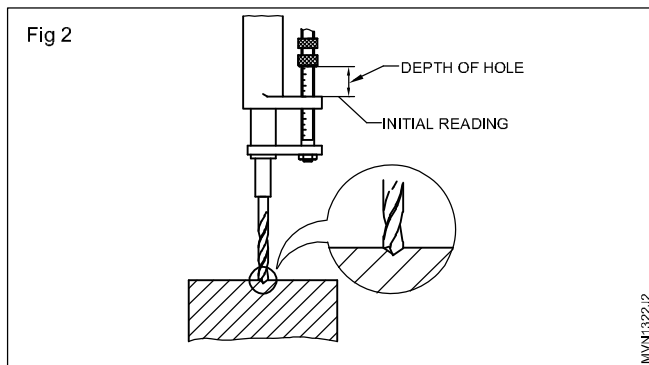
Generally, the blind hole depth tolerances are given up to 0.5 mm accuracy.



### Setting for drilling blind holes

For blind hole-depth setting, first the work is held on the machine and the hole is located correctly.

The drill is started, and it drills until the full diameter is formed. Note down the initial reading at this point. (Fig 2)



Add the initial reading to the depth of the blind hole to be drilled.

Initial Reading + Depth of Hole = Setting

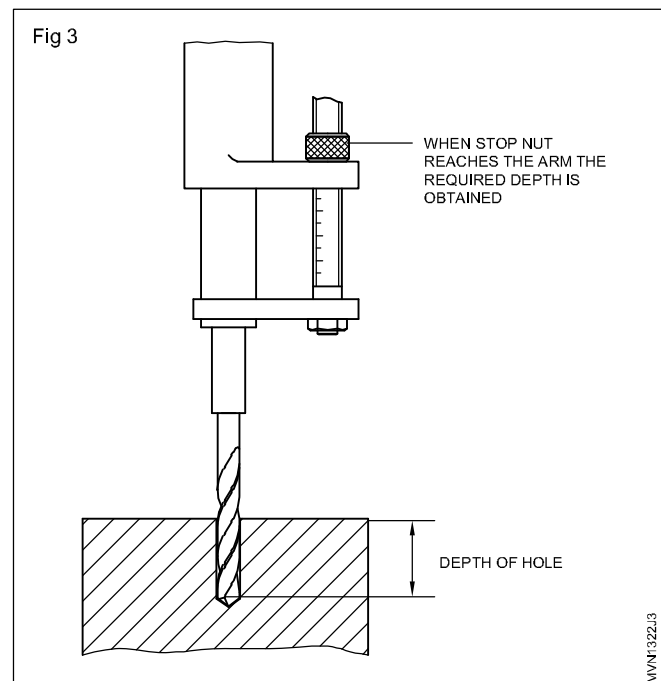
Adjust the stop next to the required setting, using the scale.

Tighten the lock nut to prevent the setting from being disturbed.

Start the machine and feed the drill. When the stop nut reaches the arm the blind hole is drilled to the required depth. (Fig 3)

**While drilling, release the drill frequently from the hole for the chips to be flushed out by the cutting fluid.**

**Do not drill on a light component without clamping. If not clamped, the job will rotate along with drill.**



## Following the safety precautions while using drilling machine

**Objectives:** This shall help you to

- follow personal safety
- follow drilling machine safety
- follow job safety
- follow drill bit safety.

Wear a dress suitable for work

Ensure that the spindle head and table is locked properly.

Ensure the workpiece and the drill should be rigidly held.

Switch off power when not in use.

Clean and oil the machine after use.

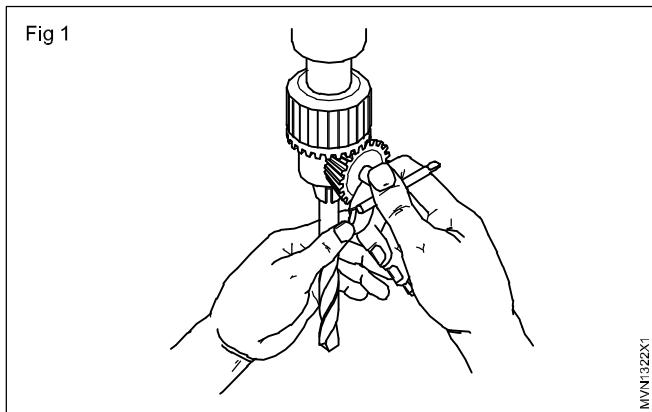
Use a brush to clean the chips and swarf.

Select proper cutting speed according to material.

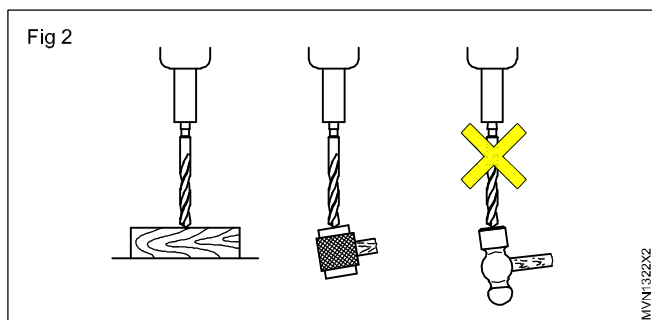
Select proper cutting fluid according to material.

Remove the workpiece only after getting cooled or with a tong.

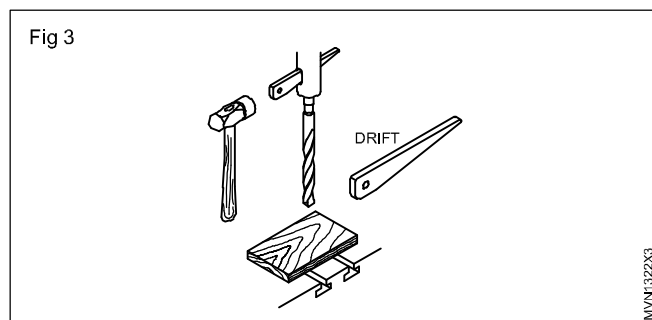
While fixing the drill in a socket or sleeve, the tang portion should align in the slot. (Fig 1)



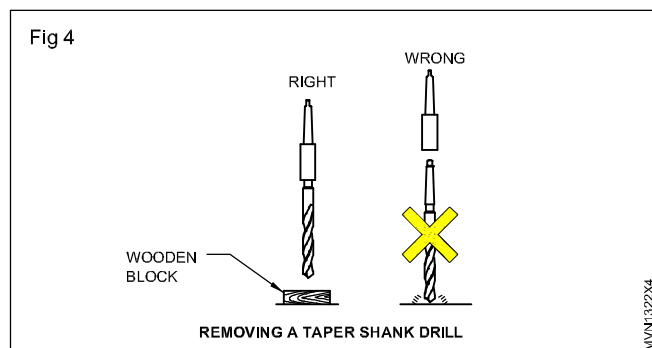
Never use the method shown in Fig 2 to fix the drill in the sleeve. (Fig 2)



Use a drift to remove drills and sockets from the machine spindle. (Fig 3)



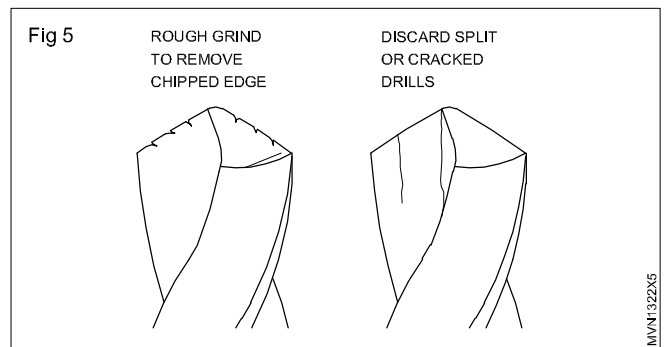
While removing the drill from the sockets/sleeves, don't allow it to fall on the table or jobs. (Fig 4)



### Points to be considered when sharpening drills

Grind as little as possible from the drill. Remove only enough to sharpen the cutting edges.

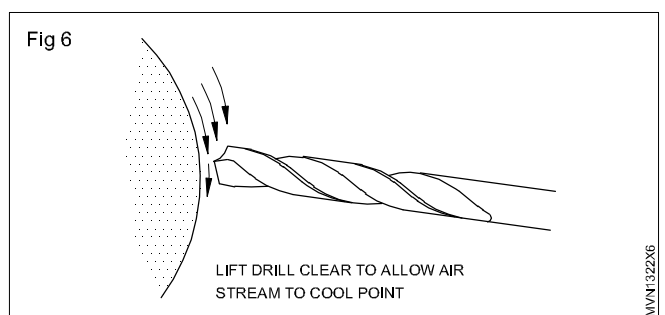
Rough down the drill point with a coarse grit wheel when the edges are badly chipped. (Fig 5)



**Never re-sharpen a cracked or split drill.**

**Avoid overheating the drill.**

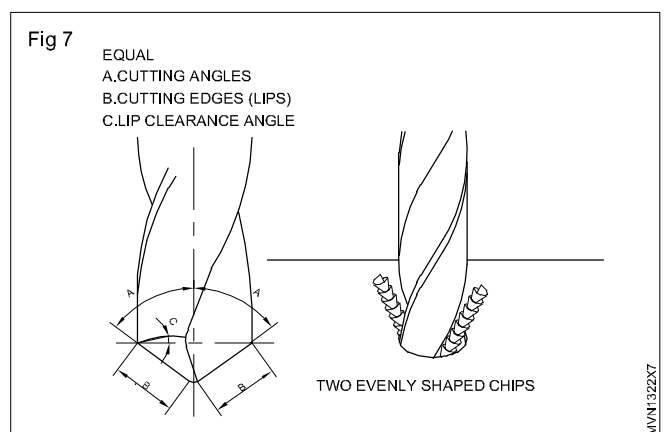
Apply light pressure against the wheel face. Lift the edge clear of the wheel face frequently. This allows the air stream produced by the wheel to cool the drill point. (Fig 6)



**Cooling a drill rapidly by quenching in cold water may cause cracking of the cutting edge.**

Re-sharpening of very small drills required great skill. They require proportionally less movement to produce the cutting angles.

Set the spindle revolution of the drilling machine to give a cutting speed of 25 to 30 meters per minute. A drill that has been re-sharpened correctly will: (Fig 7)



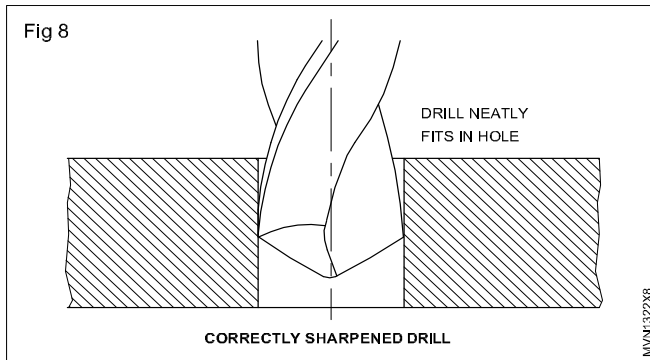
Produce two evenly curled chips from its cutting edges.

Require only moderate pressure to feed it into the work.

If the drill fits without any play it means that (Fig 8)

The cutting edges and angles are equal

The drill has produced a hole of the correct size.

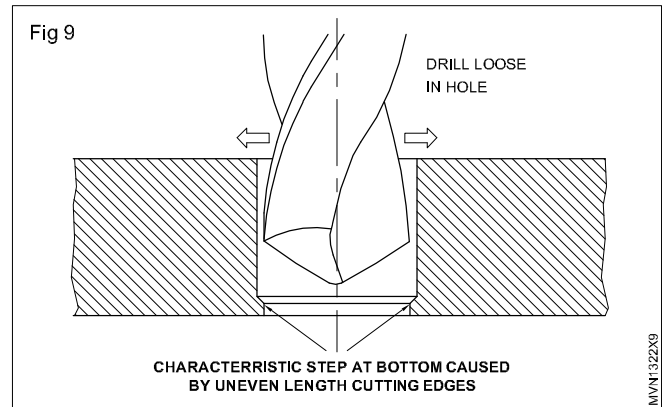


Any looseness of the drill in the hole means: (Fig 9)

The cutting edges are of uneven length

The drill has produced an oversized hole.

A drill that has been ground with uneven or too great a clearance will



Tend to chatter during starting

Produce an out-of round hole.



## Cut internal threads in blind hole by using tap

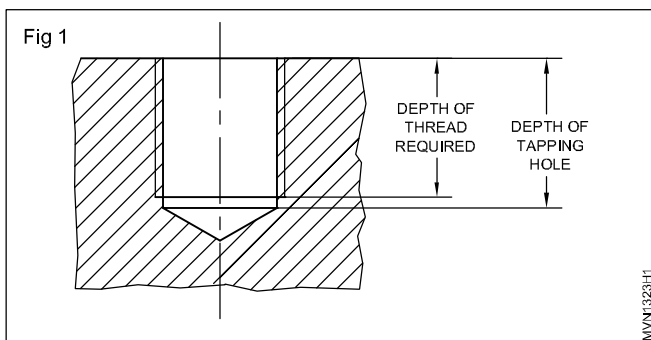
**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- cut internal threads in blind holes.

### Drilling a blind hole

Determine the tap size for drill hole using the table for tapping.

Drill a blind hole (Fig 1) using the depth stop arrangement. The depth of the tapping hole should be slightly more than the depth of the required thread.



### Procedure for threading

Remove metal chips, if any, from the blind hole by turning it upside down and slightly tapping it on a wooden surface.

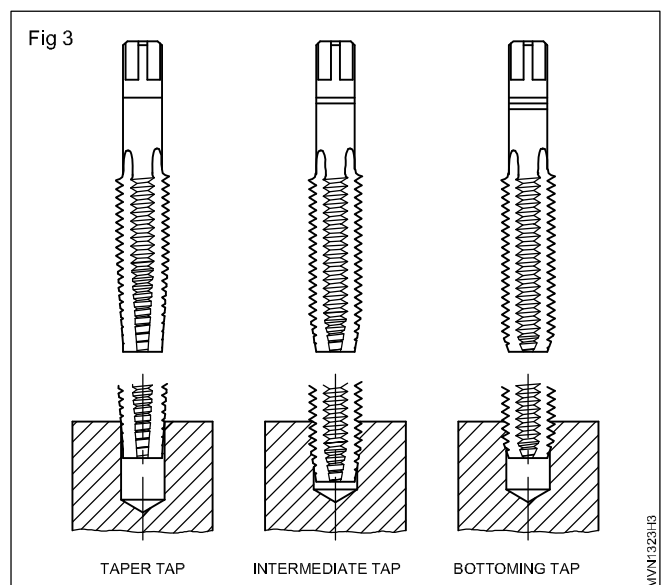
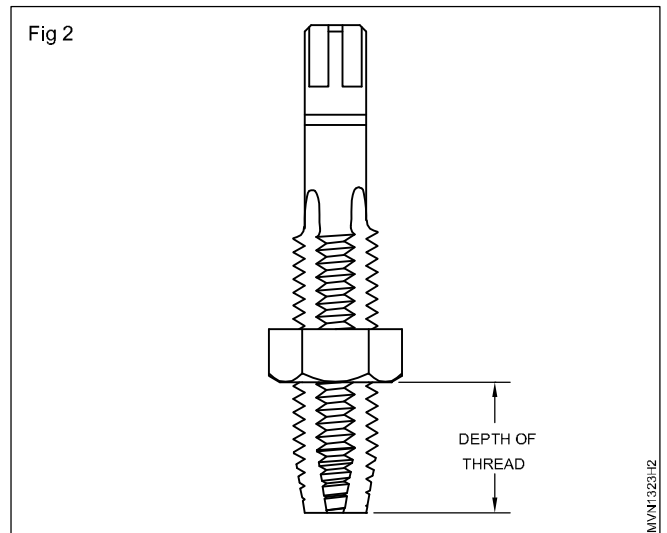
**Do not clear chips by blowing as it can cause injury to your eyes.**

Screw a matching nut on the first tap to act as a depth stop. (Fig 2)

Thread the blind hole until the nut touches the plate surface.

Remove the chips from the hole frequently, using a flattened and bent wire.

Finish tapping the hole with intermediate and bottoming tap. Set nut to control the depth of thread. (Fig 3)



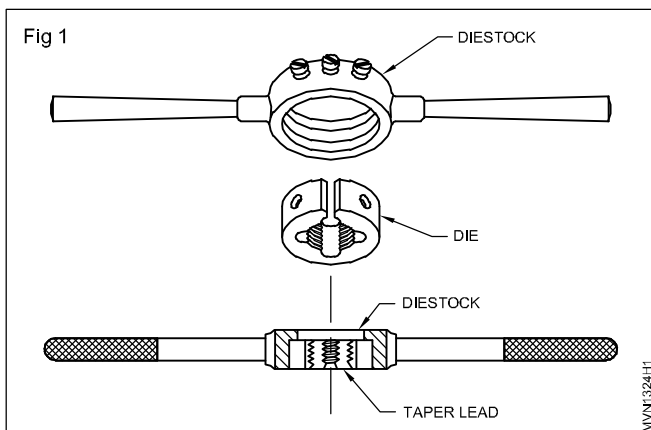
## Cut external threads by using dies

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to  
• cut external threads using dies.

### Check blank size

Blank size = thread size - 0.1 x pitch of thread

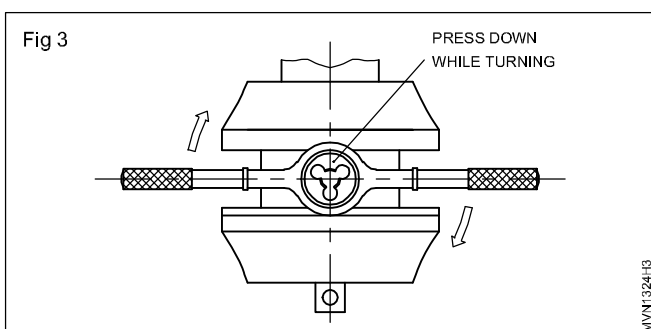
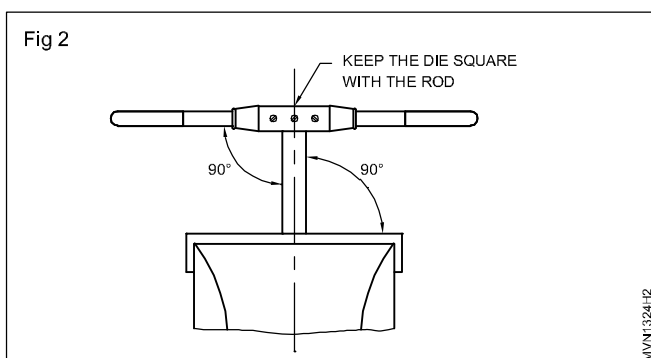
Fix the die in the die stock and place the leading side of the die opposite to the step of the die stock. (Fig 1)



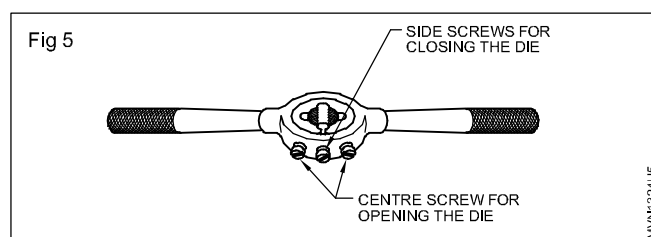
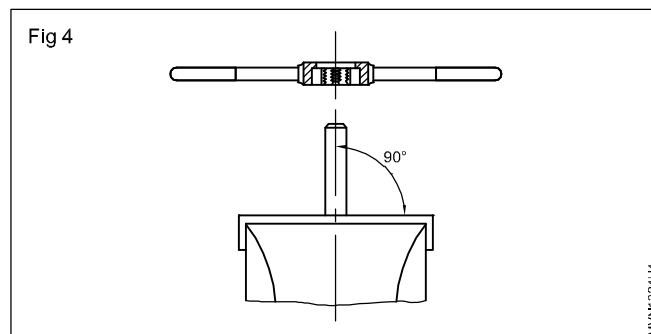
**Use false jaws for ensuring a good grip in the vice.**

**Project the blank above the vice-just the required thread length only.**

Place the leading side of the die on the chamfer of the work. (Fig 2 & Fig 3)



Make sure that the die is fully open by tightening the centre screw of the die stock. (Fig 4 & Fig 5)



Start the die, square to the bolt centre line.

Apply pressure on the die stock evenly and turn in the clockwise direction to advance the die on the bolt blank.

Cut slowly and reverse the die for a short distance in order to break the chips.

**Use a cutting lubricant.**

Increase the depth of the cut gradually by adjusting the outer screws.

Check the thread with a matching nut.

Repeat the cutting until the nut matches.

**Too much depth of cut at one time will spoil the threads. It can also spoil the die.**

**Clean the die frequently to prevent the chips from clogging and spoiling the thread.**

## Skill sequence

### Ream through holes

**Objective:** This shall help you to

- ream through holes within a limit and check reamed holes with cylindrical pins.

#### Determining the drill size for reaming

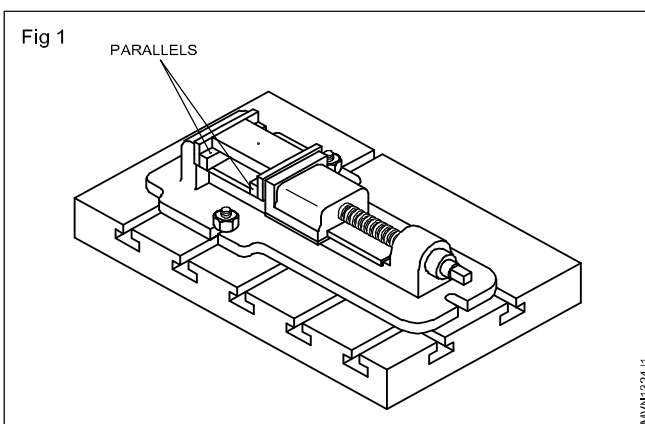
Use the formula,

Drill diameter = reamed hole size. (undersize + oversize)  
[Refer to the table for the recommended undersize in Related Theory on drill sizes for reaming. (Seetable1.)]

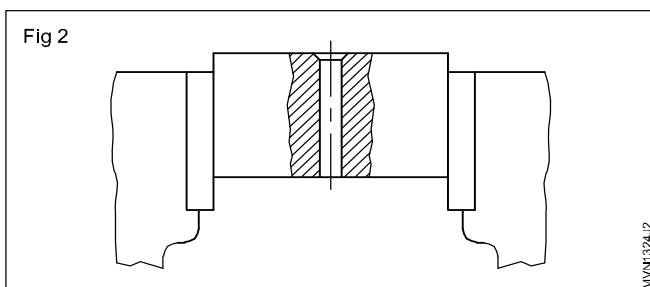
#### Procedure for hand reaming

Drill holes for reaming as per the sizes determined.

Place the work on parallels while setting on the machine vice (Fig 1).



Chamfer the hole ends slightly. This removes burrs and will also help to align the reamer vertically. Fix the work in the bench vice. Use vice clamps to protect the finished surfaces. Ensure that the job is horizontal. (Fig 2)



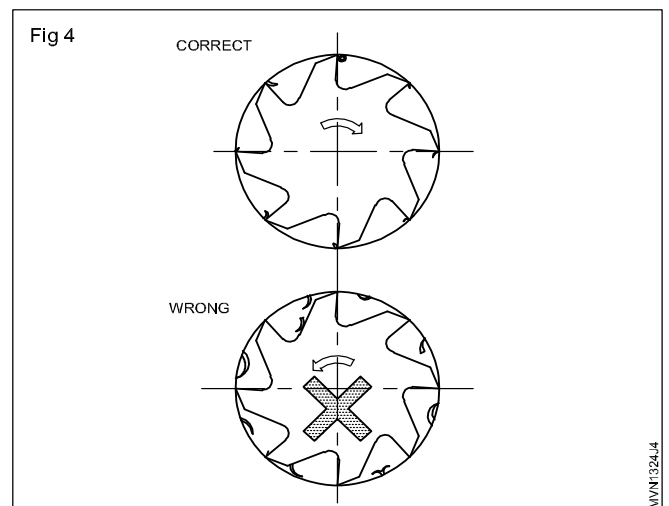
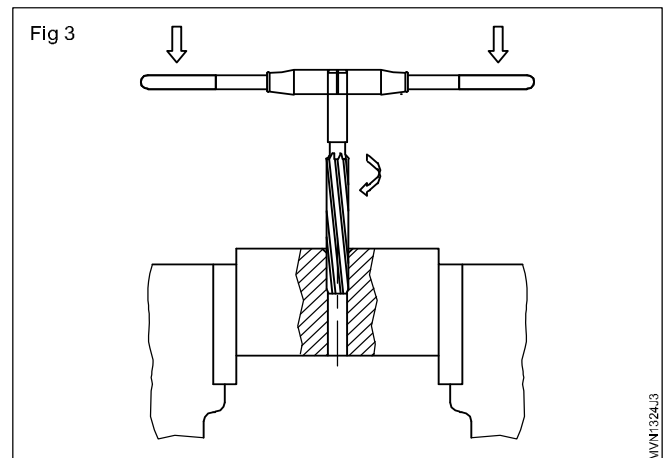
Fix the tap wrench on the square end and place the reamer vertically in the hole. Check the alignment with a try square. Make corrections, if necessary. Turn the tap wrench in a clockwise direction applying a slight downward pressure at the same time. Apply pressure evenly at both ends of the tap wrench.

Apply cutting fluid.

Turn the tap wrench steadily and slowly, maintaining the downward pressure. (Fig 3)

Do not turn in the reverse direction for it will scratch the reamed hole (Fig 4).

Ream the hole through. Ensure that the taper lead length of the reamer comes out well and clear from the bottom of the work.

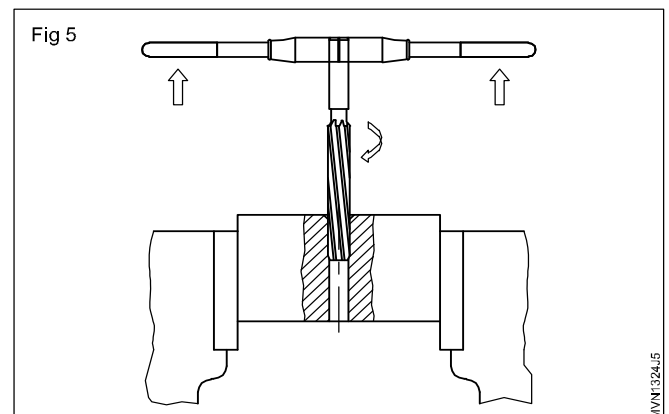


**Do not allow the end of the reamer to strike on the vice.**

Remove the reamer with an upward pull until the reamer is clear of the hole. (Fig 5)

Remove the burrs from the bottom of the reamed hole.

Clean the hole. Check the accuracy with the cylindrical pins supplied.



## Skill Sequence

### Scrape and check curved surfaces

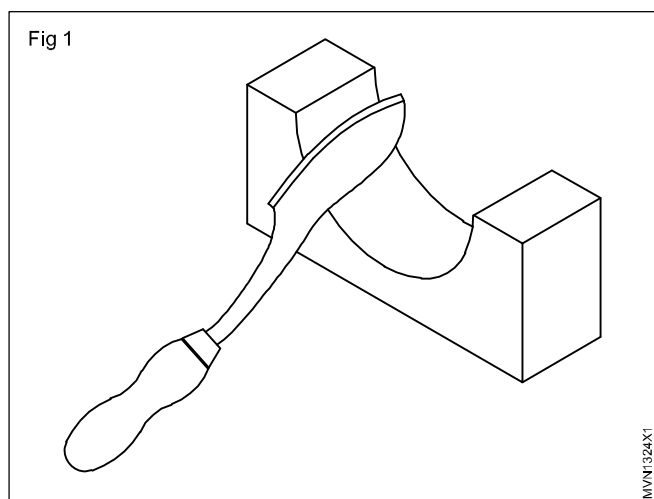
**Objective:** This shall help you to

- **scrape and check curved surfaces.**

A half round scraper is the most suitable scraper for scraping curved surfaces. This method of scraping differs from that of flat scraping.

#### Method

For scraping curved surface the handle is held by hand in such a way as to facilitate the movement of the scraper in the required direction. (Fig 1)

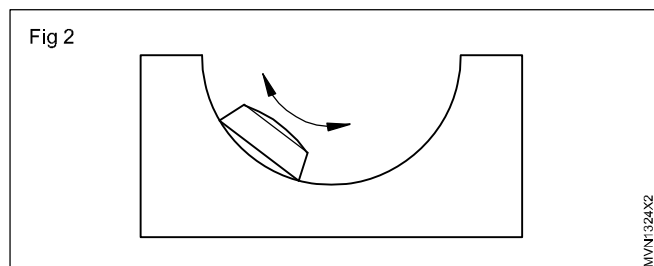


Pressure is exerted with the other hand on the shank for cutting.

Rough scraping will need excessive pressure with longer strokes.

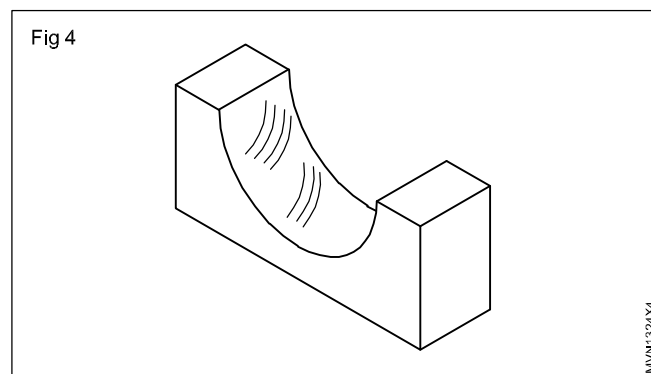
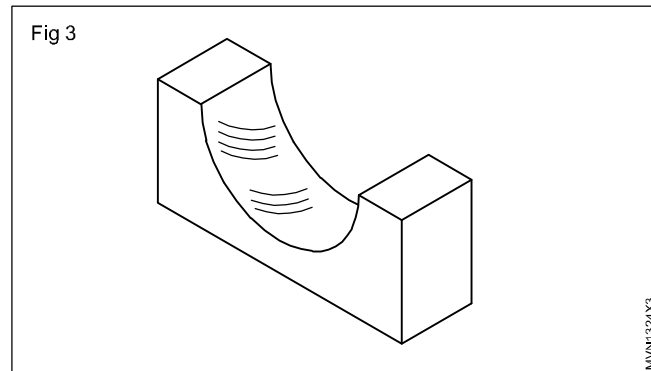
For fine scraping, pressure is reduced, and the stroke length also becomes shorter.

Cutting action takes place both on forward and return strokes. (Fig 2)

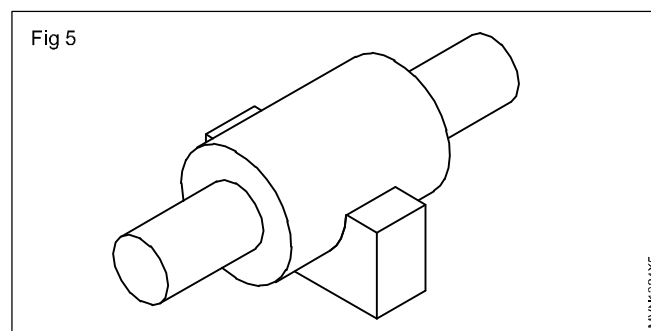


During the forward movement one cutting edge acts, and on the return stroke, the other cutting-edge acts.

After each pass, change the direction of cutting. This ensures a uniform surface. (Figs 3 & 4)



Use a master bar to check the correctness of the surface being scraped. (Fig 5)



**Apply a thin coating of Prussian blue on the master bar to locate the high spots.**

## Skill Sequence

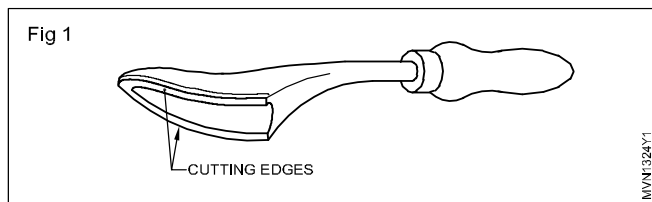
### Sharpening scrapers

**Objectives :** This shall help you to

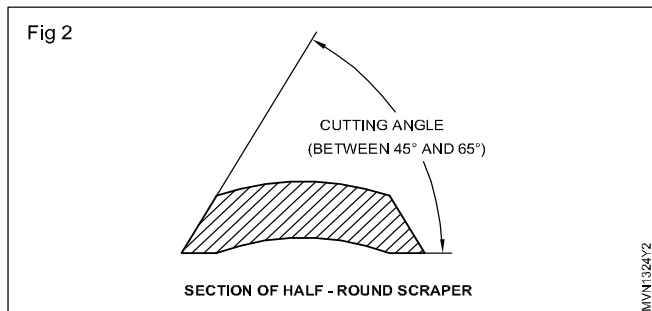
- **sharpen a half round scraper.**
- **sharpen a three-square scraper.**

## Sharpening half round scrapers

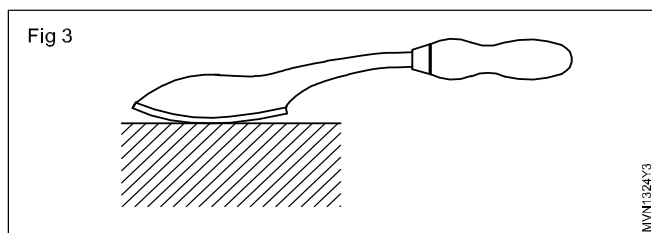
Locate the two cutting edges on the rounded back (Fig 1) for the half round scrapers.



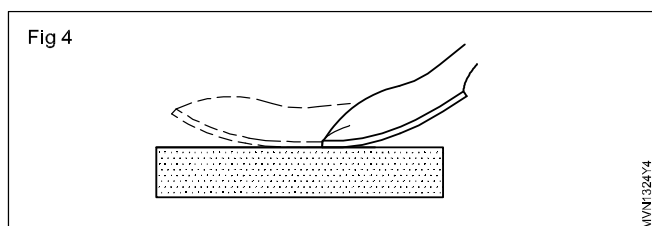
Check the cutting edges are formed by the bottom surface, and the flat surfaces are ground on the rounded back of the scraper. (Fig 2)



Grind the bottom surfaces with a slight curve. This helps the cutting edges to make point contact on the surfaces being scraped. (Fig 3)



Rub the bottom surface with a rocking motion on the oilstone for re-sharpening. (Fig 4)

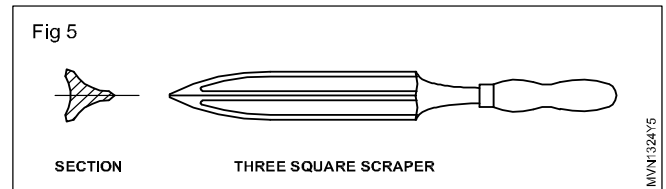


Re-sharpened by grinding the bottom surface, when the cutting edge is blunt.

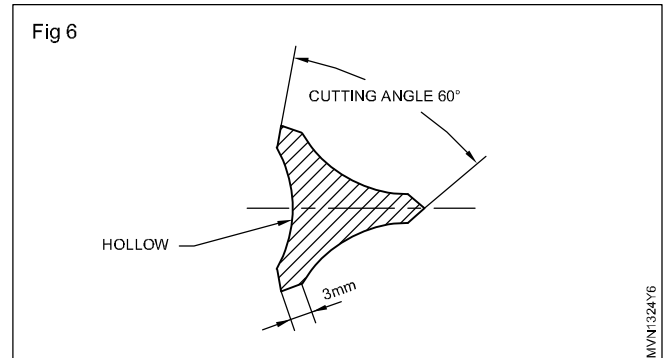
**As far as possible avoid grinding of the edges.  
(Flat surface ground on the rounded back.)**

## Sharpening a three-square scriber

These scrapers have triangular cross-section which tapers to a point. (Fig 5)



The centre of each face is hollow and this makes sharpening easy. (Fig 6)



The angle of each cutting edge is 60°.

Re-sharpening is done on an oilstone and the method adopted is similar to that for the half round scraper.

While grinding, the movement should be such that it tapers to a point with a uniform movement.

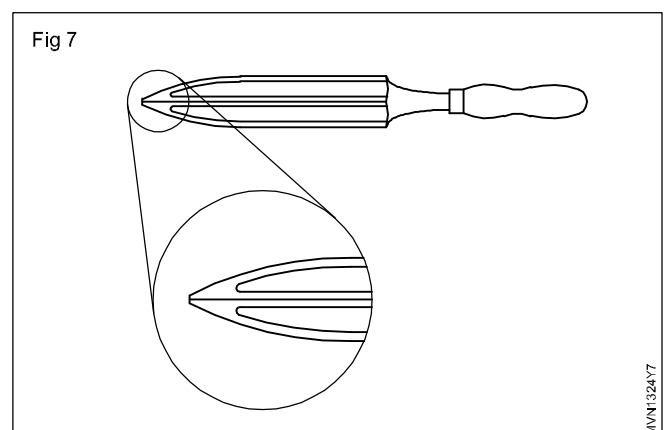
The cutting edges of three-square scrapers are likely to be overheated quickly as they are very thin.

**Apply only light pressure.**

Maintain the cutting-edge width to about 3 mm. (Fig 6)

**A three-square scraper is very sharp instrument and must be handled carefully.**

**Flatten the sharp tip for about 1 mm for safety while handling. (Fig 7)**



## Practice on crimping and soldering of wires

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- solder the cables by using blow lamp.
- solder the wires by using electric soldering iron.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- |                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| • Trainees tool kit | - 1 No. |
| • Multimeter        | - 1 No. |
| • Ammeter           | - 1 No. |
| • Blow lamp         | - 1 No. |
| • Tong              | - 1 No. |
| • Combination plier | - 1 No. |

#### Materials

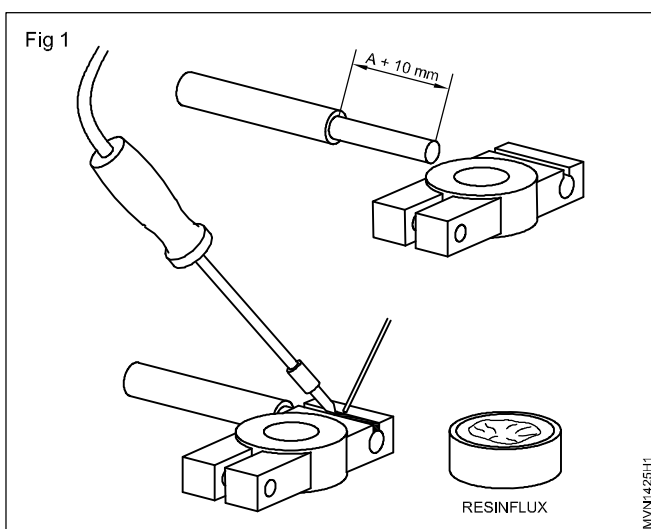
- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| • Fuse       | - as reqd. |
| • Switches   | - as reqd. |
| • Resistance | - as reqd. |

- |                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| • Cotton rag                      | - as reqd. |
| • Wooden plank                    | - as reqd. |
| • Solder                          | - as reqd. |
| • Brick                           | - as reqd. |
| • Insulating sleeve               | - as reqd. |
| • Flux                            | - as reqd. |
| • Lug socket                      | - as reqd. |
| • Cloth/Cotton tape               | - as reqd. |
| • Grade sandpaper                 | - as reqd. |
| • Copper and Aluminium conductors | - as reqd. |
| • Battery                         | - as reqd. |

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Solder the cable with clamp using electric soldering iron

- 1 Clean the strands and get a copper face free from sulphate.
- 2 Insert the wire end as shown in the Fig 1.



- 3 Hold the clamp in a vice in between two wooden blocks to prevent heat flow to vice.

- 4 Connect a 1000w/220v soldering iron to an AC source. Keep the iron on a brick.

**Do not over heat the iron. Overheating would impair wetting of iron. Wetting means coating soldering iron with solder.**

- 5 Solder the end with clamp face with molten solder.
- 6 Hold the clamp horizontally and solder the split and close the split with solder.
- 7 Hold the clamp as shown in the Fig 13 and solder around the cable without melting the insulating sleeve.

**Wound the insulation material with a wet cloth near the soldering end to prevent melting.**

#### Insulating the wires and cables

**For small wires and cables various sizes of insulation sleeves are available. These sleeves can be inserted before soldering the terminals.**

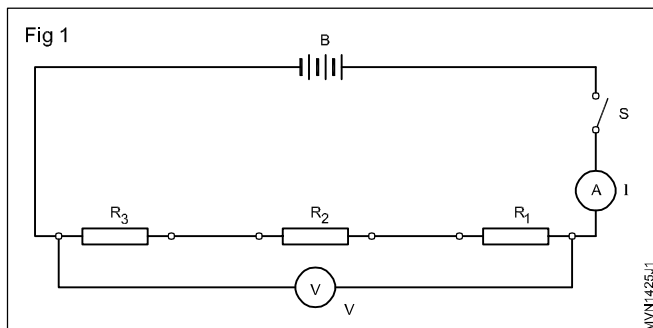
## Verify the characteristic of series and parallel circuits

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

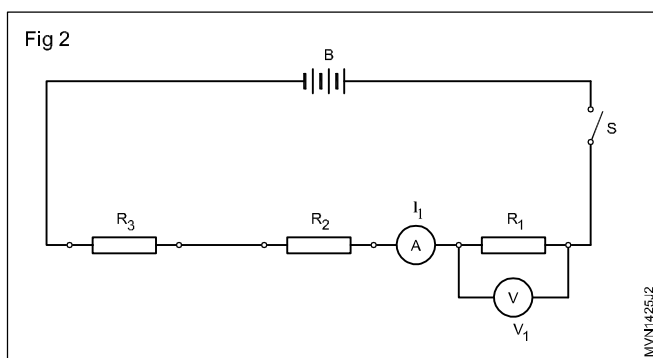
- form DC series circuits and verify its characteristics
- form DC parallel circuits and verify its characteristics.

### TASK 1: Connect DC series circuit (Fig 1) and verify its characteristics

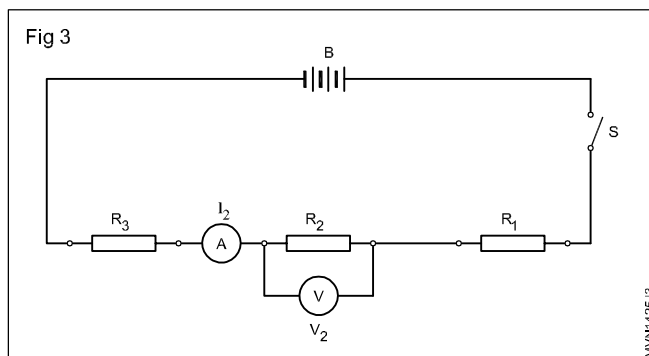
- 1 Form a circuit as shown in the Fig 1.



- 2 Close the switch 'S', measure the current 'I' and voltage 'V'.
- 3 Enter the measured values in Table No.1.
- 4 Switch off the supply, connect the ammeter and voltmeter as shown in the Fig 2. Switch on the supply and measure voltage  $V_1$  and current  $I_1$  through  $R_1$ .



- 5 Switch off the supply, connect the ammeter and voltmeter as shown in the Fig 3. Switch on the supply and measure the voltage  $V_2$  and the current  $I_2$  in  $R_2$ .



- 6 Draw a circuit diagram showing the position of 'A' and 'V' in the circuit to measure the current  $I_3$  and voltage  $V_3$  across  $R_3$ .
- 7 Connect and measure  $I_3$  and  $V_3$  across  $R_3$ .
- 8 Enter the measured values in Table 1.
- 9 Verify the characteristics of current, voltage and total resistance.

TABLE 1

Values	Total circuit	$R_1=10$	$R_2=20$	$R_3=10$
Current	$I=$	$I_1=$	$I_2=$	$I_3=$
Voltage	$V=$	$V_1=$	$V_2=$	$V_3=$
Res. $R=$	$R = \text{_____} =$	$R_1=\text{_____} =$	$R_2=\text{_____} =$	$R_3=\text{_____} =$

### TASK 2: Connect DC parallel circuit (Fig 4) and Verify its characteristics

- 1 Form the branches 1, 2, 3 by connecting the torch lamps  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$ ,  $L_3$  (150 mA, 6v) with a holder, an ammeter  $A_4$  (500 mA) and switch 'S4' in series.
- 2 Connect the lamp terminals of the three branches together.
- 3 Connect the leads of each branch together and also connect with the lead of the switch  $S_4$ .
- 4 Form the circuit as shown in circuit diagrams with voltmeter (V), ammeter ( $A_4$ ), switch 'S4' and battery.
- 5 Close the switch 'S4' and switch 'S1' in branch 1.
- 6 Read the ammeters 'A4' and 'A1' and record the values in Table 2.
- 7 Close the switches 'S4' 'S1' and 'S2' in branch 2.

- 8 Read the ammeters 'A<sub>4</sub>' 'A<sub>1</sub>' and 'A<sub>2</sub>' and record the values in Table 2.
- 9 Close the switches 'S<sub>4</sub>' 'S<sub>1</sub>' 'S<sub>2</sub>' and 'S<sub>3</sub>' in branch 3.
- 10 Read the ammeters 'A<sub>4</sub>' 'A<sub>1</sub>' 'A<sub>2</sub>' and 'A<sub>3</sub>' and record the values in Table 2.
- 11 Repeat the above steps after clamping the torch lamp in any one branch with 6v 300 mA lamp and record the results in Table 2.
- 12 Repeat the exercise by replacing all the three 'lamps with holder' by 'wire-wound resistors' (two numbers of 100 ohms and one of 150 ohms).
- 13 Verify the characteristics of current, voltage and resistance.

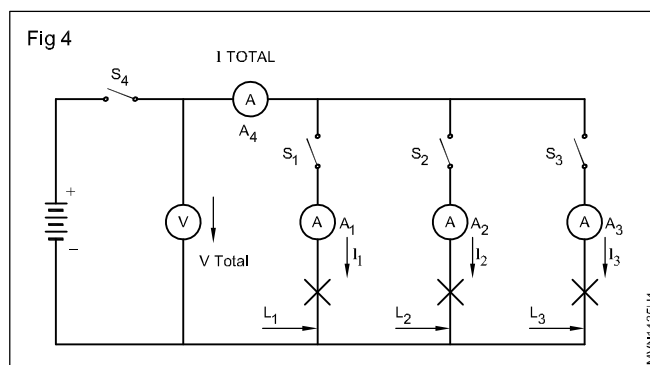


TABLE 2

Sl. No.	I <sub>1</sub>	I <sub>2</sub>	I <sub>3</sub>	I <sub>Total</sub>	Switches closed	Components in the branches
1					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub>	3 lamps of 150 mA.
2					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub>	„
3					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub> , S <sub>3</sub>	„
4					S <sub>4</sub>	„
5					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub>	2 lamps of 150 m and one lamp 300 mA.
6					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub>	„
7					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub> , S <sub>3</sub>	„
8						Resistors - two 100 ohms and one 50 ohms.
9					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub>	„
10					S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>1</sub> , S <sub>2</sub> , S <sub>3</sub>	„

## Check and test the continuity of fuses with test lamp

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

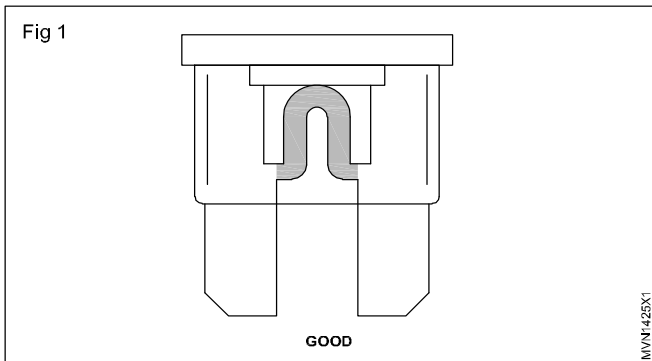
- check the fuses of all the lighting units
- find out the open and short circuits in the lighting circuit
- remove and assemble the head light
- identify the fuse unit in a panel board and check capacity and function of each fuse.

### TASK 1: Check the fuses of all the lighting units

- 1 Check the battery for its charge using voltmeter.
- 2 Connect the test lamp clip to a good ground.
- 3 Touch the probe of the test lamp on either end of the fuse. If the test lamp lights, the fuse is in good condition. (Fig 1)

**If the test lamp lights only while touching one side that means the fuse is defective. If the test lamp does not light even on touching both the sides that means the power source is not on or the ground connection is bad.**



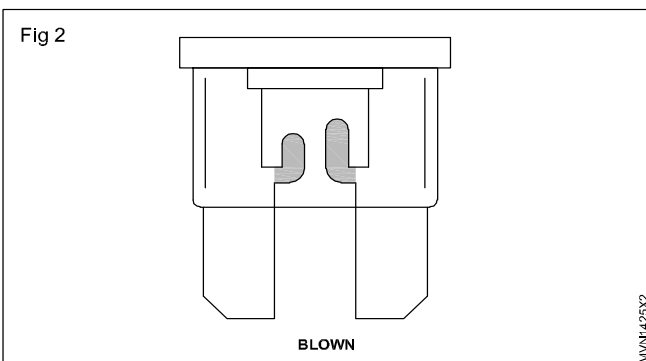


- 4 Remove the fuse from its spring clip. Check whether it is blown or not.

**If it is blown we can see through the glass tube.**

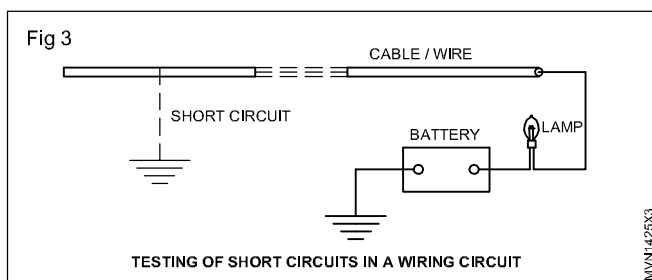
**If the fuse is blown due to short circuit the colour of glass tube becomes black and the fuse wire melts like small balls.**

**If the fuse is blown due to overload the fuse wire is simply cut off. (Fig 2)**



## TASK 2: Find out open and short circuit in the lighting circuit

- 1 Check the wiring for open circuit by connecting an ohmmeter between the two terminals.



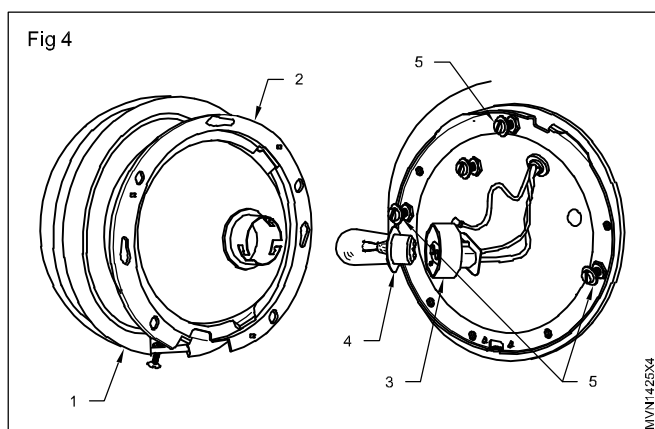
**If there is an open circuit the ohmmeter reading will be more.**

- 2 Trace the open circuit and rectify.
- 3 Check the wiring for short circuit with the test lamp. (Fig 3)

**If there is a short circuit the test lamp will glow before the circuit is completed and also the fuse will be blown off.**

## TASK 3: Remove, Check and assemble the head light

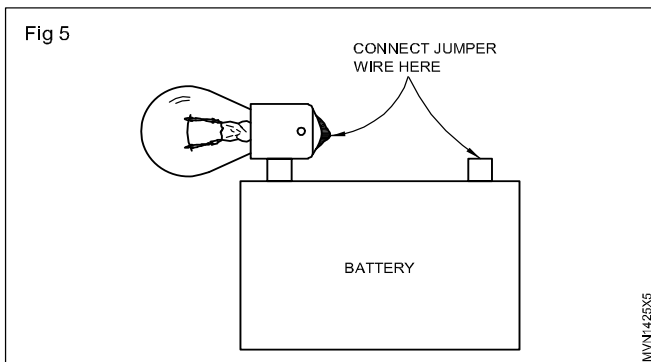
- 1 Unscrew the screws securing the rim. (Fig 4)



- 2 Take out the rim along with the rubber dust excluder (1).
- 3 Press the light unit and turn it in the anticlockwise direction so that the light unit (2) will come out.

**While removing the light unit ensure that the adjusting screws (5) are not disturbed.**

- 4 Turn the bulb holder (3) in the anticlockwise direction to take it out.
- 5 Remove the bulb (4).
- 6 Unscrew the screws.
- 7 Remove the lock-rings according to the model.
- 8 Remove the light lenses.
- 9 Remove the bulbs.
- 10 Removing the bulbs check for loose fitting.
- 11 Check the bulbs for fuse by connecting wires from the battery as shown in the Fig 5.
- 12 If the bulb is fused replace it.



13 Check the front lens and reflector and replace, if found damaged.

14 Position the new light unit on the rim.

Ensure that the locating tabs at the edge of the light unit fit into the slots in the rim.

Ensure that the unit retaining ring is correctly positioned.

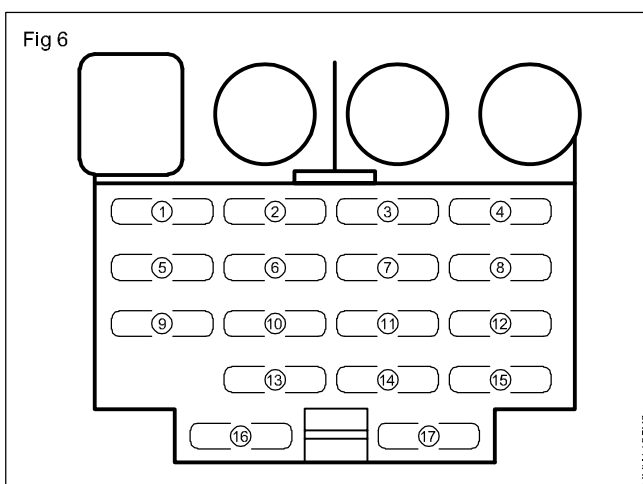
15 Engage the projections on the bulb holder with the slots or flanges in the bulb sleeve.

16 Press and twist clockwise to fit the light assembly with the rim on the vehicle by the rim securing screws. Assemble all other light units by securing the screws/ lock-rings.

Testing lights by operating all the switches, after completing all the checking, by connecting to a battery of proper voltage.

#### TASK 4: Identify the fuse unit in the panel board and check capacity and function of each fuse (Fig 6)

- 1 **Engine 7.5 A** : Alternator voltage regulator (IG terminal), fuel cut solenoid, intake shutter, indicator light.
- 2 **Heater 20 A** : Heater blower motor, air conditioner.
- 3 **Tail 15 A** : Instrument panel lights, license plate lights, parking lights, tail lights.
- 4 **Head (RH) 15 A** : High beam indicator light, right hand headlights.
- 5 **Charge 7.5 A** : Alternator voltage regulator, (L terminal), discharge warning light.
- 6 **AC 20 A** : Air conditioner.
- 7 **HAZ-HORN 15 A** : Emergency flashers, emergency flasher indicator lights, horn, turn signal indicator lights, turn signal lights.



Write the name of the parts in the Table 1

Table 1

Sl. No.	Label No.	Fuse rating and its control parts
1	2	
2	5	
3	4	
4	1	
5	3	
6	11	
7	15	
8	12	

Sl. No.	Label No.	Fuse rating and its control parts
9	14	
10	6	
11	7	
12	9	
13	13	
14	16	
15	10	
16	8	

- 8 **Head (LH) 15 A** : High beam indicator light, left hand head lights.
- 9 **CIG 15 A** : Cigarette lighter, clock digital type.
- 10 **Wiper 15 A** : Windshield wipers and washer.
- 11 **Stop 15 A** : Stop light

- 12 **Radio 7.5 A** : Radio, stereo cassette tape player
- 13 **Gauge 7.5 A** : Back-up lights, engine temperature gauge, fuel gauge, warning lights, warning buzzers.
- 14 **Dome 7.5 A** : Clock (digital type), interior light.
- 15,16 and 17 **7.5 A 20 A and 15 A** : Spare fuses

-----

#### TASK 5: Checking of fusible link

- 1 Visually inspect the fusible link for burn out dis connected and damaged wire
- 2 Check wire circuit with the multimeter or for continuity test
- 3 Replace of damaged burn out or dis connected

Replacing fusible links (Fig 7) is little bit complex than simply pulling a fuse, since they are bolted in place and are sometimes difficult to reach.

Using the right tools and finding the blown fusible link location is important

And also it is very important to use the correct replacement of fusible link's size and length.

Never replace fusible link with normal electrical wire.

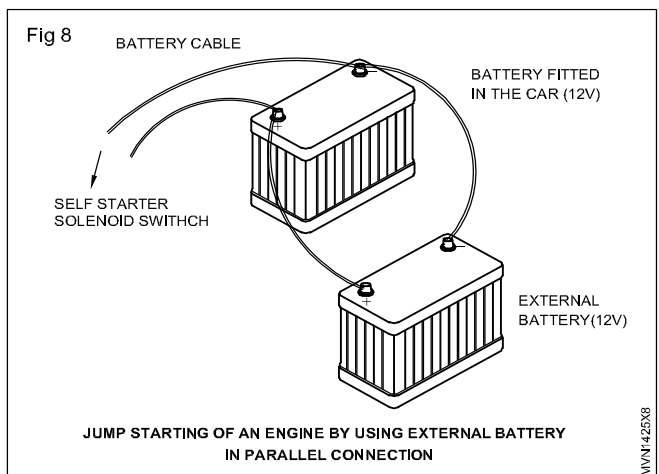
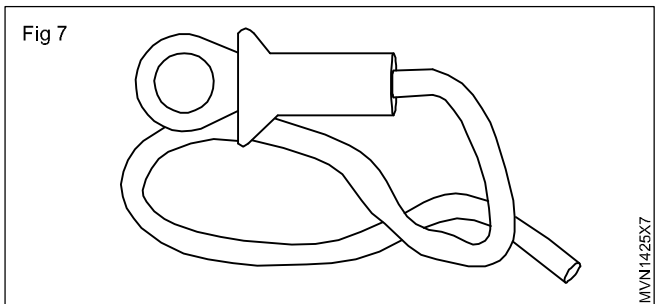
-----

#### TASK 6: Jumper Wire

- 1 Park the vehicle to be started, on level ground and apply hand brake.
- 2 Open the bonnet and secure with the holding lever.
- 3 Place the fully charged battery adjacent to the vehicle discharge battery.
- 4 Connect the two battery terminal in parallel by using jumper wire cables as shown in Fig 8.
- 5 Start the vehicle run for some times.
- 6 Disconnect the jumper cables from the vehicle battery terminal.

- 7 Now the vehicle will run with its own battery.
- 8 Close the bonnet, securely.

-----



## Verify Ohm's Law

**Objective :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **verify ohm's law experimentally.**

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments/Equipments

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Voltmeter MC 0 - 300 V - 1 No.
- Ammeter MC 0 - 5 A - 1 No.
- Rheostat 200 ohms 3.7 amps - 1 No.
- Rheostat 50 ohms 4.1 amps - 1 No.
- DC Supply 220 V 5 A. - as reqd
- Battery - 1 No.
- Auto Electrical Circuit - 1 No.

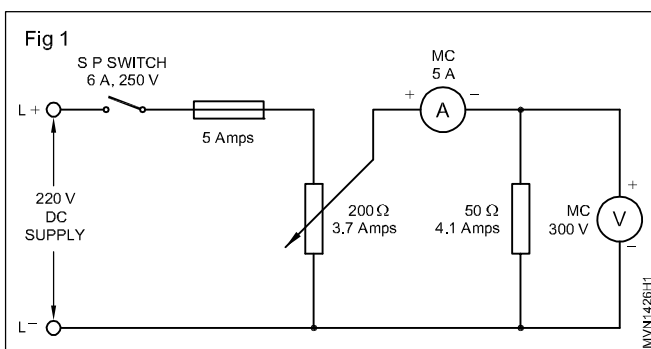
#### Materials

- SP switch 6 A 250 V - 1 No.
- PVC insulated copper cable 1.5 sq.mm 660 V grade - 5 mtrs.
- Kit-kat fuse 16 A 250 V - 1 No.
- Flexible PVC insulated cable 14/0.2 of 660V grade - 2 mtrs.
- Fuse wire 5 A - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Verification of ohm's law

- 1 Identify the voltmeter and ammeter.
- 2 Verify the range of the voltmeter and ammeter.
- 3 Identify the rheostat to be connected as potential divider and the standard resistance.
- 4 Connect the power supply, switch, fuse, meters and rheostat as shown in Fig 1.



- 5 Keep the moving arm of the potential divider to have a low voltage at the output of the circuit.
- 6 Close the switch.
- 7 Increase the voltage in the output circuit so as to get 0.5 ampere in the circuit.
- 8 Measure the corresponding voltage and the current (0.5 A) from the instruments and record the values in Table 1.
- 9 Increase the output voltage gradually such that the ammeter reads 1, 2 and 3 amps and measure the corresponding voltages and the currents and record the values in Table 1.

- 10 Switch off the circuit.
- 11 Calculate the resistance value at each step of measurement and record the value in Table 1.
- 12 Write the conclusion based on the following.
  - a) The proved relationship between the current that flows through the resistance and the voltage applied across the resistance shows that the current \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b) The relation between current and voltage could be written as  $V/I$  is a constant  $V / I = R$ .  
R is the resistance of the circuit which is \_\_\_\_\_.

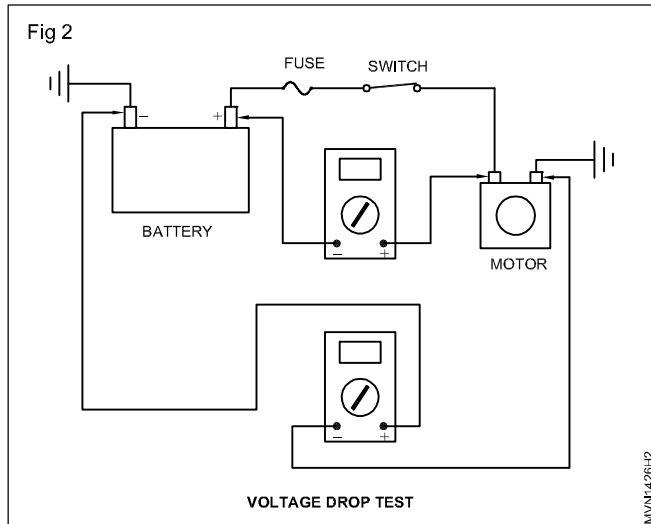
**TABLE 1**

S.No.	Potential difference (Volts)	Current (Amps)	R=Voltage/ Current in Ohms

## TASK 2: Test the voltage drop test in the auto electrical system by using multimeter.

### Voltage Drop Test in Head light circuit

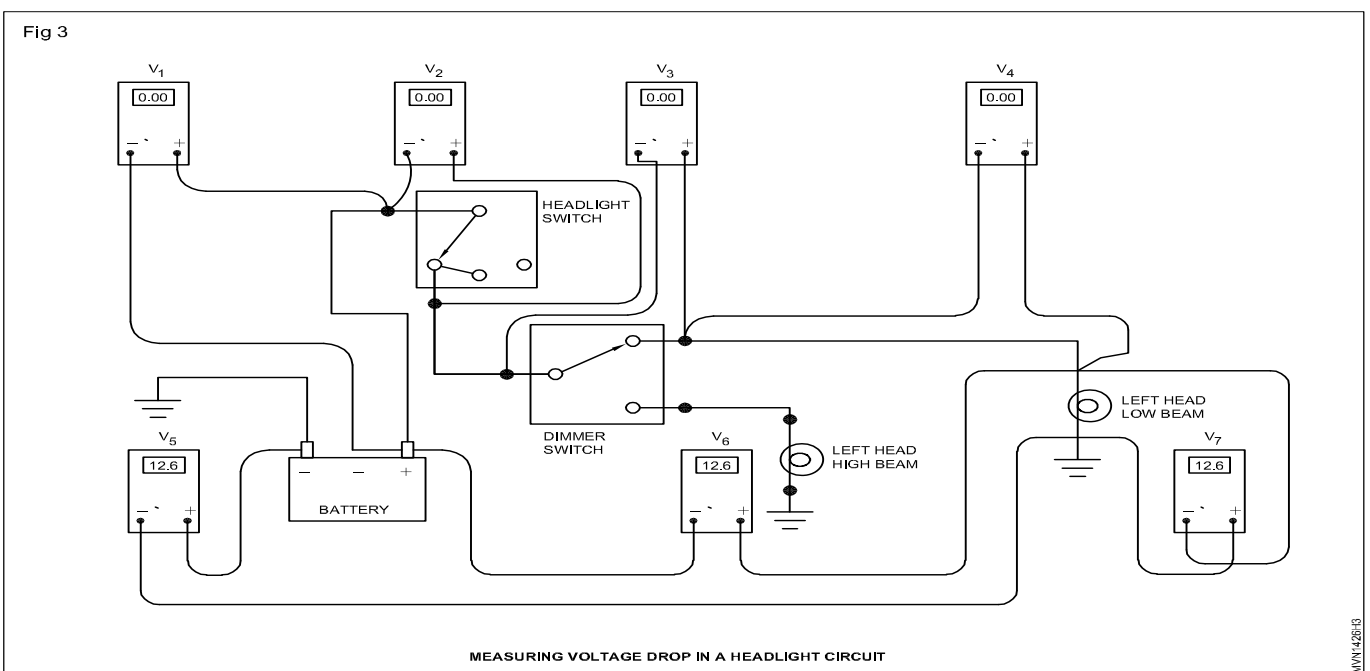
- 1 Clean all the terminals, connectors in the auto electrical wiring circuits
- 2 Check, whether battery is fully charged condition.
- 3 Connect the multimeter at shown in Fig 2 in the auto electrical wiring circuit.



- 4 Connect (+)ve lead to the input terminal of the motor.
- 5 Connect (-)ve lead to the battery +ve terminal
- 6 Read the voltage in the multimeter.
- 7 Remove, clean and refit (or) Replace the terminal if voltage drop exceed 0.2 V.
- 8 Select a low scale on the voltmeter.

### Measuring voltage drop in head light circuit

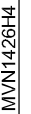
- 1 Connect the voltmeter across the part of the circuit in which high resistance is suspected.
- 2 Measure the voltage drop across the HL ground.
- 3 Connect the voltmeter positive lead to the HL ground and Negative lead to the -ve terminal of battery (Fig 3).
- 4 Measure the voltage drop shown in meter.
- 5 Compare the measured value with the rated value.
- 6 Replace, Clean and reconnect the lead if the voltage drop excel W 0.2 Volt.
- 7 Repeat the same volt drop test task to check the voltage drop in all the other Electrical accessories.



## TASK 3: Trace the auto electrical components by using vehicle wiring circuits.

- 1 Identify the electrical Components (marked from 1 to 34) in the vehicle by using the automobile wiring circuits as shown in Fig 4.
- 2 Draw the starting circuit.
- 3 Draw the ignition circuit.
- 4 Draw the charging circuit.
- 5 Draw the flasher circuit.
- 6 Draw the lighting circuit.
- 7 Place the auto wiring board on the work bench.
- 8 Connect with battery.
- 9 Check its function.

Fig 4



**Perform cleaning and topping up of a lead acid battery**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove and refit the battery to the vehicle
- clean the battery terminals and the body of the battery
- test the battery with a hydrometer
- test the battery with a volt meter
- connect the battery to charger
- check and rectify the parasitic draw of battery
- start the engine by using jumper wires.

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Hydrometer - 1 No.

**Equipments**

- Vehicle - 1 No.
- Battery charger - 1 No.

**Materials**

- Vaseline - as reqd.
- Battery acid - as reqd.
- Cable/Wire - as reqd.
- Distilled water - as reqd.
- Cotton rag - as reqd.
- Water emery - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Check the specific gravity and open circuit voltage test**

- 1 Disconnect the negative cables first from the battery terminal.
- 2 Disconnect the positive cables from the battery terminal.
- 3 Remove the mounting clamp nuts.
- 4 Lift the battery from the vehicle.
- 5 Clean the top of the battery with water and cotton rag.
- 6 Clean the battery terminals by a non-metallic wire brush or emery-paper.
- 7 Check and top up the electrolyte level with distilled water. (if necessary)
- 8 Keep the battery on a leveled wooden workbench.
- 9 Remove all the vent plugs.
- 10 Hold the hydrometer vertically (Fig 1).
- 11 Place the nose of the hydrometer in the cell. Ensure that the nose is dipped in the electrolyte.
- 12 Press the rubber bulb of the hydrometer.
- 13 Release it to draw the electrolyte upwards. Ensure that the electrolyte does not come into the bulb.
- 14 Note the float level which is floating in the electrolyte.
- 15 Record the reading in Table 1.

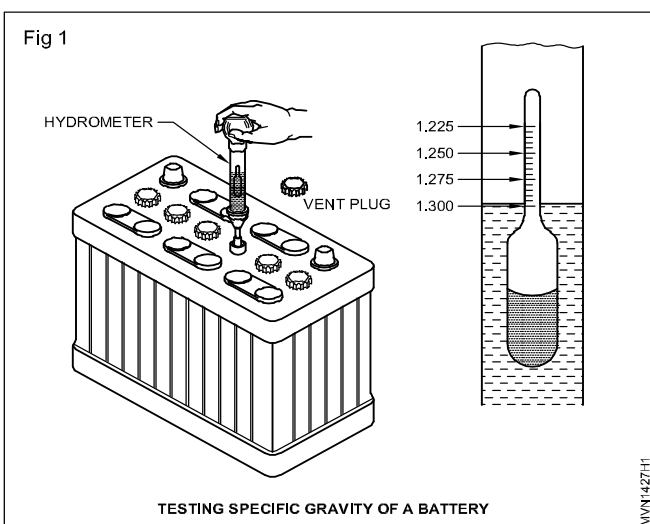
**TABLE 1**

1	2	3	4	5	6

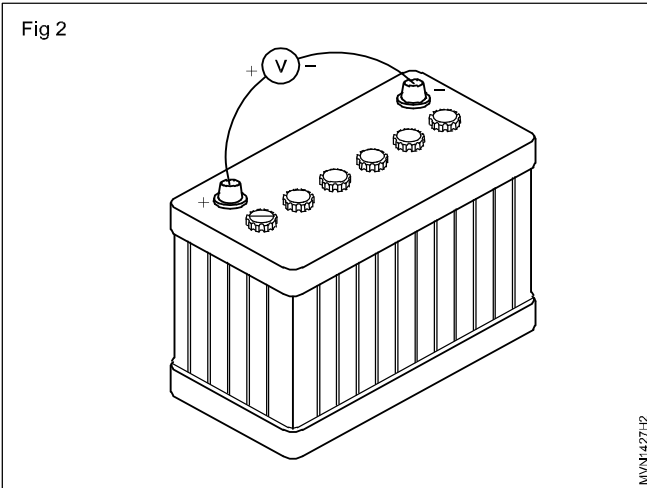
- 16 Repeat the same procedure for all the cells and record the readings.

**The above reading should not vary more than 25 points between cells.**

**Protect your hands and clothes from the battery acid.**



- 17 Connect the leads of the DC voltmeter (2) to the battery terminal (+ve to -ve). (Fig 2)



- 18 Take the reading from the voltmeter and record.

- 19 The voltmeter should read atleast 13.2 volts per battery. After carrying out the above tests compare the readings with the manufacturer's specifications. Recharge/replace the battery if it is in poor condition.

- 20 Clean the vent holes and tighten all the vent plugs.

- 21 Smear the battery terminals with Vaseline.

- 22 Place the battery in its position in the vehicle.

- 23 Tighten the battery mounting clamp nuts.

- 24 Clean the battery lugs with baking soda solution and water.

- 25 Connect the battery +ve cable first and tighten it.

- 26 Connect the battery -ve cable and tighten it.

- 27 Start the engine. Check whether the battery supplies sufficient current.

**Disconnect the ground cable (-ve cable) first. This will minimize the possibility of arcing and a resultant battery explosion.**



## Charge and test the lead acid battery

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- battery charging and diagnose battery drain
- check the solenoid and relay circuit.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Multimeter - 1 No.
- Voltmeter - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Battery - 1 No.
- Battery charger - 1 No.

#### Materials

- Distilled water - as reqd.
- Solenoid switch - as reqd.
- Relay - as reqd.
- Emery sheet - as reqd.
- Gel - as reqd.
- Wire - as reqd.

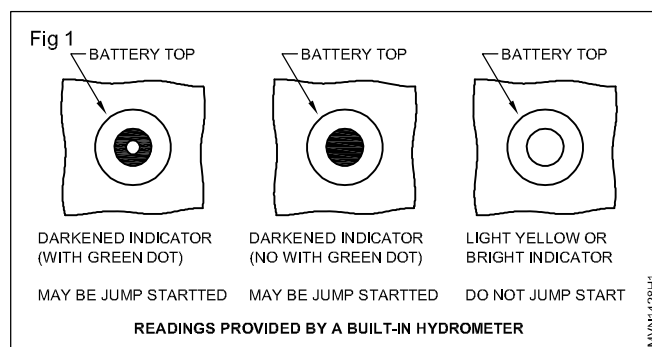
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1 : Battery charging

- 1 Place the battery on the charging table.
- 2 If the battery is not sealed, check the electrolyte level in all of the cells and adjust the level if necessary.

**Do not attempt to charge a battery that appears to be frozen or if ice crystals are visible in the electrolyte. Allow the battery to become unfrozen fully before charging is attempted.**

- 3 If the battery is sealed battery, check the built in hydrometer. Do not attempt to charge the battery if the indicator appears clear or light yellow. (Fig 1)

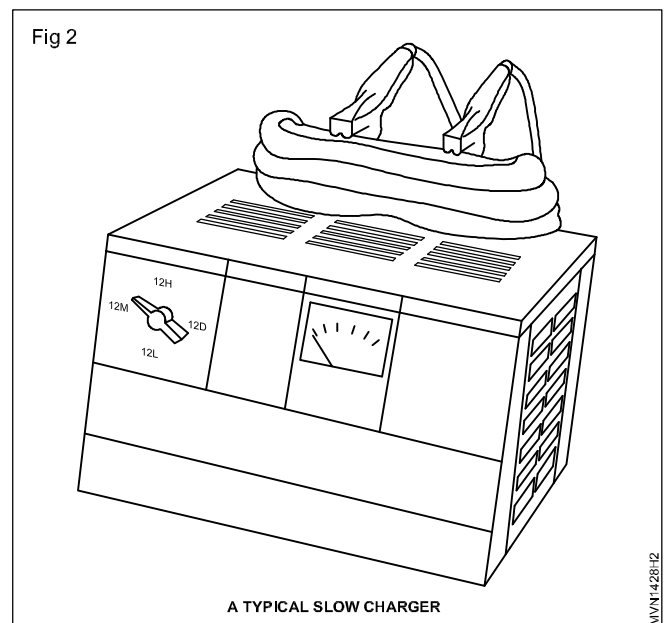


- 4 Clean the battery terminals and the battery top.
- 5 Consult an appropriate manual and determine the charging rate and time for the battery.
- 6 Turn off the charger switch. (Fig 2 & Fig 3)

Connect the charger leads to the battery. The positive (+) lead must be connected to the positive (+) terminal.

The negative (-) lead must be connected to negative (-) terminal.

Fig 2



- 7 Turn on the charger switch.

**On some chargers, the timer must be set to turn on the charger.**

- 8 Adjust the charging rate.
- 9 Adjust the timer.
- 10 Check the charging rate and the battery temperature after the battery has been charging for about 15 minutes. Adjust the charging rate if required.
- 11 Continue charging until the allotted time or until the battery is fully charged.

- Turn off the charger switch.
- Disconnect the charger leads from the battery.

**To avoid damage, charging rate must be reduced or temporarily halted if:**

**Electrolyte temperature exceeds 125F.**

**Violent gassing or spewing of electrolyte occurs.**

**Battery is fully charged when over a two hour period at a low charging rate in amperes all cells are gassing freely and no change in specific gravity occurs. For the most satisfactory charging, the lower charging rates in amperes are recommended.**

**Full charge specific gravity is 1.260-1.280 corrected for temperature with electrolyte level at split ring.**

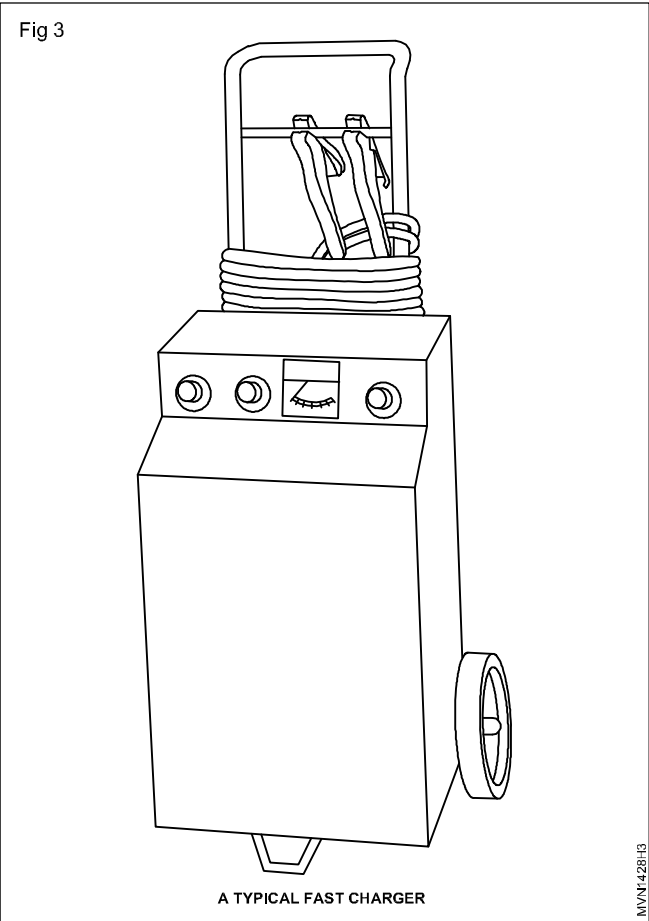


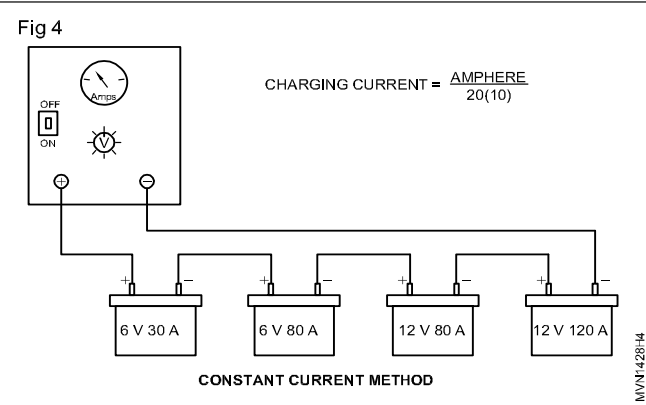
Table - 1

Watt rating	5 Amperes	10 Amperes	20 Amperes	30 Amperes	40 Amperes	50 Amperes
Below 2450	10 Hours	5 Hours	2 ½ Hours	2 Hours	—	—
2450-2950	12 Hours	6 Hours	3 Hours	2 Hours	1 ½ Hours	
Above 2950	15 Hours	7 ½ Hours	3 ¼ Hours	2 Hours	1 ¾ Hours	1 ½ Hours

**TASK 2: Charging battery by constant current method**

- Connect all the batteries in series as shown in Fig 4.

- Charge the battery.
- Switch off the battery charger
- Test the specific for gravity of each battery.
- Record the reading in Table. 2



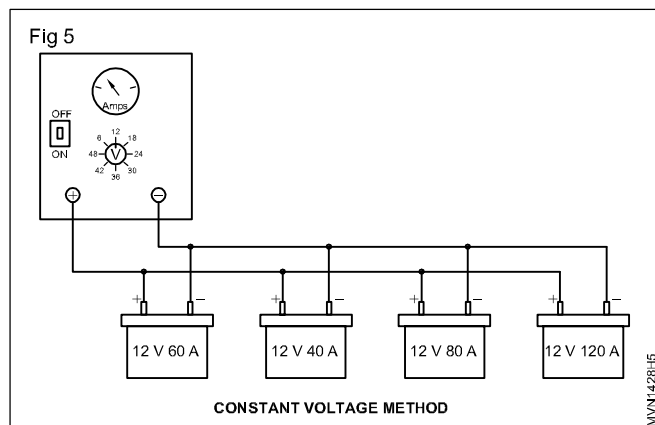
- Connect the charger to batteries.
- Set the voltage rate in charger according to no. of batteries.

Table 2

Cell Battery	1	2	3	4	5	6
1						
2						
3						
4						

### TASK 3 : Charging battery by constant voltage method

1 Connect all the batteries in parallel as shown in Fig 5



- 2 Connect the charger to batteries.
- 3 Set the current rate by varying the voltage to be charged.
- 4 Charge the battery till full charging
- 5 Switch off the battery charger
- 6 Record the readings in Table 3.
- 7 Parasitic draw (Switch off) of battery
- 8 Check the battery for self discharge by checking the battery charged condition periodically.
- 9 Check the battery, for discharge, externally as follows

- 10 Switch off the ignition switch
- 11 Check and clean the impurities and contaminated water layer on the top of the battery
- 12 Clean the top surface of the battery after topup the battery
- 13 Check any loose contact between battery post & terminals
- 14 Check any loose contact in the auto vehicle wiring circuit
- 15 Check and Replace the defective contact of all switches in the vehicle
- 16 Check and clean the Sulphur formation of battery terminals

Table 3

Cell Battery	1	2	3	4	5	6
1						
2						
3						
4						

### TASK 4 : Remedies for parasitic draw of battery

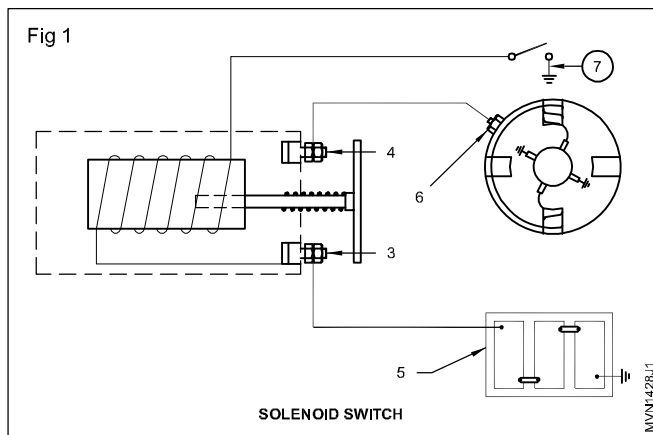
- 1 Clean the impurities and contaminated water layer on the top of the battery
- 2 Clean the top surface of the battery after topup.
- 3 Check & tight the loose contact terminals
- 4 Replace the defective switches.
- 5 Keep the battery terminals free from Sulphur formation.

**If acceptable causes to discharge of battery is also causes to parasitic draw of battery**

**If the discharge rate of battery is more than 0.050 A at Ideal condition is said to be parasitic draw of battery.**

### TASK 5: Checking solenoid switch

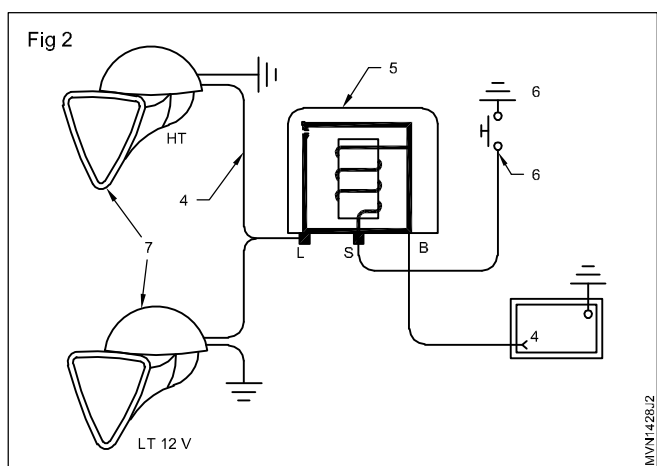
- 1 Check the solenoid switch terminals (3&4) and clean them. (Fig 1)
- 2 Check the battery cable connections from the battery (5) to the solenoid switch terminals (3). Tighten if found loose.
- 3 Check the battery cables from the solenoid switch terminals (4) to the starter motor terminals (6). Tighten it if formal loose.
- 4 Check the wire connection from the solenoid switch terminals to the starting switch (7).
- 5 Connect the test lamp to the brake light switch terminal (1&2). If the switch is not closed, the lamp will glow.
- 6 Disconnect the cable wires from the solenoid switch.
- 7 Connect one end of the test lamp with the solenoid switch terminal (3) and ground the other end of the test lamp.
- 8 It will burn, but this test will not indicate short circuit.



- 9 Connect one end of the test lamp with starter switch terminal and the other end to the earth with switch open. If the lamp burns bright, the solenoid is shorted. Replace the switch.

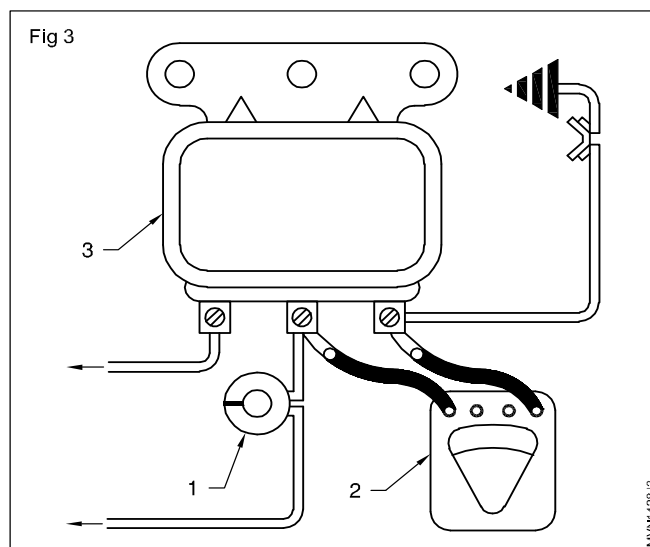
## TASK 6: Checking the relay in horn circuit

- 1 Disconnect the electrical connection from the horn relay (5) as shown in Fig 2.



- 2 Loosen the mounting nuts of the horn relay and remove it.
- 3 Check the condition of the horn relay using a rheostat and voltmeter.
- 4 Connect the rheostat (1) in series to the battery and horn relay (3) (Fig 3)
- 5 Connect the volt meter (2) across the winding of the relay (3) to measure the closing voltage as shown in Fig (3)
- 6 Start the full resistance in the circuit. Slide the knob to increase or decrease the voltage on the relay winding.

**If there is an error when the relay point closes, adjust by bending the armature spring post**  
**[Increasing the spring tension increases the closing voltage]**



- 7 Replace the relay, if necessary.
- 8 Place the horn relay in its position and tighten the mounting nuts.
- 9 Refit the spring and the horn switch.
- 10 Fit the retainer and press it.
- 11 Connect the wires to the switch of the horn relay and sound the horn.
- 12 Operate the horn switch and test for the correct horn note.

**Checking HL & Wiper motor relay.**

**Repeat the Task of checking the Relay.**

## Test diodes function

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the type of diode packages and terminals
- check diode using ohmmeter or multimeter
- identify the defective diodes.

Requirements		
<b>Tools/Instruments/Equipments</b>		<b>Materials/Components</b>
• Trainees kit.	- 1 No.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assorted types of diodes (per batch) - 20 Nos.</li> <li>• Red colour sleeve wire - 10 cms.</li> <li>• Patch cords - as reqd.</li> </ul>

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Identify diode package and terminals

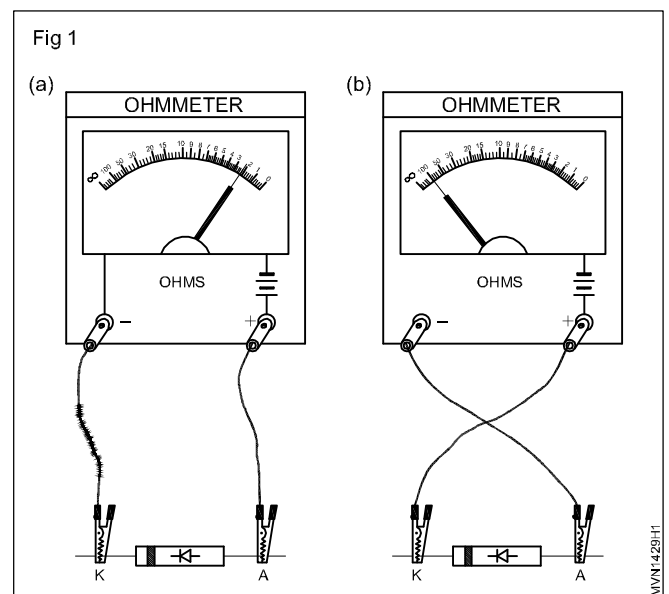
- 1 Pick any one diode from the given assorted lot. Record the code number printed on the diode in O&T sheet.
- 2 For the chosen diode, refer chart 1 of lesson 7.02 and identify and record the type of package (such as glass/plastic/ceramic/metal etc.).
- 3 For the chosen diode referring to Chart 1, identify and put a small red colour sleeve over the anode terminal of the diode.
- 4 Repeat step 1 to 3 for atleast 5 diodes of different types and get your work checked by your instructor.

### TASK 2 : Checking diodes using ohmmeter/multimeter

- 1 Set the ohmmeter/multimeter to x100 ohms range. Carryout resistance-zero-setting of meter.

**Choose other ohms range if necessary.**

- 2 Pickup one of the identified diodes in Task 1. Connect the ohmmeter probes across the diode terminals as shown in Fig 1a. Record the resistance reading shown by the meter in Table 1 of O&T sheet.
- 3 Reverse the meter probes connected to the diode as shown in Fig 1b and record the reading shown by the meter in the Table 1.
- 4 From the readings noted in steps 2 and 3, calculate and record the ratio between forward and reverse resistance.
- 5 From the recorded information give your conclusion about the condition of the diode. Use the tips given below for making conclusion;
  - In good diodes, resistance will be less than 100 ohms in one direction and very high or almost infinity/open in the other direction. In the worst cases the ratio between low to high resistance could be at least 1:1000.
  - Shorted diodes show zero or very low resistance in both directions.



- Open diodes shows infinity/open in both directions.
- 6 Repeat step 2 to 4 for atleast ten more given diodes of different types.
  - 7 Get the work checked by your instructor.

---

**Observation & Tabulation Sheet**

Table - 1

[illegible]

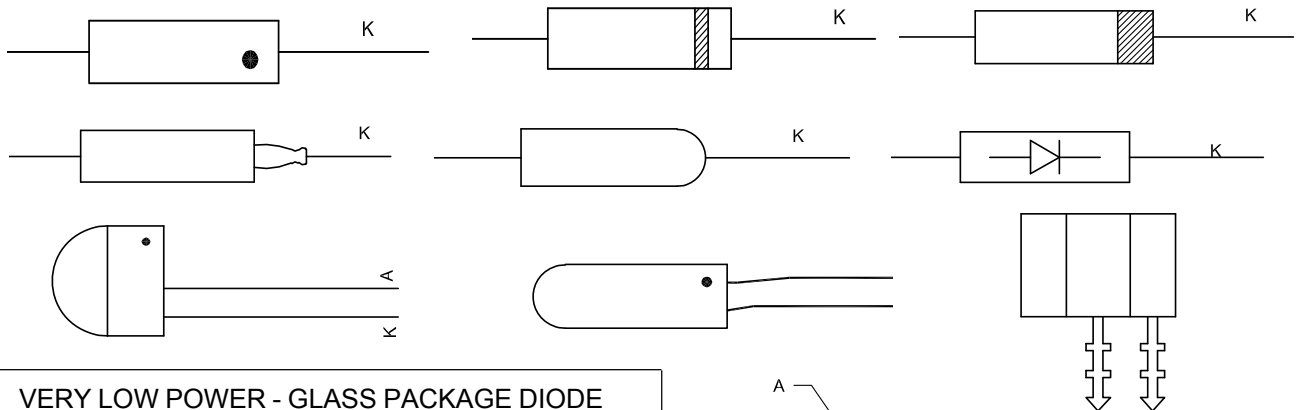
(Trainee)

(Instructor)

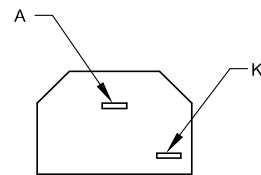
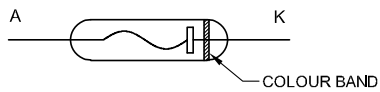
CHART - 1

TYPES OF DIODES AND PACKAGING

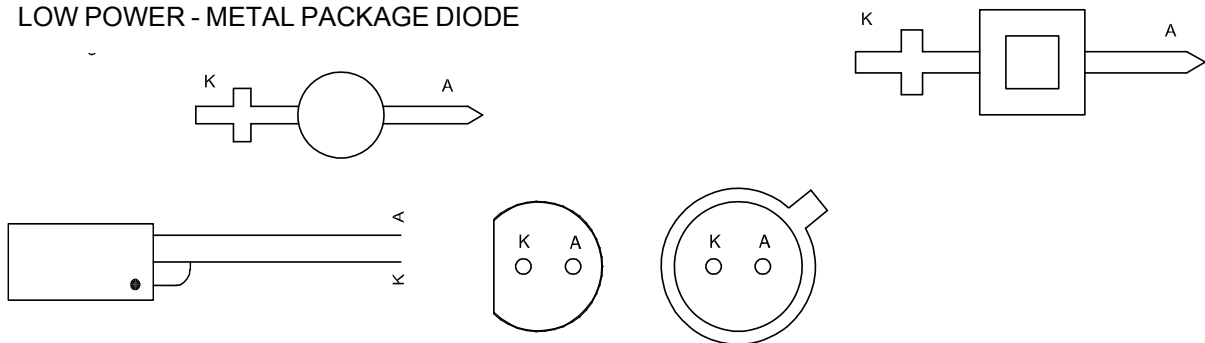
LOW POWER - PLASTIC PACKAGE DIODES



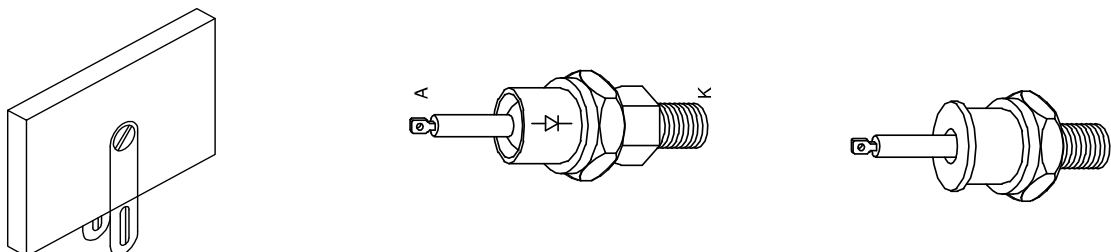
VERY LOW POWER - GLASS PACKAGE DIODE



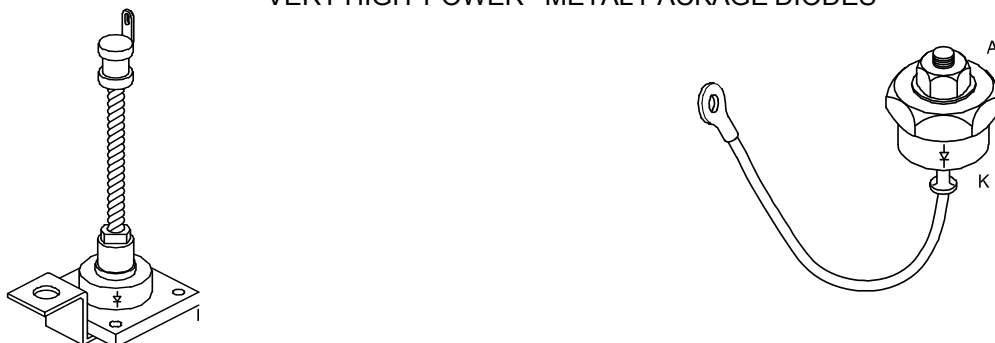
LOW POWER - METAL PACKAGE DIODE



HIGH POWER - METAL PACKAGE DIODE



VERY HIGH POWER - METAL PACKAGE DIODES



## Test transistors function

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify a transistor from its type-number the following informations referring to a data manual
  - (a) silicon or germanium
  - (b) PNP or NPN
  - (c) Package type
  - (d) base, emitter, collector pins
- test the transistor junction using ohmmeter.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments/Equipments

- Trainees kit
- International Transistors Data Book - 1 No./batch

#### Materials/Components

- Assorted type of transistors - 32 Nos./batch
- Sleeve wires of Red, Yellow, Blue and Black colours - 10 cm each

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Identifying transistor type and leads, referring to data manual

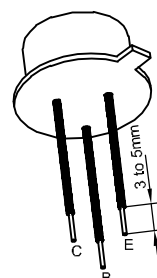
- 1 Take any one transistor from the given assorted lot, enter its label number and transistor type number in Table 1.
- 2 Refer to transistor data manual and find and record the following details of the transistor in Table 1 of O&T sheet.
  - Whether silicon or germanium
  - Whether NPN or PNP
  - Type of packaging or case outline (Example: TO5, TO7 etc.)

- 3 From the type of package recorded, the transistor data manual and draw the pin diagram indicating base, emitter and collector for the transistor, in Table 1.

- 4 Put sleeves of suitable length, as shown in Fig 1, to the identified pins of the transistor using the colour scheme given below.

- |           |   |                      |
|-----------|---|----------------------|
| Base      | - | Blue colour sleeve   |
| Emitter   | - | Red colour sleeve    |
| Collector | - | Yellow colour sleeve |
| Shield    | - | Black colour sleeve  |

Fig 1



**Note:** In some power transistors, the metal body itself will be the collector. In such cases mark 'C' on the metal body using a pencil. All transistors will not have shield pin.

- 5 Repeat steps 1 to 4 for atleast five transistors of different types in the given lot and get your work checked by your instructor.

TABLE 1

Label Number	Silicon/ Germanium	NPN/PNP	Type of package / Case outline	Pin diagram indicating B C E

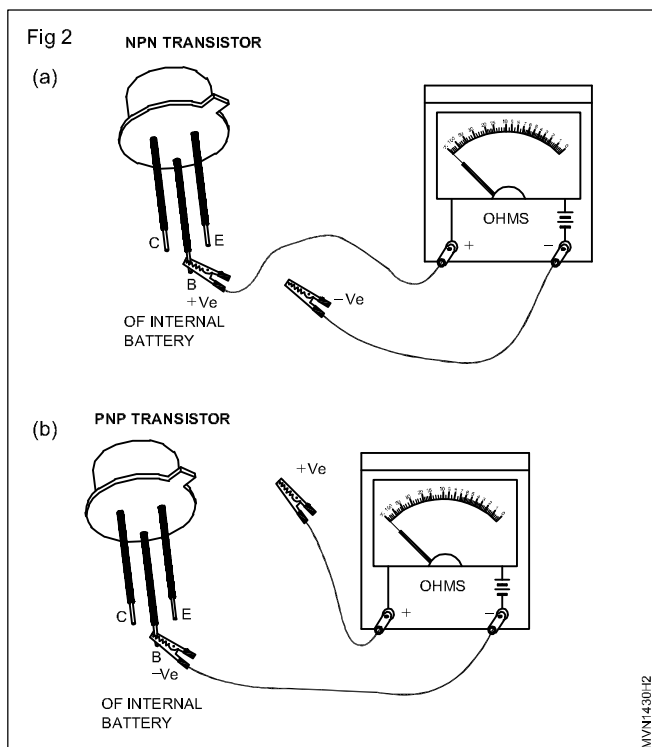


## TASK 2 : Testing transistor junctions using ohmmeter

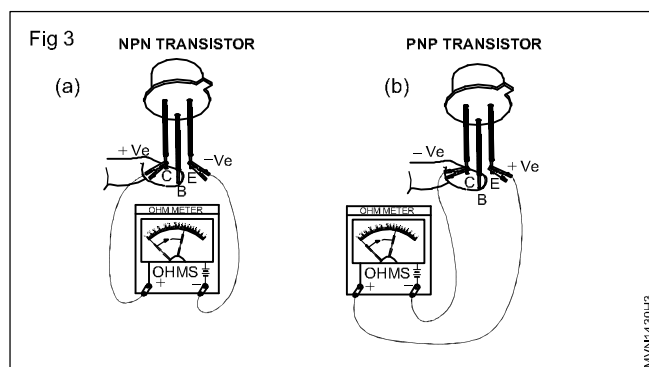
- 1 Identify which terminal of the ohmmeter being used is connected to the +ve terminal of the internal battery of the meter. Set the meter range to Rx100W.

Ohmmeters in very low or very high ohms range can produce excessive current/voltage and may damage low power transistors while testing.

- 2 Take a transistor whose pins are identified and sleeved at Task 1. Depending on whether the chosen transistor is NPN or PNP, clip/hold the +ve or -ve of the meter prod to the base of the transistor as shown in Figs 2a and 2b.



- 3 Clip the other meter prod to the emitter. Check if the base-emitter junction diode of transistor shows low resistance (few tens of ohms) or very high resistance (few tens of kilohms). Record your observation in Table 2.
- 4 Reverse the polarity of the prod connected across the base-emitter and check if the base-emitter junction diode of transistor shows low resistance or very high resistance. Record your observation in Table 2.
- 5 From the recorded observations in steps 3 and 4, and referring to the table given below, conclude and record,



the condition of the base-emitter junction diode of the transistor as GOOD, open or shorted in Table 2 of O&T sheet.

**If the resistance of the junction measured in both directions is high, in addition to the condition of the junction given in table, one other possibility is, your identified base pin may be wrong. You may be measuring resistance across emitter-collector. In case of doubt, recheck the identified pins of the transistor and repeat steps 2, 3 and 4.**

- 6 Repeat steps 2,3,4 and 5 and check the condition of the base-collector junction diode of the transistor.
- 7 Measure the resistance across the emitter-collector and record the observation as V-HIGH (> 1MW) or LOW (< 500W).

**In a good transistor the resistance between the emitter and collector will be very high. A low resistance indicates that the transistor is leaky.**

- 8 Clip the meter across the emitter-collector with correct polarity as shown in Fig 3. Touch the base-collector with moist fingers as shown in Fig 3 and check if the resistance shown by the meter decreases indicating that the transistor is turning ON. Record your observation as YES or NO in Table 1 of O&T sheet.
- 9 From the observations recorded at steps 5,6,7 and 8, give your conclusion on the overall condition of the transistor under test.
- 10 Repeat steps 1 to 9 for atleast five more transistors of different types.
- 11 Get your work checked by your instructor.

TABLE 2

Resistance of P-N junction with meter prods in one direction	Resistance of P-N junction with meter in reversed direction	Condition of P-N junction
LOW	VERY HIGH	GOOD
LOW	LOW	SHORTED
VERY HIGH	VERY HIGH	OPEN(See note above)

## Identify hydraulic clutch components

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the hydraulic components in a vehicle.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainees tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>			
• Vehicle (Hydraulic clutch)	- 1 No.		

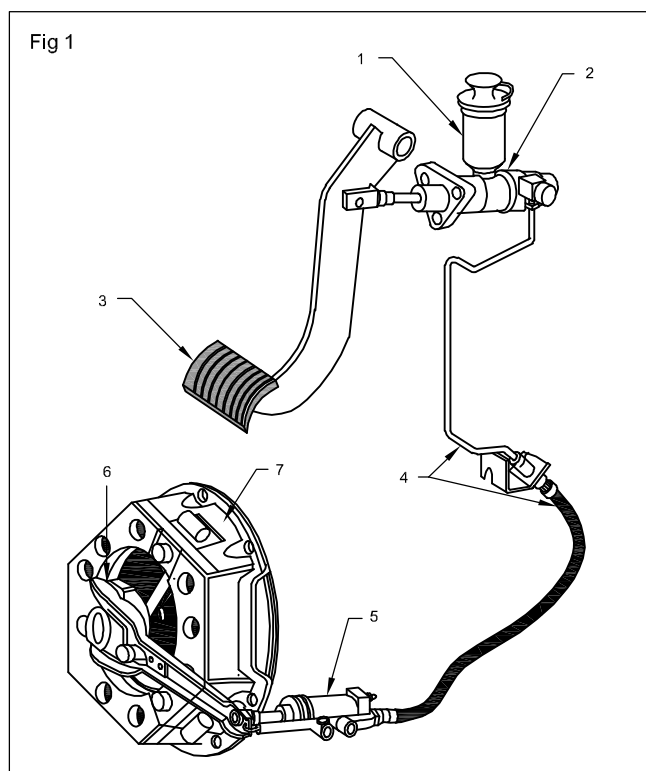
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Locating the hydraulic clutch components on a vehicle

- 1 Place the vehicle on the level ground.
- 2 Support the vehicle tyre with stoppers.
- 3 Apply hand brakes.
- 4 Open the bonnet.
- 5 Remove the negative battery cable.
- 6 Trace the hydraulic clutch system and locate the components i.e. Master cylinder reservoir, Master cylinder, Slave cylinder, Hydraulic lines and Throw-cut lever.
- 7 Identify the parts in the system as shown in Fig 1.
- 8 Write the name of the parts in the Table 1.

**Table 1**

Sl. No.	Label No.	Name of the Parts
1	2	
2	5	
3	4	
4	1	
5	3	



## Trace hydraulic circuit

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the parts of the hydraulic jack
- identify the parts of hydraulic power steering
- identify the parts of hydraulic brake.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Bleeding kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Hydraulic jack trolley type - 1 No.
- Hydraulic power steering in vehicle - 1 No.
- Hydraulic brake in vehicle - 1 No.

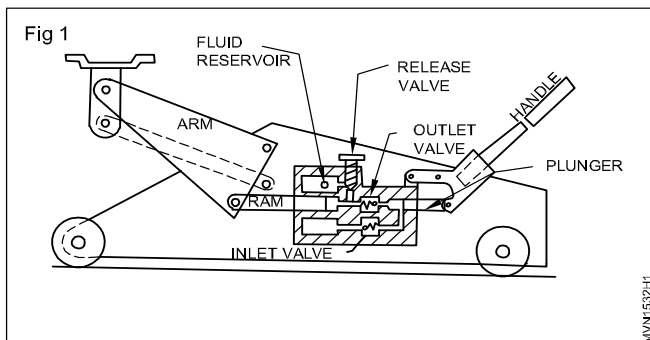
#### Materials

- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Hydraulic fluid - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Identify the parts of hydraulic jack

- 1 Place the cut section model of the hydraulic jack on the work bench (Fig 1)



- 2 Trace the hydraulic jack system and locate the components i.e. reservoir, plunger, Non-return valve, Ram, Relief valve and shut off valve.
- 3 Identify the parts in the system as shown in Fig 1
- 4 Write the name of the parts in the Table 1
- 5 The following parts should be matched as given below column (a), arm (b), fluid reservoir (c), Release valve (d), outlet valve (e) handle (f) plunger (g) & inlet valve (h).

**Table 1**

S. No.	Label word	Name of the parts
1	f	
2	d	
3	b	
4	g	
5	e	
6	a	
7	c	

### TASK 2: Identify the parts of hydraulic power steering

- 1 Place the cut-section model of the hydraulic power assisted steering (PAS) on the work bench.
- 2 Draw the line diagram of hydraulic power assisted steering system

- 3 Locate the parts of the hydraulic power assisted steering system (Fig 1) i.e. Suction line, Hose, Seal mount with sealing ring, Cylinder, Piston rod, Steering gear, Return line, Piston, Pressure pad adjusting screw, High pressure pump, Rack and Pressure lines
- 4 Write the name of the parts in the Table 2.

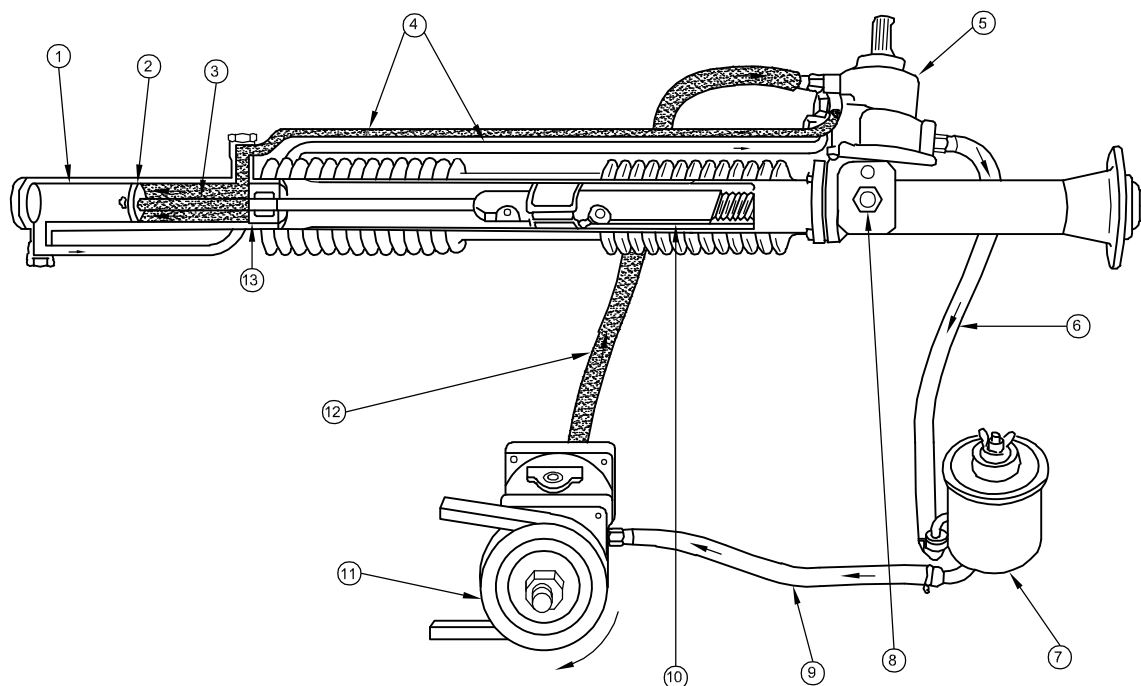
**Table 2**

Sl. No.	Label No.	Name of the Parts
1	2	
2	5	
3	4	
4	1	
5	3	

**Table 2 - Cont..**

Sl. No.	Label No.	Name of the Parts
6	11	
7	6	
8	9	
9	12	
10	7	
11	10	
12	13	
13	8	

**Fig 1**



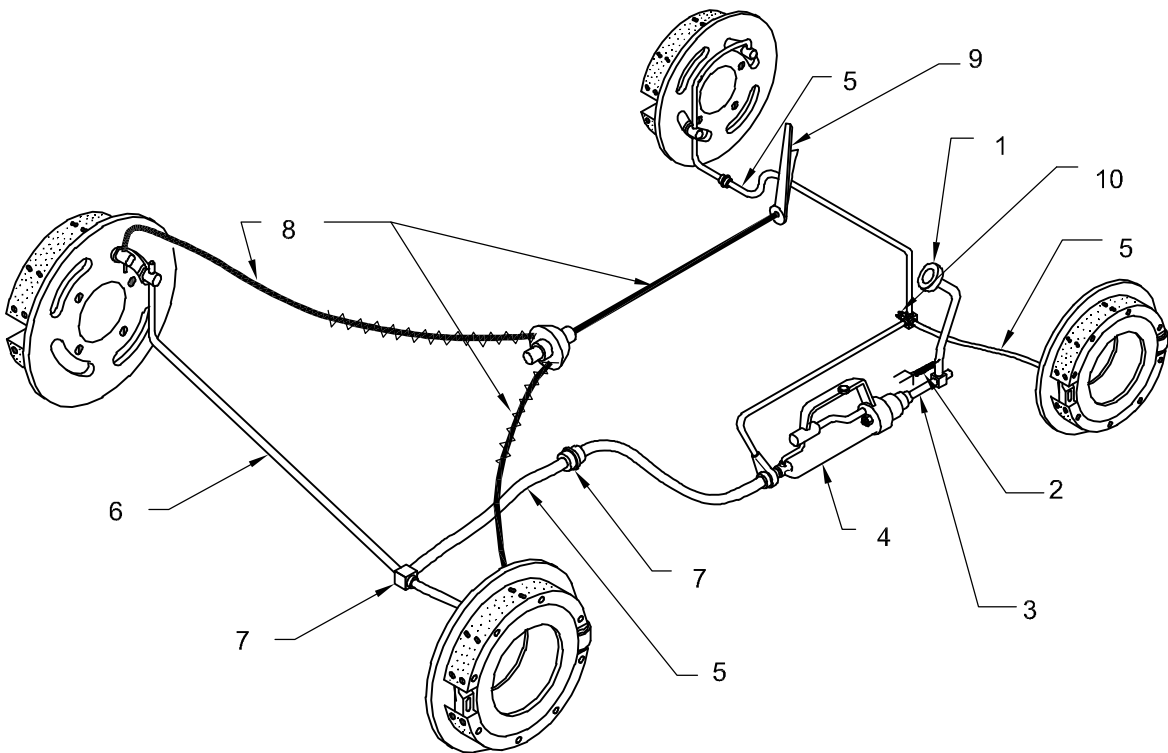
### **TASK 3 :Trace and identify the components of the hydraulic brake system**

- 1 Place the cut-section model of the hydraulic brake system on the work bench.
- 2 Draw the line diagram of hydraulic brake system.
- 3 Locate the parts of the hydraulic brake system (Fig1) and drum braking system. (Fig 2 & 3) i.e.Brake pipe line unions, Brake push-rod, Brake flexible hoses, Brake pedal return spring, Master cylinder, Hold down spring,

Brake lining, Brake steel pipe lines, Brake adjuster, Shoe return spring, Stop light switch, Hand brake lever, Pivot, Brake plate carrier, Wheel cylinder, Parking brake cable, Brake shoe, Brake pedal, Lock nut and Clevis.

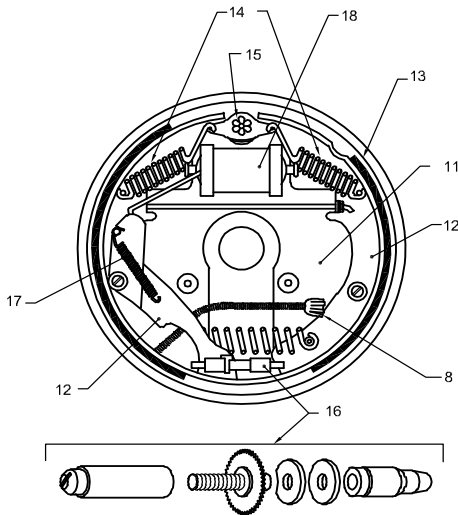
- 4 Write the name of the parts in the Table 3.

Fig 1



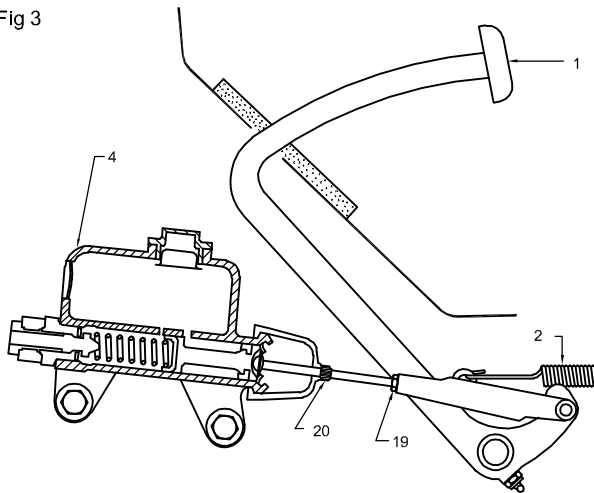
MVN1532X1

Fig 2



MVN1532X2

Fig 3



MVN1532X3

Table 3 - Cont..

Table 3

Sl. No.	Label No.	Name of the Parts
1	2	
2	5	
3	4	
4	1	
5	3	
6	11	
7	15	
8	17	
9	12	

Sl. No.	Label No.	Name of the Parts
10	18	
11	14	
12	19	
13	6	
14	20	
15	7	
16	9	
17	13	
18	8	
19	10	
20	15	

Identify air brake components

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify pneumatic components of vehicle brake system.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainees tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>			
• Vehicle fitted with air brake	- 1 No.		

PROCEDURE

- 1 Identify the air compressor (1) in the Fig 1 which provide compressed air.

2 Locate air tank (2), which receives the compressed air from air compressor.

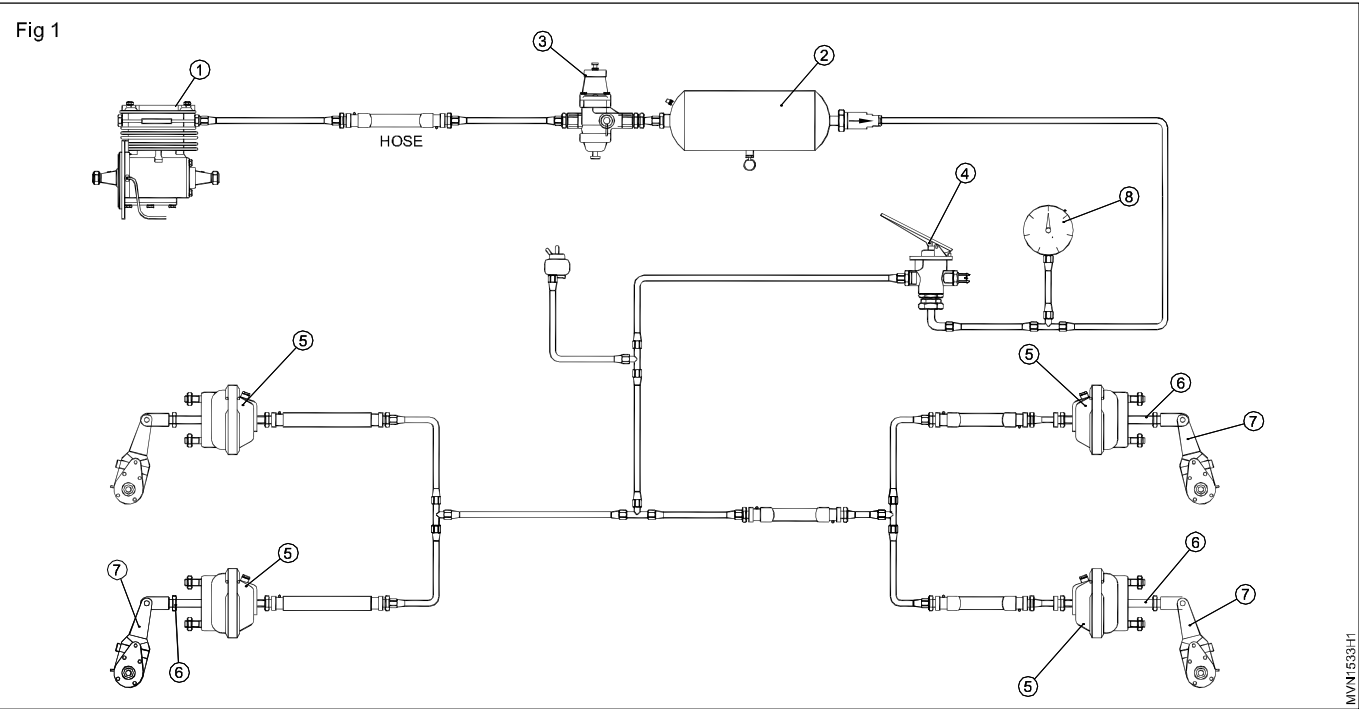
3 Locate unloader valve (3) which unloads excess air, once the set air pressure is reached in air tank.

4 Identify brake valve (4) which permits air to flow, apply brake, when brake pedal is pressed.

5 Locate 2 front brake chambers (5) and 2 rear brake chambers (5) which pushes slack adjuster for application of front & rear brake
- 6 Locate slack adjusters (6), for front & rear brake.

7 Layout diagram of air brake system.

8 Identify air pressure (8) gauge, which indicated the pressure of air, in the air tank.
- The minimum pressure required for effective brake application is provided by manufacturer.



## Identify different types of vehicle

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify different types of vehicle name.

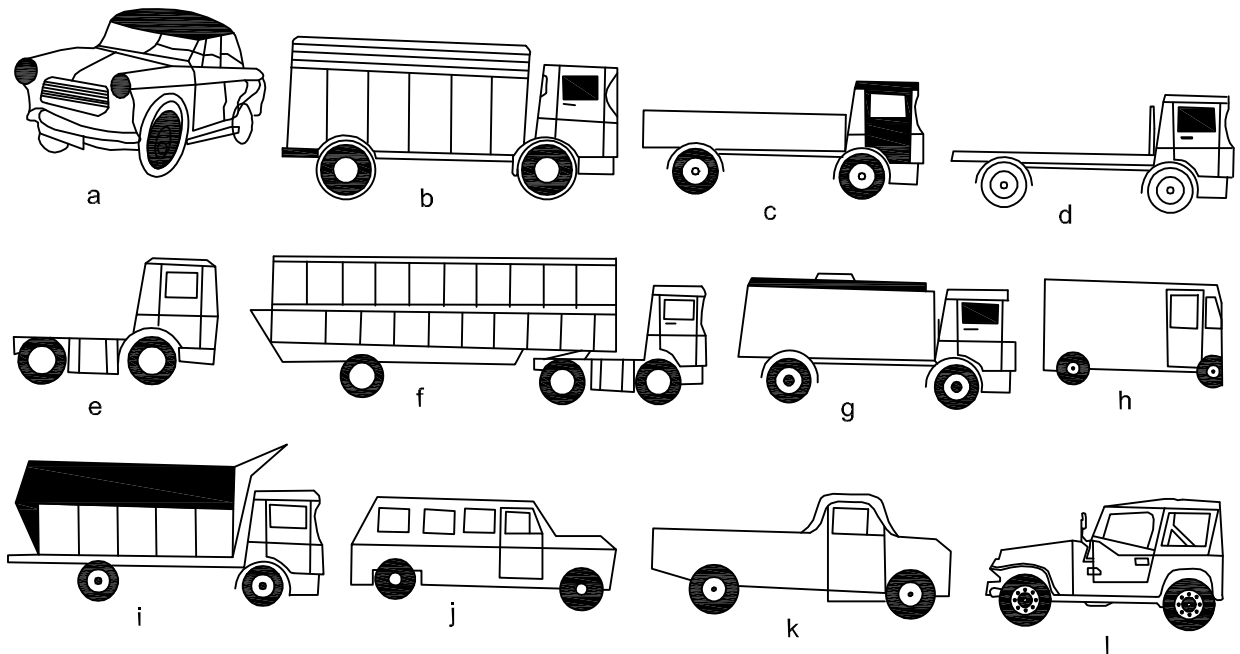
### PROCEDURE

1 Locate the type of vehicle name shown in Fig 1.

- a Car  
b Truck punjab body or straight truck  
c Truck Half body  
d Truck flat form type  
e Tractor  
f Tractor with articulated trailer

g Tanker  
h delivery van  
i Dumper truck  
j Station wagon  
k Pick up  
l Jeep

Fig 1



2 Write the name of the vehicle in Table 1 with respect to Fig 1.

Table 1

Sl. No.	Match Word	Vehicle Name
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		

Table 1 - Cont..

Sl. No.	Match Word	Vehicle Name
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		

<b>Automobile</b> <b>Mechanic Motor Vehicle - Classification of Vehicle and Engine</b>	<b>Exercise 1.6.35</b>
---	------------------------

### Read and interpret vehicle specification data

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the parts of the vehicle
- identify the vehicle specification data.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Equipments</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Trainees tool kit</li></ul>	- 1 No.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vehicle</li></ul>	- 1 No.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Compression gauge</li></ul>	- 1 No.	<b>Materials</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Measuring tape</li></ul>	- 1 No.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cotton waste</li></ul>	- as reqd.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vacuum gauge</li></ul>	- 1 No.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine oil</li></ul>	- as reqd.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Bore dial gauge</li></ul>	- 1 No.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hydraulic fluid</li></ul>	- as reqd.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hydro meter</li></ul>	- 1 No.		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Voltage tester</li></ul>	- 1 No.		

**Note : Instructor demonstrate of vehicle specification**

<b>Mahindra Balero GLX</b>	
<b>Engine</b>	XD-3PF IDiesel
Type	4-stroke oversquare, 4-cylinder, in line
Bore	94.0 mm
Stroke	90.0 mm
Cubic Capacity	2498 cc
Compression Ratio	23 : 1
Max. Gross Power	72.5 hp at 4000 R.P.M. (DIN 70020)
Max. Gross Torque	15.3 kg-m at 2000 R.P.M
Fuel Injection System	Distributor pump
Weight of Engine (dry)	200 kg with flywheel and starter
Cooling System	By Belt driven pump on cylinder head, thermostat controlled

<b>Transmission</b>	5-speed, All synchromesh
Ratios	1st Gear : 4.03 :1 2nd Gear : 2.39 :1 3rd Gear : 1.52 :1 4th Gear : 1.00 :1 5th Gear : 0.84 :1 Reverse : 3.76 :1
Transfer Case	For 4WD only
Ratios	High - 1 : 1, Low - 2.48 :1
<b>Suspension</b>	
Front	2WD : Independent, Coil Spring, Double acting telescopic shock absorber and anti roll bar
4 WD :	Semi -elliptical type, stabilizer bar at front
Rear	Semi-elliptical leaf type
<b>Frame</b>	Rectangular tubular section 5 intermediate cross members (6 for IFS). Rear bumper



<b>Steering</b>	Power steering - worm & roller type with universal joints
Turning Radius	5.4 mts.
<b>Clutch</b>	Hydraulic, single dry plate 235mm (9.25" dia)
<b>Brakes</b>	
Type	Hydraulic with tandem master cylinder with vacuum assisted servo
Front	13 mm disc and calliper type
Rear	Drum : 27.4 x 50.8 mm (11" x 2")
Parking	Internal expanding type on rear wheels. Hand lever and cable type.
<b>Axle</b>	
Front	IFS-2WD: Stub Axle 4WD : Full floating hypoid type
Capacity/Ratio	1000 kg / 4.88 : 1
Rear	Full floating hypoid type

Capacity/Ratio	1700 kg / 4.88 : 1
<b>Electricals</b>	
Battery	12 volts, negative earth
Capacity	70 amp. hr
Alternator	65 amp. with built-in regulator and vacuum pump
Drive	Belt drive
<b>Wheels and Tyres</b>	
Wheels	Rim size 6J x 15
Tyre	P215 / 75 R 15 radial
<b>Fuel System</b>	
Capacity	60 litres fitted with electrical float unit
<b>Weights</b>	
Kerb weight	1615 kg (2 WD) 1695 kg (4 WD)
G.V.W.	2200 kg (2 WD) 2280 kg (4 WD)

# Automobile Exercise 1.6.36

## Mechanic Motor Vehicle - Classification of Vehicle and Engine

### Identify the Vehicle Information Number (VIN)

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the vehicle number specification.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Measuring tape	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Paper	- as reqd.
• Car	- 1 No.	• Pencil	- 1 No.
		• Eraser	- 1 No.

#### TASK 1: General information for VIN

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is composed of 17 digits and classified into three large groups such as WMI, VDS and VIS. Example:- MALBB5 IBC AMI 73752

	Digit	Passenger Car/MPV/BUS
<b>WMI</b>	1	Geographic Zone
	2	Manufacturer
<b>VDS</b>	3	Vehicle Type
	4	Series
	5	Body Style and Version
	6	Body Type
	7	Restraint System/GVWR/ Brake System
	8	Engine Type
	9	Check Digit / Drive Side
<b>VIS</b>	10	Model Year
	11	Plant of product
	12-17	Serial number

- WMI: World Manufacturer Identifier
- VDS: Vehicle Descriptor Section
- VIS : Vehicle Indicator Section
- MPV: Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle (Ex : MPV,SUV,RV)
- GVWR : Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**Note: Vehicle code may be vary depend upon manufacture**

Check the VIN number in your institute vehicle under guide line of instructor.

- Place a car in a plain ground
- Apply hand brake and chock the wheels
- Identify the location of VIN number in your vehicle
- Note the VIN Number of your vehicle on plain paper
- Decode the VIN Number details as per the manufactures general informations

### Skill Sequence

#### Studying of garage service equipments

**Objectives:** This shall help you to

- operate garage service station equipments.

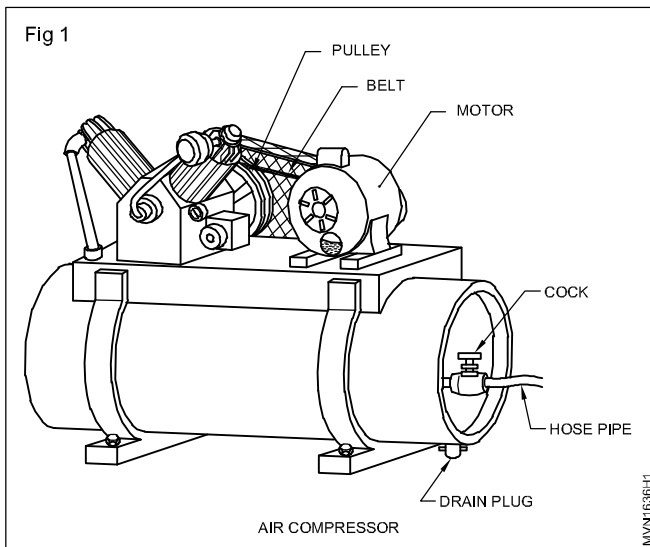
##### Air compressor (Fig 1)

Check the oil level.

Check the belt's(1) tension connecting the motor(2) and the compressor's pulley(3).

Ensure that the belt guard is fixed in its position.

Drain the water through the drain plug (4) and tighten the drain plug.



Inspect the electrical connections visually for looseness, disconnections or cuts.

Switch 'on' the compressor

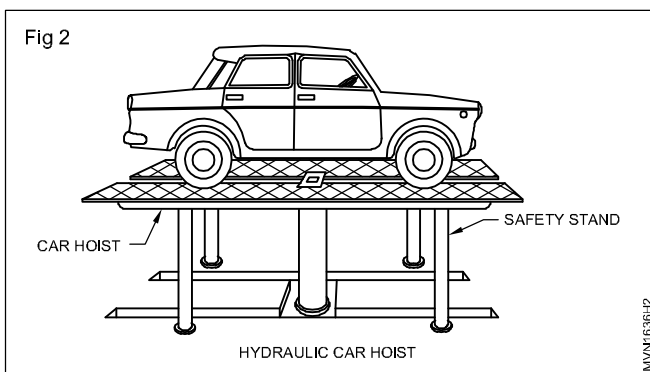
Observe the sound of the compressor. If any abnormal sound is found, stop the compressor immediately. (Consult your Instructor)

Switch 'off' the compressor.

Hold the hose-pipe (5) and open the cock (6). Use compressed air wherever needed.

Close the cock after using the compressed air.

### Hydraulic car hoist (Fig 2)



Park the vehicle in the centre of the car hoist.

Clamp the front and rear axle or check wheels.

Open the air cock gradually and observe that the car hoist(1) is moving upwards.

Close the cock when it reaches the required height.

Provide safety stands(2) underneath the hoist. Open the outlet cock slowly so that the vehicle moves down without jerk. Ensure that the hoist side rail sits firmly on the stand.

After finishing the required job, slightly open the inlet cock and raise the car hoist slightly up. Close the inlet cock.

Remove the safety stands.

Ensure that nobody is present underneath the vehicle.

Open the outlet cock slowly so that the hoist comes down without disturbing the vehicle's position.

Remove the clamps/chocks and remove the vehicle from the hoist.

### Car washer

Check the oil level.

Check the belt tension.

Check the belt guard for its position.

Inspect the electrical connection visually for looseness, disconnections or cuts.

Open the water tank.

Check the water level.

Hold the gun before starting the car washer.

Switch 'ON' the car washer and adjust the pressure gauge for the required pressure.

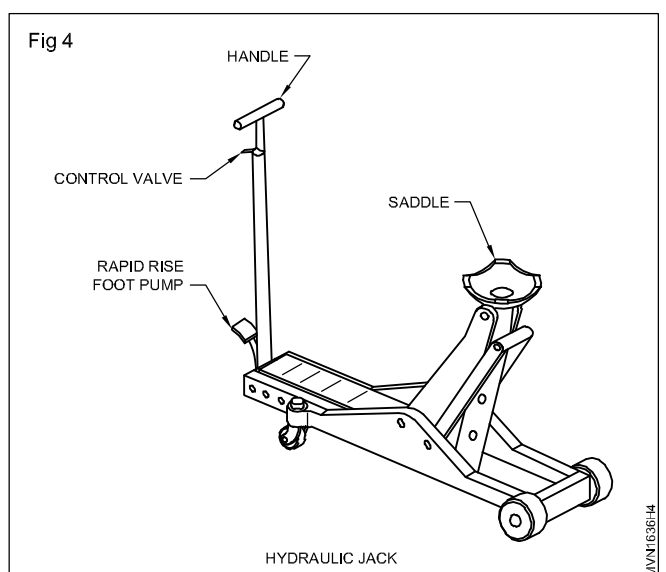
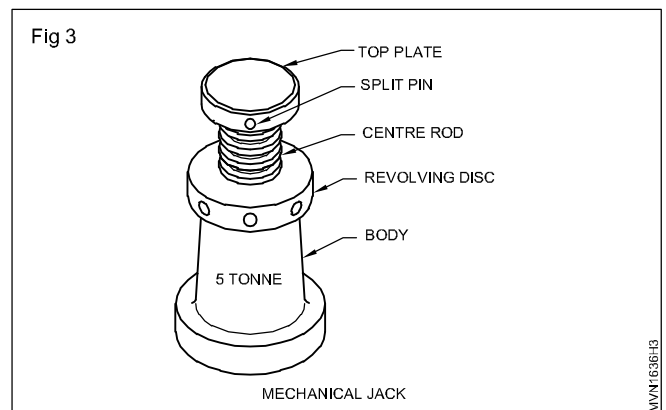
Open the water gun.

Check the water jet and adjust for force and spray at an angle to body panel.

After completing the cleaning, stop the car washer.

Close the water intake cock (water supply).

### Mechanical jack (Fig 3)/Hydraulic jack (Fig 4)



Park the vehicle on level ground.

In case of jacking up the front axle, chock the rear wheels and vice versa.

Check the free movements of threads in a mechanical jack by hand and in the hydraulic jack. Check the oil level and its operations.

Place the jack under the vehicle in specified place.

Rotate the screw gradually with the jack lever and lift the vehicle and in the case of hydraulic jack move the jack's lever slowly so that the axle jacks up without any jerk.

Place the support horses below the chassis frame/axle.

Lower down the jack and remove it.

After completing the specific job jack up again.

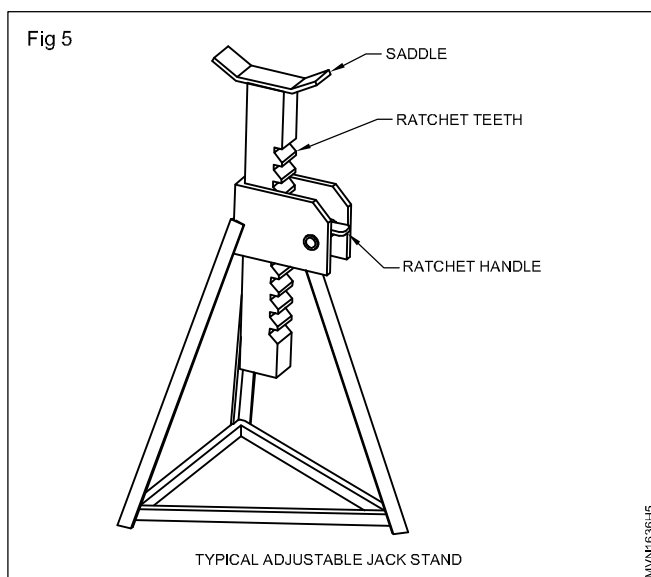
Remove the support/horses.

Lower down the jack and remove it.

### Safety:

- 1 Never work under a vehicle supported only by a floor jack.
- 2 Lift saddles must be properly located and in secured contact.
- 3 Always check for equipments, parts or personnel beneath the car before lowering.

### Jack stand (Fig 5)



The height of the jack stand is adjusted by the ratchet adjustment.

Stands must be properly and securely placed.

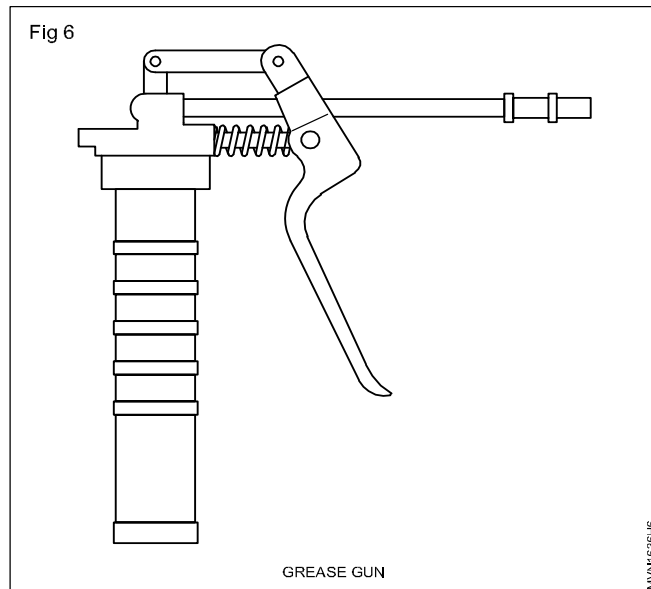
### Grease gun (Fig 6)

Select the grease gun nipple according to the vehicle. (Consult your instructor)

Check visually, the grease nipple holder for any damage.

Fill up the gun with the specified grease.

Close the grease gun and operate the lever till the grease comes out continuously from the nipple with pressure.



Use the gun for the required purpose.

### Oil spray gun

Check visually the oil spray gun nozzle, nozzle holder, operating lever, air hose for any damage.

Fill the spray gun with SAE20W/40 and kerosene mixture in the ratio of 1:20.

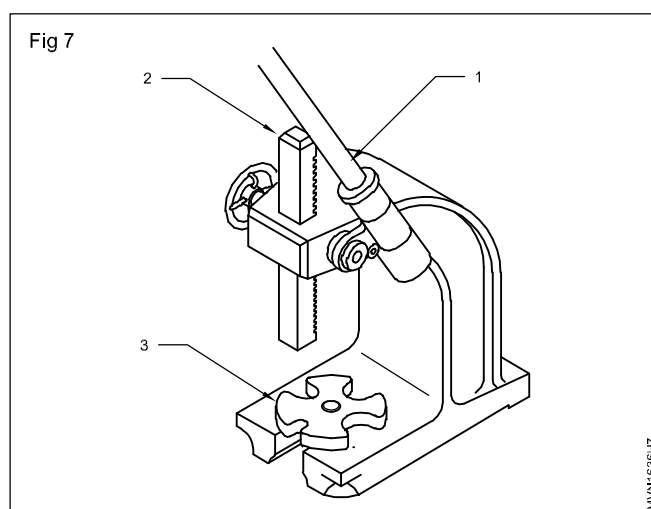
Connect the oil spray gun to the quick release coupler.

Operate the oil spray gun.

See that the oil is sprayed at pressure and spray over panel joints and moving part only.

Close the air-hose connections and takeout the oil spray gun.

### Arbor press (Fig 7)



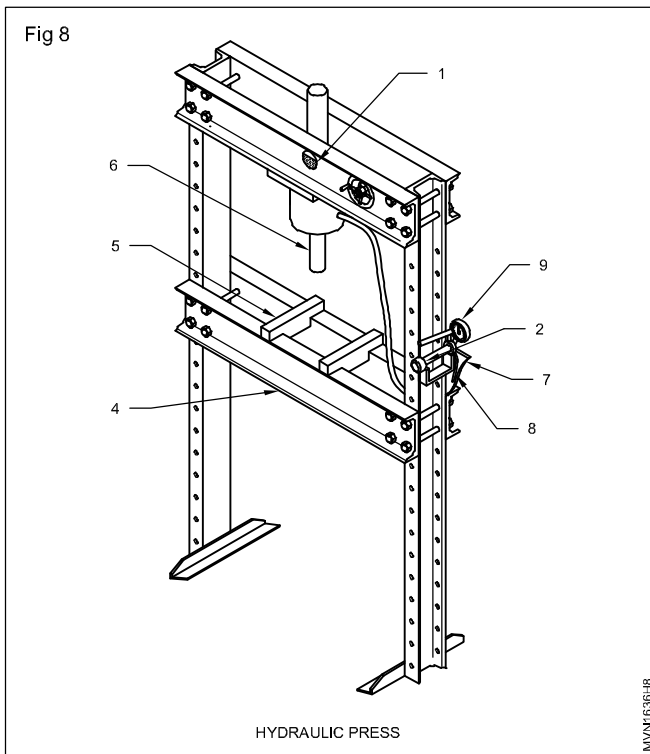
Check for easy movement of the operating lever(1) and rack if necessary lubricate.

Select the plate(3) according to the work.

Place the component on the plate.

Press the work slowly and listen for abnormal noise.

## Hydraulic press (Fig 8)



Clean the press.

Check the oil level(1) if necessary topup with hydraulic oil

Check the hydraulic press for its free function and leakage

Lock the cylinder plunger releasing knob(2).

Adjust the bed(4) to the required height so that, after placing the job, there will be 100mm clearance between the plunger(6) and the bed(4).

Align the anvil(5) according to the job.

Place the job on the anvil(5).

Select the distance piece in such a way that while pressing the shaft/bush, it does not touch the body (minimum 10mm gap to be given between the plunger(6) and the distance piece)

Place the distance piece on the shaft/bush. Ensure that it does not touch the body.

Operate the low pressure lever(7) and make the plunger(6) to have a contact on the job,

Operate the heavy pressure lever(8), observe the load on the gauge(9) and the job simultaneously. Ensure the job comes out gradually.

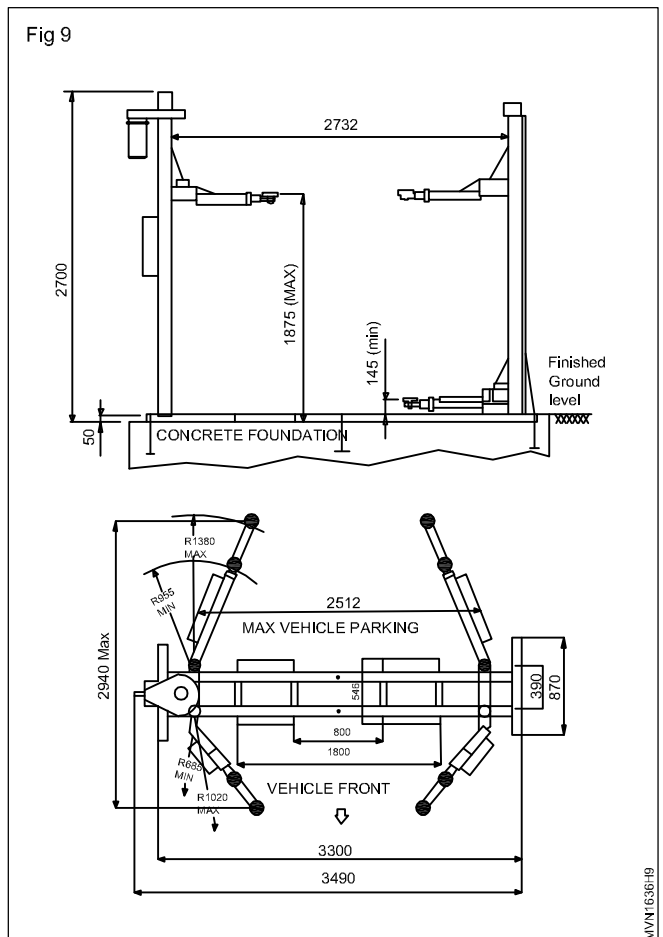
If the load exceeds more than the specified limit, stop the pressing.

### Safety

- 1 Shield brittle parts such as bearings to protect against flying parts.
- 2 After finishing the work loosen the plunger releasing knob(2).
- 3 Remove the job and clean.

## Two post lift hoist

- 1 Park the vehicle in the centre of the electro mechanical.
- 2 Adjust and fix the telescopic two post lift lifting arm.
- 3 Use the automatic arms locking and releasing device while lifting and lowering.
- 4 Set saftey mechanism to prevent uneven lifting.
- 5 Use the extra saftey nut.
- 6 Check the chain drive and operatethe lifting switch.
- 7 Use the anchoring bolts for saftey. (Fig 9).



### Four post lift (Fig 10)

- 1 Drive the vehicle on the leveled ramp of the four post lift.
- 2 Check the vehicle parked correctly are not on the ramp & use wooden block as a stopper
- 3 Check the vehicle door & glasses are closed & pull up hand brake lever of vehicle.
- 4 Drive the hydraulic cylinder in stable & lowering.
- 5 Offering pull range mechanical protection by using safety block
- 6 Connected by using steel cables, Forced synchronized movement of the lift in order to effectively prevent the sloping of the vehicle
- 7 4 Ton with extended run way length for LCV & Bigger vehicle.

### Engine hoist

- 1 Keep the vehicle on level ground.
- 2 If firm ground is not there use big wooden block under the base of hoist.
- 3 Pull up hand brake lever of vehicle.
- 4 Place the hoist on firm ground & fix a rope to such part of engine.
- 5 Lift the hoist slowly till free from the vehicle.
- 6 Slowly role the wheel hoist and lake hoist to work shop.

— — — — —

## Identify the parts of a diesel engine

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify the diesel engine parts.

Requirements	
<b>Tools/Instruments</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.</li> <li>• Box Spanner set - 1 No.</li> <li>• Ring compressor, ring expander valve lifter - 1 No. each</li> </ul>	
<b>Equipments</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multi cylinder diesel engine cut sectional model - 1 No.</li> </ul>	<b>Materials</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cotton waste - as reqd.</li> <li>• Kerosene - as reqd.</li> <li>• Soap Oil - as reqd.</li> <li>• Tray - as reqd.</li> </ul>

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Place the cut-sectional model diesel engine on the work bench
- 2 Trace the radiator, FIP, Injector, air cleaner, fuel feed pump, fuel feed, alternator, self-starter, water pump, dipstick, inlet & Exhaust manifold, engine head & valve assembly, rocker arm, valve cover, piston, timing gear oil pump, fly wheel & housing, connecting rod, crank-shaft and etc.
- 3 Identify the parts in the diesel engine cut-section model shown in Fig 1, Fig 2 & Fig 3.
- 4 Write the name of the parts in the Table - 1

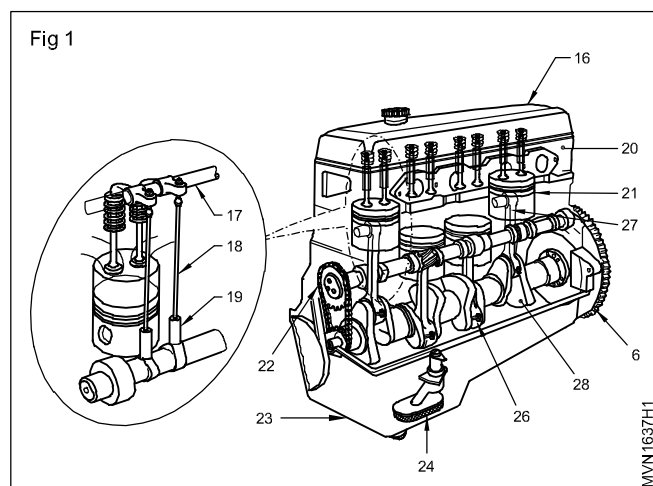
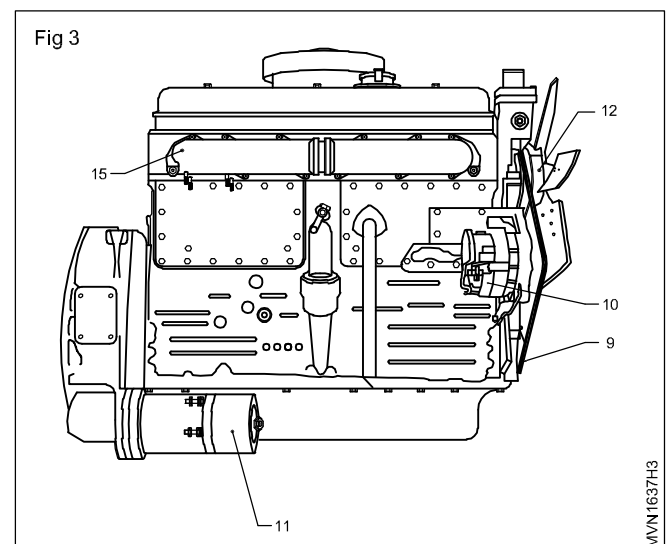
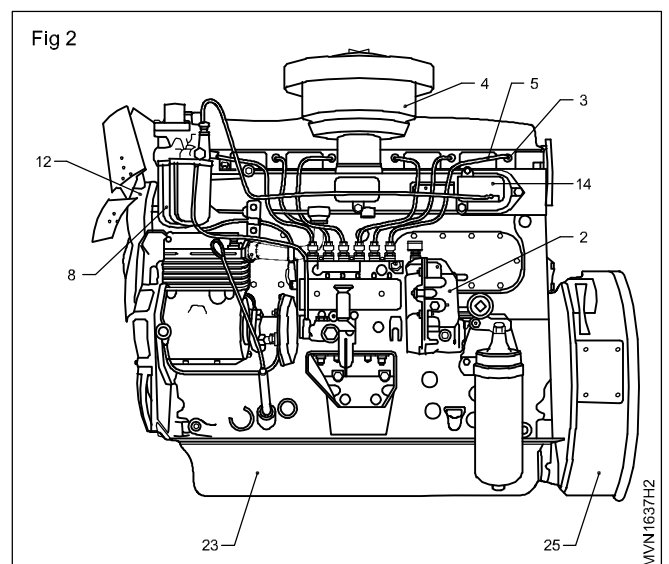


Table - 1

S.No.	Label No.	Name of the part
1		
2		
...		
...		



## Identify the parts of petrol engine

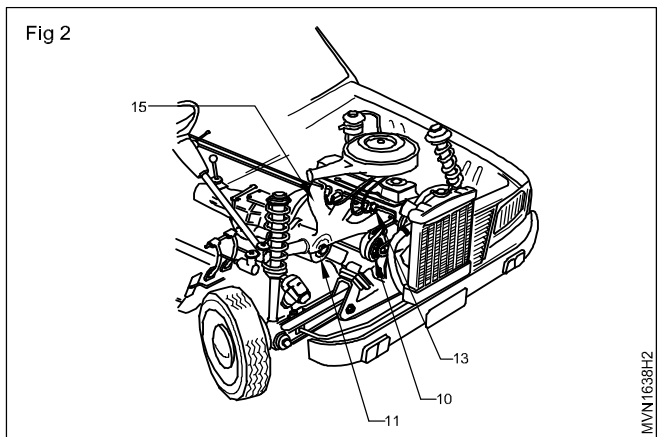
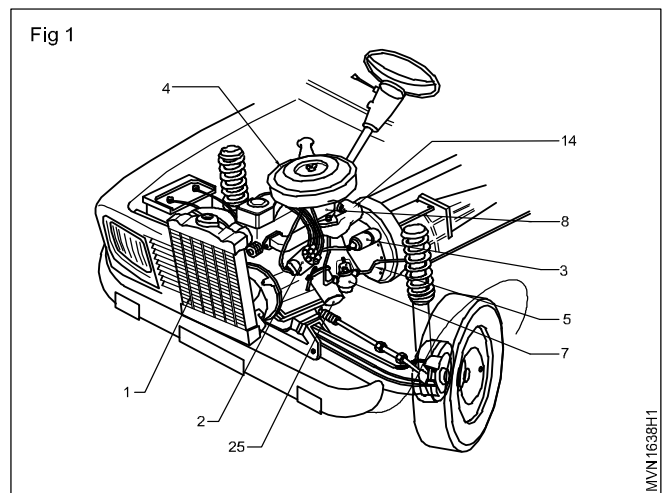
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **identify the petrol engine parts.**

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Cut sectional model of Multi cylinder petrol engine	- 1 No.	• Soap Oil	- as reqd.
		• Tray	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Locate the radiator (1) (Fig 1)
- 2 Locate the distributor (2) and ignition coil (3) (Fig 1)
- 3 Locate the air cleaner (4) (Fig 1)
- 4 Locate the fuel pipes (5) (Fig 1)
- 5 Locate the fly wheel (6) (Fig 3)
- 6 Locate the fuel pump (7) (Fig 3)
- 7 Locate the carburetor (8) (Fig 3)
- 8 Locate the fan belt (9) (Fig 3)
- 9 Locate the dynamo (10) (Fig 2)
- 10 Locate the self-starter (11) (Fig 3)
- 11 Locate the water pump assembly (12) (Fig 3)
- 12 Locate the spark plugs (13) (Fig 2)
- 13 Locate the inlet (14) (Fig 1) and exhaust manifold (15) (Fig 2)
- 14 Locate the valve cover (16) (Fig 4)
- 15 Locate the rocker assembly (17) and the cylinder head (20) (Fig 4)
- 16 Locate the push rods (18) (Fig 4)
- 17 Locate the tappet side covers on the engine block.
- 18 Locate the tappets (19) (Fig 4)
- 19 Locate the cylinder head (20)
- 20 Locate the crank shaft pulley (21) (Fig 3)
- 21 Locate the timing cover in front of the engine
- 22 Locate the timing gear and chain (22) (Fig 4) Note down the timing marks.
- 23 Locate the camshaft (29) (Fig 4)
- 24 Locate the oil sump (23) (Fig 3)
- 25 Locate the oil pump (24) (Fig 4)

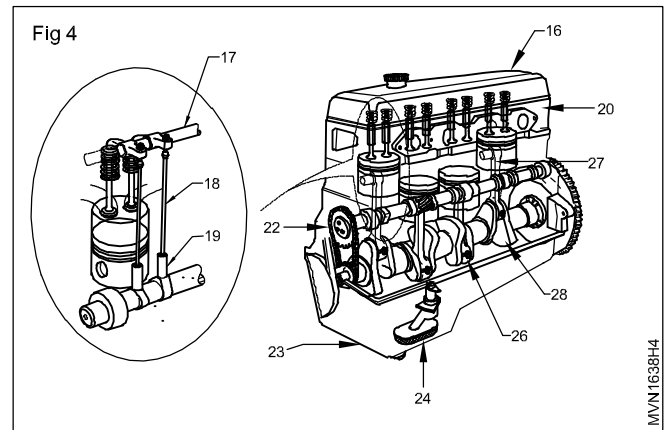
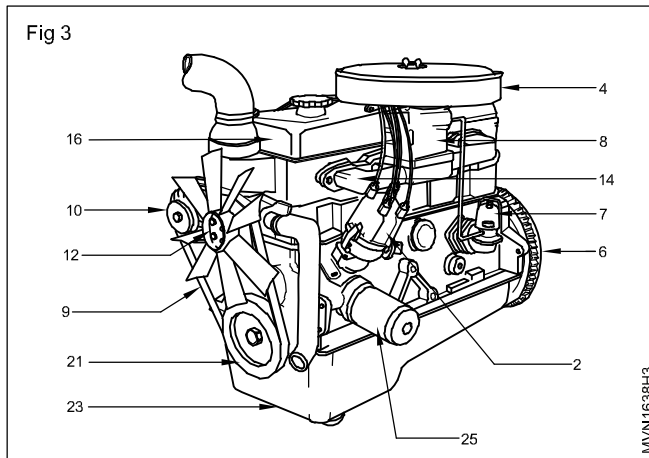




26 Locate the oil filter (25) (Fig 1)

27 Locate the connecting rod caps (26) (Fig 4)

28 Locate the piston and connecting rod in the engine (27) (Fig 4)



## Practice on Starting and stopping of engine

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **start the engine**
- **stop the engine.**

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- as reqd.
• Lead acid battery 12 V with cables	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Multicylinder four stroke diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Diesel	- as reqd.
• Running condition of diesel LMV vehicle	- 1 No.	• Soap Oil	- as reqd.
		• Engine Oil	- as reqd.
		• Coolant	- as reqd.

### PROCEDURE

#### TASK 1: Prepare the engine for starting

- 1 Check the water level in the radiator and top-up if needed
- 2 Check the engine oil level and top-up if needed
- 3 Check the electrolyte in the battery and top-up with distilled water

#### Starting the engine

- Make sure the handbrake or park brake is ON - with push button handbrakes, look for the dashboard light (usually a red exclamation mark "!" in red circle)
- Make sure the gearbox is in neutral for a manual car or park for an automatic car
- Press the clutch pedal with the left foot (if the car is manual)
- Press the brake pedal with the right foot (automatic and manual cars)
- If the car has push button ignition, push the button for long enough for the engine to start
- Check the gauges and warning lights as the vehicle goes through its initial post-start check. All warning lights should extinguish, unless there's one warning the engine is still cold.

#### Stopping the engine:

- Push the clutch in (manual car) and press the brake pedal
- Put the handbrake or park brake ON
- Put the gearbox in neutral for a manual car or park for an automatic car
- Check that only the handbrake/park brake light is displaying
- In a car with a key ignition, turn the key to the OFF position and remove it from the ignition.
- In a car with push button ignition, press the start/stop button to stop the engine.

**Perform all the above tasks at least twice**

**As soon as the engine revolutions up let the key go. (The key will spring back into position)**

**Put on seat belt (in automatic car)**

## Check the performance of running engine by observing the dash board meters/warning lights

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- prepare the engine for starting
- start the engine
- observe the dashboard meters and warning lights
- stop the engine.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- as reqd.
• Lead acid battery 12 V with cables	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Multicylinder four stroke diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Diesel	- as reqd.
• Running condition of diesel LMV vehicle	- 1 No.	• Soap Oil	- as reqd.
		• Engine Oil	- as reqd.
		• Coolant	- as reqd.

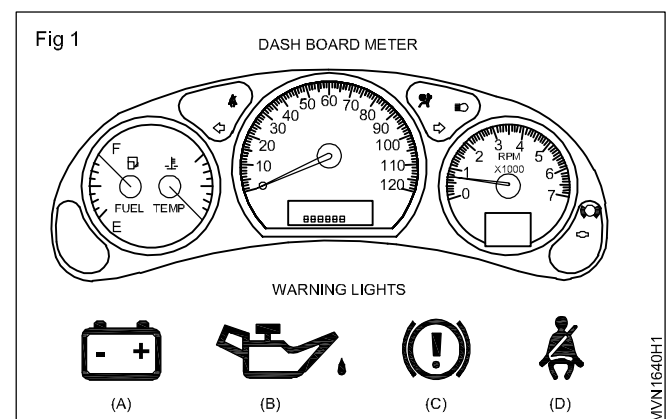
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Prepare the engine for starting

- 1 Check the water level in the radiator and top-up if needed.
- 2 Check the engine oil level and top-up if needed.
- 3 Check the electrolyte in the battery and top up with distilled water.
- 4 Insert the key in the main switch and turn the key to the 'ON' position.

Note down the warning lights in dashboard.

- a Battery lights glows in red (i.e. battery discharging) (Fig 1A)
  - b Engine oil light glows in red (i.e. oil is low (or) nil) (Fig 1B)
  - c Parking brake light glows in red (i.e parking brake is applied) (Fig 1C)
  - d Seat belt light glows in red (i.e. driver not wear the seat belt) (Fig 1D)
- 5 Release the parking brake (now light not shown red)



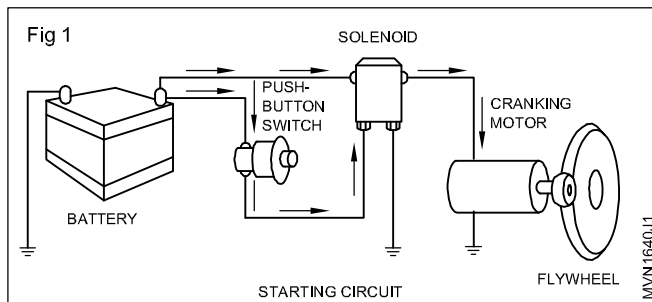
- 6 Wear the seat belt properly (now light not shown red)
- 7 Shift the gear to neutral position.
- 8 Observe the fuel gauge reading it shows empty to full.
- 9 Observe the temperature gauge reading it shows minimum temperatures.

### TASK 2: Start the engine (Fig.1)

**While starting don't press the accelerator pedal**

- 1 Press the starter push button Fig.2 or turn the ignition key further to start the engine.

- 2 Release the starter button / ignition key as soon as the engine has started.



**While engine running don't operate the starter button / key.**

If the engine does not start immediately do not keep starter button (pressed (or) key turned) beyond 10 seconds.

This leads to the battery will get discharged and over-heated.

- 3 Check the idling speed R.P.M in R.P.M meter.
- 4 Press the accelerator pedal to increase engine r.p.m steadily and allow the engine to warm up.

### TASK 3: Observe the dashboard meters / warning lights during engine run

- 1 Observe the battery warning light it's not glow (ie. Battery is charging)
- 2 Observe the engine oil warning light it's not glow (i.e. oil pump is working)
- 3 Observe the oil pressure gauge.
- 4 Observe the water temperature in temperature gauge.
- 5 Observe the reading of tachometer
- 6 Observe the odometer reading during vehicle (moving) running
- 7 Observe the trip meter reading

### TASK 4: Stop the engine

- 1 Remove the foot from accelerator pedal
- 2 Turn the ignition key to the OFF position to stop the engine

# Automobile Mechanic Motor Vehicle - Classification of Vehicle and Engine

Exercise 1.6.41

## Practice on identification of difference in petrol and diesel engine components

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to  
• identify the different parts of petrol and diesel engine

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- Petrol engine - 1 No.
- Diesel Engine - 1 No.
- Work bench - 1 No.

#### Materials

- Cotton cloth - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

**TASK:** Identify and compare the following engine parts

S.No.	System Name	Petrol Engine parts (Fig 1)	Diesel Engine parts (Fig 2)	Remarks
1	Fuel system	1. Carburetor	1. F.I.P 2. Injector 3. Fuel high pressure line 4. Over flow pipe	
2	Ignition system	1. Distributor 2. Spark Plug 3. Ignition Coil 4. HT lead	Compressed air	
3	Exhaust system	Heat control valve	EGR valve	
4	Air intake system	Super Charger	Turbocharger	

Fig 1

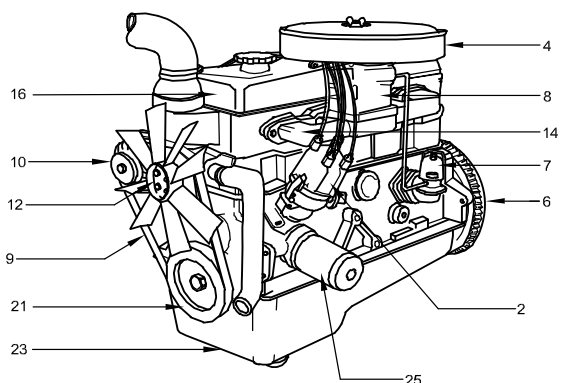
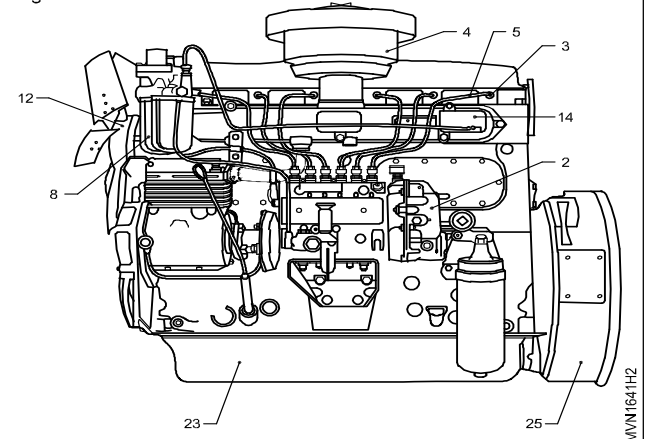


Fig 2



## Practice dismantling of diesel engine

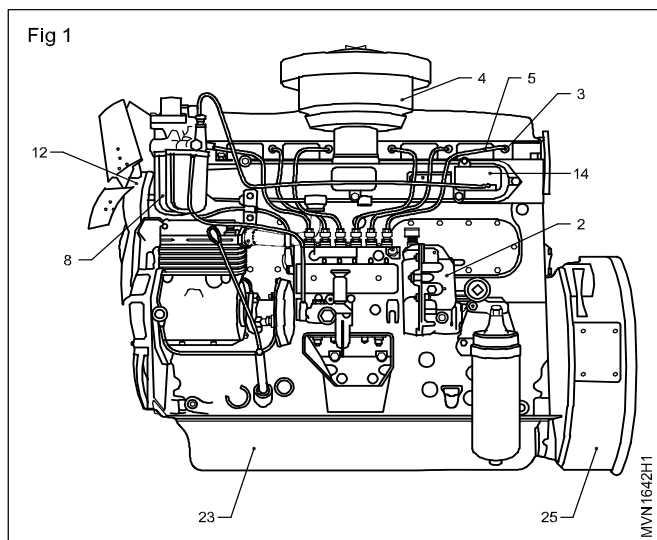
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **dismantle the diesel engine**

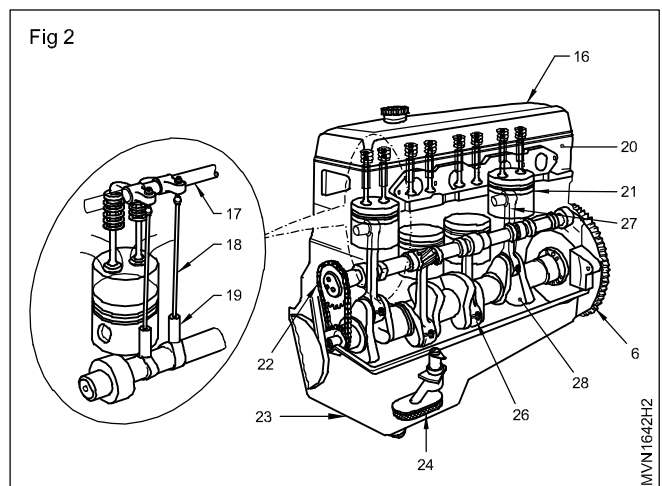
Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Torque Wrench	- 1 No.	• Soap Oil	- as reqd.
• Tray	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments</b>		• Engine Stand	- as reqd.
• Diesel engine vehicle	- 1 No.	• Wheel choke	- as reqd.
• Engine lifting crane	- 1 No.		

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Drain the oil (if provided)
- 2 Drain the water (if provided)
- 3 Remove the radiator (if provided)
- 4 Disconnect electrical connections
- 5 Disconnect the fuel pressure pipes (5) (Fig 1)

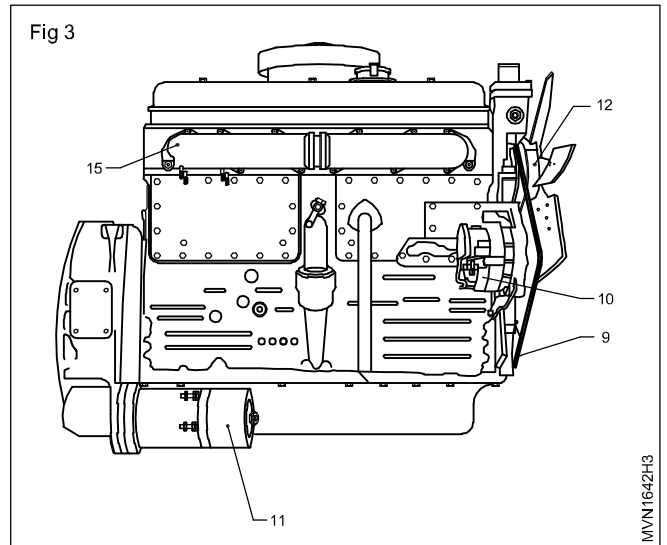


- 6 Remove the air cleaner (4) and keep it in a vertical position.
- 7 Disconnect the accelerator linkages.
- 8 Remove the FIP (2) and injectors (3)
- 9 Remove the fuel filter assembly (8)
- 10 Remove the flywheel (6)
- 11 Remove the fan belt (9)
- 12 Remove the dynamo/alternator (10)
- 13 Remove the self-starter (11). (Fig 3)



- 14 Remove the water pump assembly (12)
- 15 Remove the inlet (4) and exhaust (15) manifold
- 16 Remove the valve cover (16). (Fig 2)
- 17 Remove the rocker assembly (17) from the cylinder head.
- 18 Remove the push-rods (18).
- 19 Remove the tappet side covers.
- 20 Remove the tappets (19).
- 21 Remove the cylinder head mounting bolts and remove the cylinder head (20).
- 22 Remove the cylinder head gasket
- 23 Remove the crankshaft pulley using the special puller.
- 24 Remove the timing cover.
- 25 Remove the timing gear and chain (22). (Note down the timing marks)
- 26 Remove the crankshaft.

- 27 Remove the oil sump (23).
- 28 Disconnect the oil pipes from the oil pump
- 29 Remove the oil pump and strainer (24).
- 30 Remove the oil filter.
- 31 Remove the connecting rod caps. (Note down marks/ No's on the caps.)
- 32 Remove the piston (21) and connecting rod (27) from the engine. (Note down the marks/Nos. on the pistons.)
- 33 Remove the main bearing caps. (Note down the marks/ Nos. On the caps.)
- 34 Remove the flywheel housing (25).
- 35 Remove the crankshaft (28).



-----

## Perform overhauling of cylinder head

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the cylinder head from the engine
- decarbonise the cylinder head.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 Set.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Wire brush, Scraper - 1 No each.

#### Equipments/Machineries

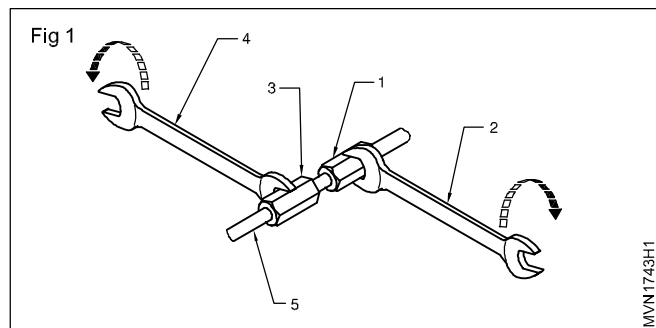
- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Jib crane/engine hoist - 1 No each.

#### Materials/Components

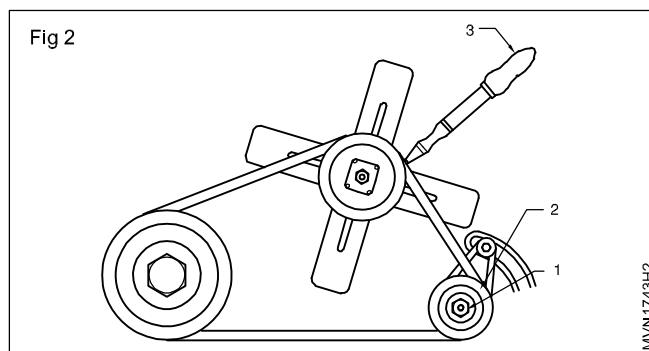
- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.
- Wooden block - as reqd.

### PROCEDURE

- 1 Remove the air cleaner and keep it in a vertical position on a plain surface to avoid spilling of oil.
- 2 Remove the valve cover.
- 3 Disconnect the fuel delivery lines. Hold the inner nut (1) with the help of a double end spanner (2), then loosen the outer nut (3) with the help of another double end spanner (4). Remove the pipe (5). (Fig 1)

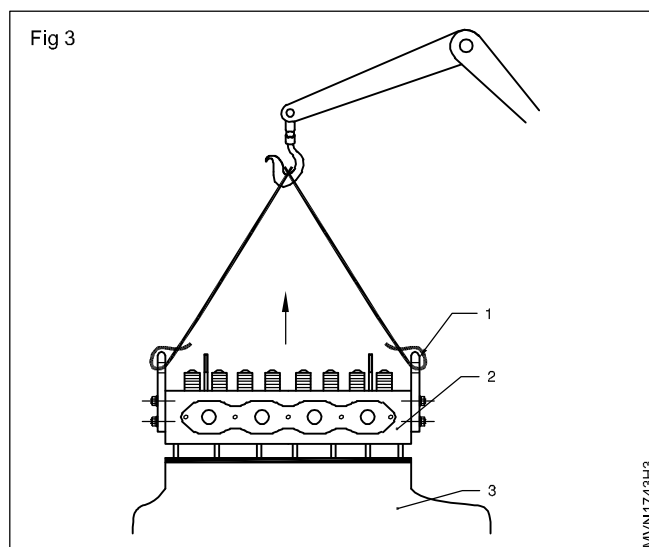


- 4 Remove the fuel pipes and the injectors.
- 5 Loosen the fuel injection pump mounting nuts, by loosening each screw, two turns at a time. Ensure that these nuts do not fall anywhere.
- 6 Remove the F.I.P. and keep it in a vertical position on a plain surface.
- 7 Loosen nut (1) and pull the alternator (2) downwards till the fan belt becomes loose. Use a screw-driver (3) between the fan and pulleys or between any of the pulleys and remove the fan belt. (Fig 2)
- 8 Remove the fan assembly with the water pump pulley.
- 9 Take out all the push-rods.
- 10 Remove the tappet side cover and remove the tappets.
- 11 Remove all the cylinder head nuts/bolts.



- 12 Fix the lifting hooks (1) at both ends of the cylinder head (2). (Fig 3)

- 13 Lift the cylinder head with the help of lifting hooks from the cylinder block (3).

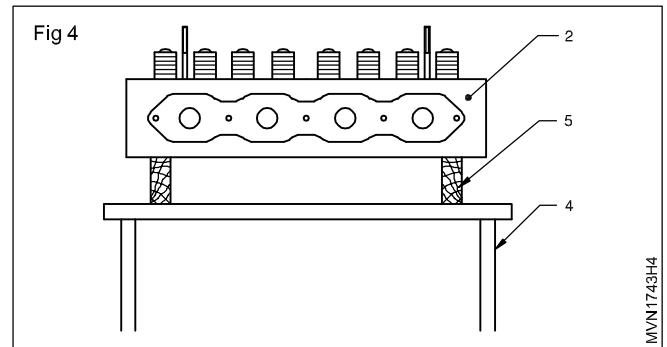


- 14 Ensure that the cylinder head does not tilted while removing, so as to avoid damage to the cylinder head studs.



- 15 Place the cylinder head (2) on a workbench (4) over two wooden block stands (5). (Fig 4)
- 16 Remove the cylinder head gasket and keep it in a safe place.
- 17 Remove the carbon deposit on the cylinder head.
- 18 Clean the cylinder head with cleaning solvent used.
- 19 Visually check the cylinder head for its damages and cracks

**Before remove the cylinder head check the clearance and other parameter as per the service manual.**



## Remove rocker arm assembly & manifolds

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

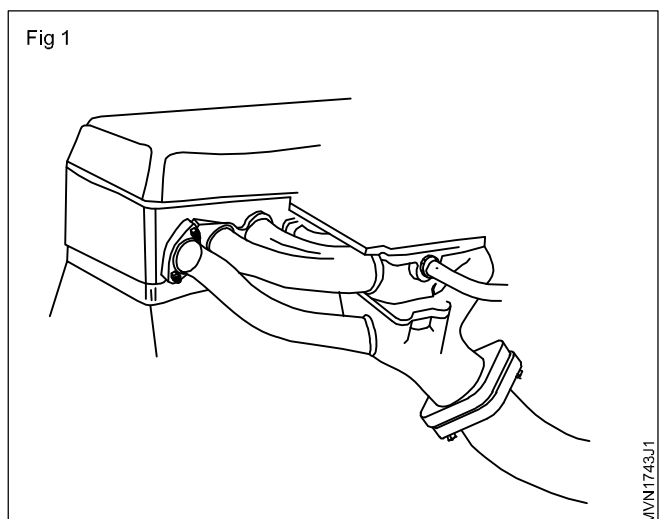
- remove the rocker arm assembly from the cylinder head
- remove the manifolds from the cylinder head.

### TASK 1 : Removing rocker arm assembly

- 1 Remove the head cover (value door)
- 2 Remove the mounting nuts of the rocker shaft supports.
- 3 Takeout the rocker shaft along with supports in the horizontal position.
- 4 Ensure that the shaft does not tilt to avoid bending and breakage of the shaft.
- 5 Place the rocker arm assembly on the work bench in tray
- 6 Clean the rocker arm assembly with specified cleaning solvent. (avoid to prevent damage the valves and rocker arms during removing and cleaning the rocker arm assembly)

### TASK 2 : Removing the inlet and exhaust manifold from the cylinder head (Fig.1)

- 1 Remove the exhaust manifold flange nuts and bolts.
- 2 Disconnect the exhaust pipe line from exhaust manifold.
- 3 Loosen the exhaust manifold mounting bolts.
- 4 Remove the turbo charger before loosen the exhaust manifold mountings.
- 5 Remove the manifold mountings and take out from the cylinder head and place it on the work bench.
- 6 Remove the air cleaner or air intake hose from the inlet manifold
- 7 Loosen mounting bolts of inlet manifold.
- 8 Remove the inlet manifold mounting bolts and take out from the cylinder head and place it on the work bench.
- 9 Ensure the manifold are safety placed on the work bench.



- 10 Visually inspect the manifolds for any damages on the manifold.
- 11 If any damages found make repair and clean it thoroughly.

## Remove valves from the cylinder head

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the valves and its parts from cylinder head and cleaning the parts

### Requirements

#### Tool/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Valve spring lifter - 1 No.
- Wire brush, scrapper - 1 No each.

#### Equipments/Machinaries

- Multi-cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- V block - Set.
- Spring tester - 1 No.
- Dial gauge with stand - 1 No.

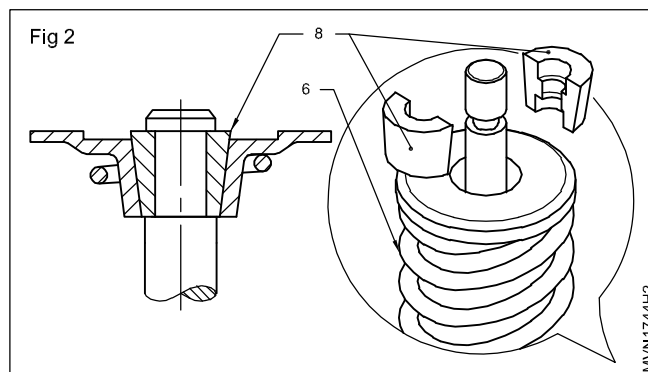
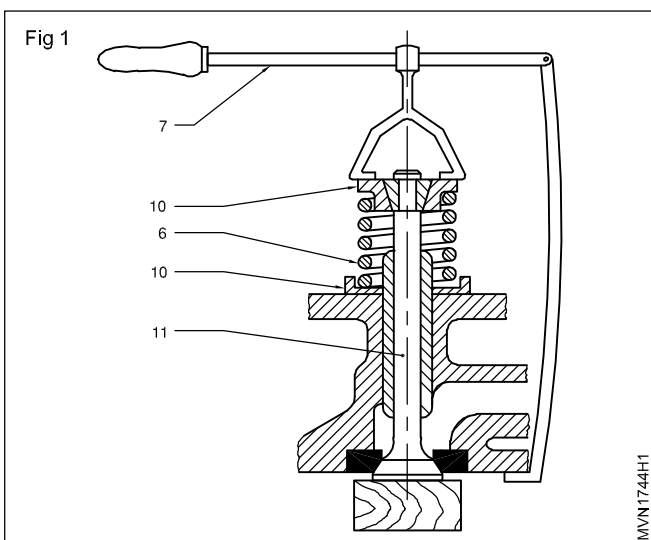
#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Remove valves

- 1 Place the cylinder head on a work bench over the two wooden block stands.
- 2 Mark the valves
- 3 Press the valve spring (6) with the help of the special tool (7) (Fig 1).
- 4 Take out the cotters (8) (Fig 2)/ locks/collars using the special tool (7).
- 5 Release the valve spring and take out the special tool (7).



- 6 Remove the spring, (6) and the valve (11) and retainer (10). (Fig 2)

- 7 Keep the valves in order.
- 8 Clean the valves, springs and spring retainers, cotters and head surfaces using kerosene.
- 9 Remove the carbon deposits, using a wire brush, from the valve seats and combustion chamber's surroundings.
- 10 Inspect the valve stem for bend, using a 'V' block and dial gauge.
- 11 Check the valve face visually, for pitting and damage.
- 12 Check the cotter collar for damage.
- 13 Check the valve spring for tension, on a spring tester.
- 14 Check the valve spring, for breakage/damage.

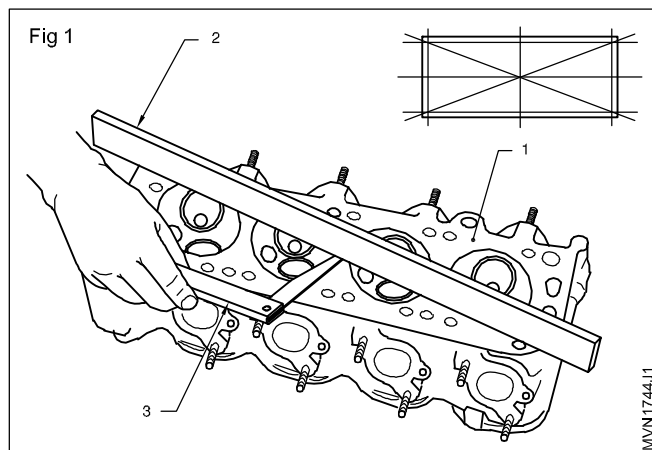
## Checking flatness of cylinder head and manifold surfaces

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the flatness of cylinder head surface by the straight edge and feeler gauge
- check the flatness of manifold by the straight edge and feeler gauge.

### TASK 1: Checking flatness of cylinder head surface by straight edge and feeler gauge

- 1 Clean the surface to be checked.
- 2 Place the cylinder head ( Fig 1) (1) on a plain surface, so that surface, to be checked, faces upward.
- 3 Keep the straight edge (2) (Fig 1) on surface and press the straight edge at the centre with your left hand.

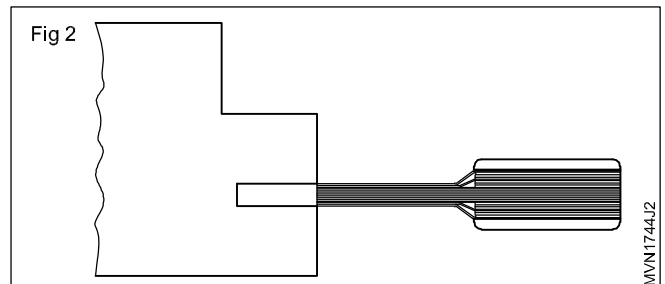


- 4 Insert the feeler gauges (3) leaves between the straight edge (2) and the surface.

**Note down the thickness of the thickest leaf/ leaves which can be inserted between the straight edge (2) and the surface. This thickness gives the maximum face out in that direction.**

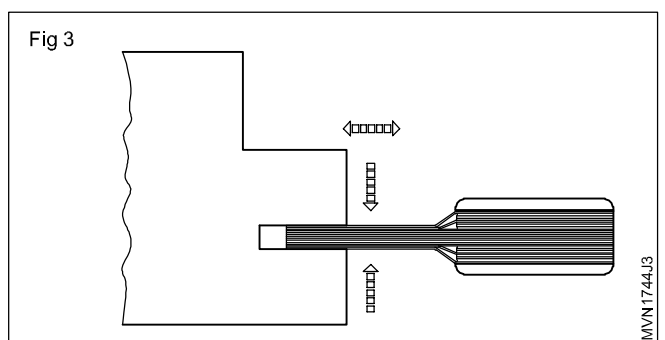
- 5 Repeat above steps in four directions and note down the maximum face out in all the four directions.
- 6 Recommend for resurfacing/replacement of cylinder head (1) if maximum face out in any one or more directions is more than the limit specified by the manufacturer.
- 7 Clean the feelers gauge thoroughly by using a cloth.

- 8 Clean the gap of the work to be measured.
- 9 Find out the dimension from the drawing and select the minimum number of leaves which make the dimensions, say 2.55 mm, and pack the feelers together to form the desired dimension. (Fig 2)



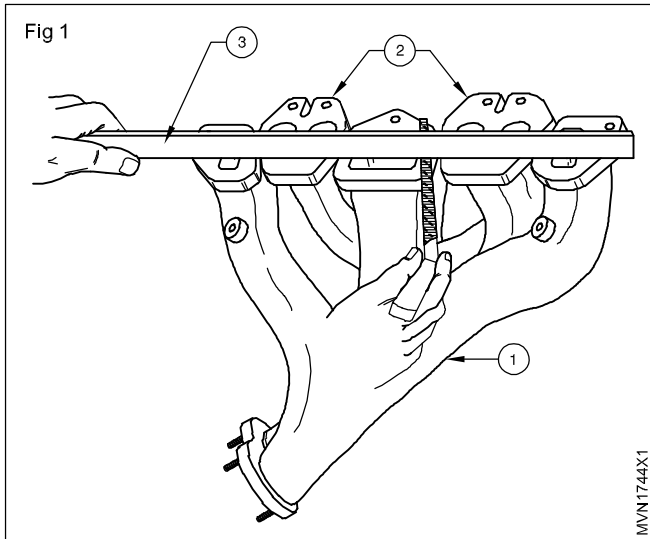
**Ensure that the ends of the feelers are straight, and not spread outwards.**

- 10 Pinch the feelers together and offer them to the gap.
- 11 After the gauge dimension is done, change the feelers used, until the feelers entering the gap offer a slight resistance to movement. (Fig 3)
- 12 Note down the measured dimension.



### TASK 2: Check manifolds flatness of manifold surface by straight edge and feeler gauge

- 1 Clean the mounting surface of the manifolds (1) free from carbon deposit (1) (Inlet of exhaust)
- 2 Place the manifold surface parts upward to be checked
- 3 Visually check the surface for damages/cracks
- 4 Keep the straight edge (3) on the surface part of the manifold (1) and insert the feeler gauge is leaves between straight edge and surface (Fig 1)
- 5 Repeat the above steps in four directions and note down the maximum face out in all the four directions



- 6 Recommend for resurface/replacement of the manifold if wear more than the limit specified by manufacturer or damaged

## Check valve seat and valve guide

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check valve seat and seat insert
- check valve guide
- check the valve seat leakage with special tool
- check the rocker shaft and levers for wear and cracks
- method of reassemble the rocker shaft and levers.

### Requirements

#### Tool/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Valve leakage test tool - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machinaries

- Work bench - 1 No.
- Wooden block - 2 Nos.
- Diesel engine - 1 No.

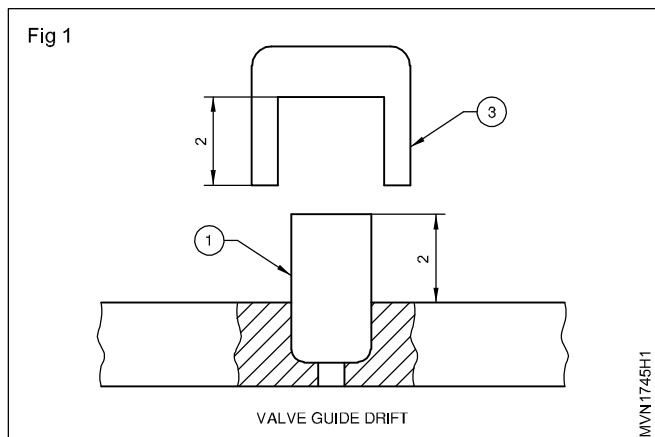
#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Soap Oil - as reqd.
- Valve grinding stick - as reqd.
- Valve lapping paste - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1 : Check valve seat insert and valve guide

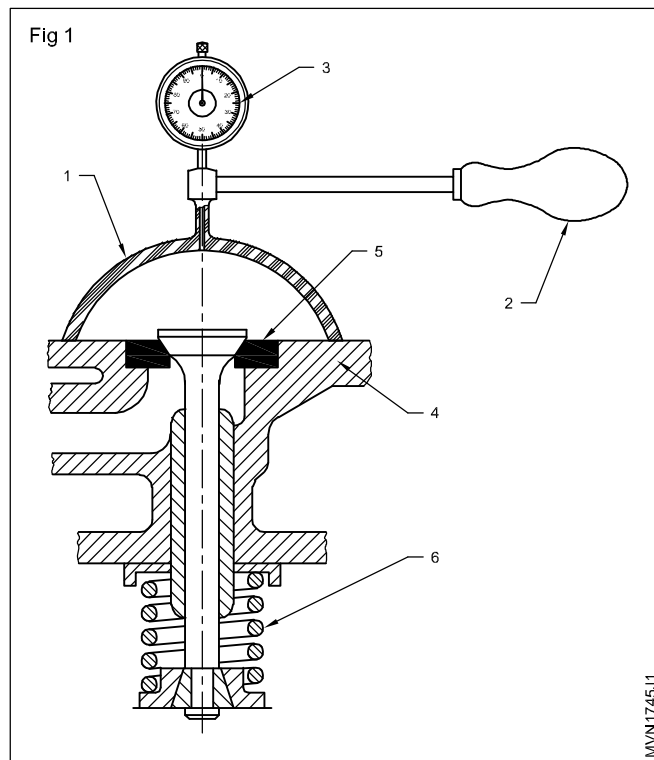
- 1 Take out the valve seat insert, using the special tool.
- 2 Drive the new valve seat insert carefully to its position, using a special punch.



- 3 Assemble the valve to the valve seat and check its height with reference to the cylinder head surface.
- 4 De-glaze the seat with an emery paper.
- 5 Apply lapping compound on the valve face seat.
- 6 Gently turn the valve on the seat with the help of the special tool using light force.

- 7 Repeat this until a clear seating of the valve and valve seat is obtained.
- 8 Remove the lapping compound using kerosene and visually check the surface of valve seat of valve face.
- 9 If found any damages in valve seat and valve guide, replace it.
- 10 Measure the valve stem diameter.
- 11 Measure the internal diameter of the valve guide.
- 12 If the clearance between the valve guide and valve stem is found more than the manufacturer's specified limit, change the valve guide as per the following procedure.
- 13 Drive out the old valve guide from the cylinder head using a suitable drift.
- 14 Place the new valve guide (1) on the cylinder head. (Fig.1)
- 15 Place the valve guide drift (3) on the valve guide and press the valve guide.
- 16 Measure the height (2) of the valve guide from the spring seating surface (use depth gauge).

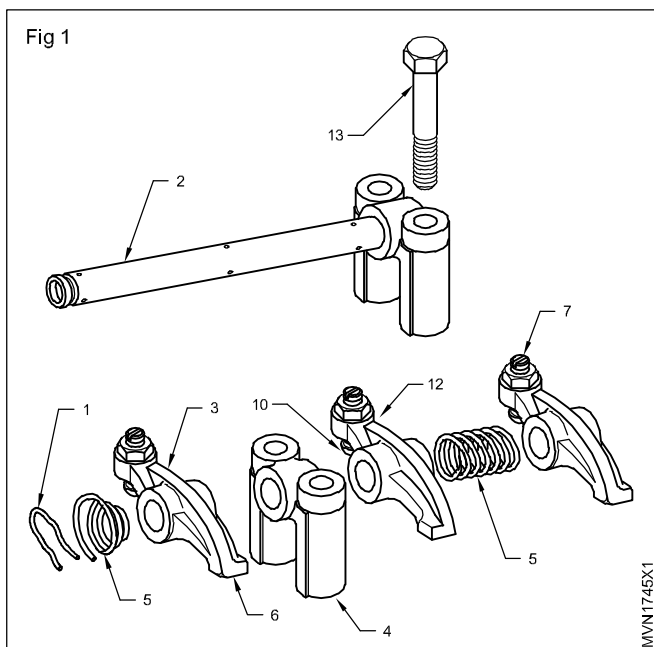
## TASK 2: Checking valve leakage (Fig 1)



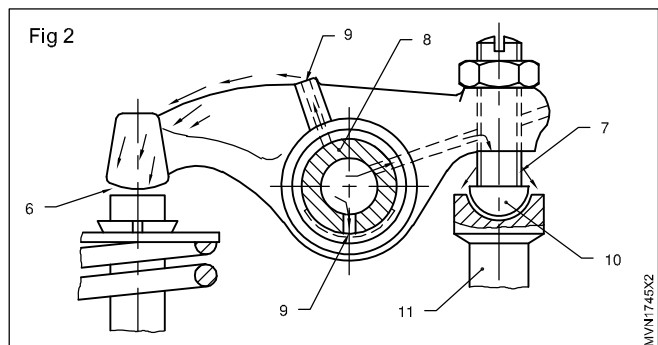
- 1 Check the valve leakage using the special tool (Fig 1)
- 2 Attach a suction cup (1) with a suction bulb (2) and vacuum gauge (3) on the cylinder head (4)
- 3 Covering the cylinder head valve seat (5) and create a vacuum with the help of the suction bulb (1) (rubber bulb)
- 4 Wait for 3 minutes and note any drop of vacuum on the gauge
- 5 If there is any drop in vacuum, the valve seat (5) is leaky and requires lapping.
- 6 After lapping the valve seat assemble the valve and check for leakage as above mention procedure.

## TASK 3: Dismantle rocker shaft check the wear, crack and reassemble (Fig 1 & 2)

- 1 Remove the lock-screw/circlips (1) at both ends of the rocker shaft.(2)
- 2 Remove the rocker levers (3) rocker lever bracket (4); springs (5) and spacers from the rocker shaft. (Fig 1)



- 3 Remove the rocker bracket which supplies oil to the rocker shaft from the cylinder head. The position of the bracket varies from one make to another make (Consult your instructor).



- 4 Clean the dismantled parts of rocker arm assembly.
- 5 Check the tension of the rocker spring(5). Replace it, if necessary.
- 6 Check visually the rocker lever for cracks, pitting on tips (6). Check the condition of the threads by screwing the adjusting screw (7) in threads.
- 7 Check the rocker shaft (2) visually for cracks and damage.
- 8 Check the rocker arm bushing (8) for wear and tear and alignment of lubricating holes.(9) (Fig 2)
- 9 Check the rocker arm ball pins (10) for wear and damage.
- 10 Clean the base of the rocker shaft supports, and the seats on the cylinder head.

## Check valve spring and rocker arm assembly

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the spring tension on a spring tester
- check tappets, pushrods, tappets screws and valve stem.

### Requirements

#### Tool/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Valve spring compressor - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machinaries

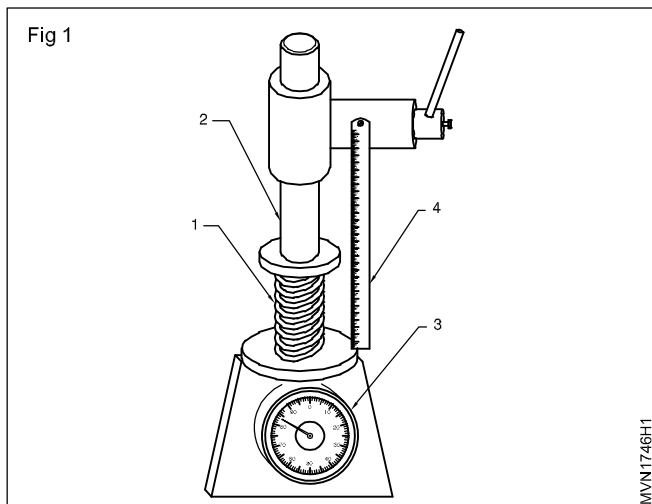
- Spring tester - 1 No.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Oil can - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Cotton cloth - 1 No.
- Engine oil - as reqd.
- Head gasket - as reqd.
- Valve springs - as reqd.
- Head stud nuts - as reqd.

### PROCEDURE

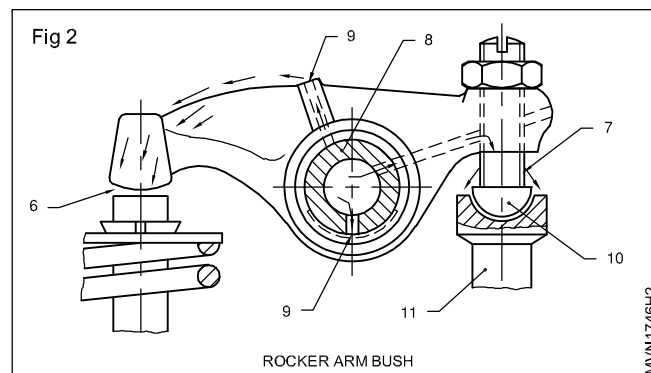
- 1 Clean the spring to be tested.
- 2 Clean the spring tester.
- 3 Place the spring (1) vertically on the spring tester. (Fig 1) Ensure that the moveable spindle (2) does not touch the spring (1).



- 4 Note down the height of the spring (1) on the graduated scale (4). This is the free length of the spring.
- 5 Press the spring (1) by moving the column (2) downward. The gauge (3) will show the load on the spring. Press column (2) till the testing load (specified by the manufacturer) is obtained.

**Note down the height of the spring (1) at the testing load.**

- 6 Replace the spring, if the free length of the spring and the height at the testing load (or either of these two) is less than the minimum limit specified by the manufacturer.
- 7 Check visually the rocker lever for cracks and pitting on the tip (Fig 2)
- 8 Impact the valve stem for bend, using a 'V' block and dial gauge
- 9 Check the collar and stem end for damage.
- 10 oil the valve stem.
- 11 Inspect the valve in the valve guide.
12. Check push rods and tappet screws.



## Refit the cylinder head assembly, manifolds and adjust valve tappet clearance

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- assemble the valves and refit cylinder head
- adjust the valve tappet clearance.

### Requirements

#### Tool/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Tappet spanner set - 1 Set.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machinaries

- Multicylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

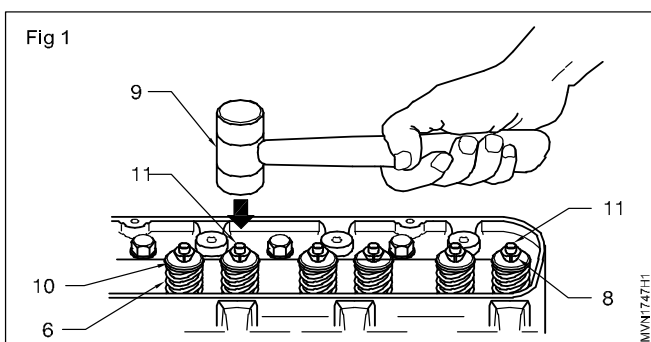
#### Materials/Components

- Cylinder head gasket - 1 No.
- Tappet cover gasket - 1 No.
- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Manifold gasket - one each.
- Kerosene - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Assembling

- 1 Oil the valve stem
- 2 Inspect the valve in the valve guide
- 3 Support the valve poppet, so that it is held firmly on its seat.
- 4 Fit the valve spring washer on the cylinder head
- 5 Insert the valve spring
- 6 Place the valve spring retainer over the spring
- 7 Compress the valve spring with the special tool
- 8 Insert cotters with the smaller dia. at the bottom and release pressure on the valve springs (6) gradually. Slightly tap the valve stem (11) with a mallet (9) to ensure that the cotters (8) have locked the valves and spring retainers (10). Take care that the two halves of the cotters are centrally located (Fig 1).

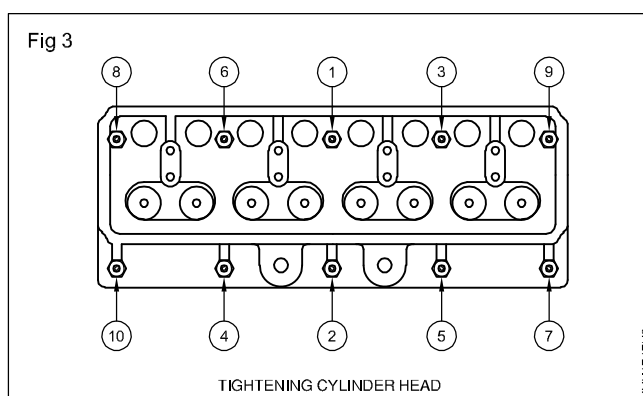
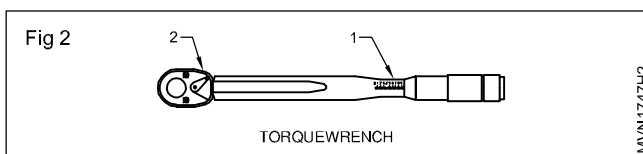


- 9 Check valve leakage (Ex. No. 45)

- 10 Clean the surface and place the head gasket

#### Check the ↑ mark on the Top

- 11 Place the cylinder head without damage the cylinder head studs
- 12 Tighten all the cylinder head bolts/nuts in correct sequence to the specified torque (use a torque wrench - refer to service manual and Fig 3).
- 13 A 4-cylinder engine cylinder head is shown with a torque wrench (Fig 1 & Fig 3).
- 14 Fit the Inlet and Exhaust manifold with gasket to cylinder head.





15 Fix the ball pins on the rocker arm

16 Insert the inlet (3) and exhaust rocker lever (12), spring (5) and the distance piece between the two rocker shaft supports (4) in the rocker arm shaft (2)

17 Loosen the ball pin's (10) nuts, to ensure that the push rods do not bend, while tightening the rocker shaft support brackets (4) nuts (13)/bolts on the cylinder head.

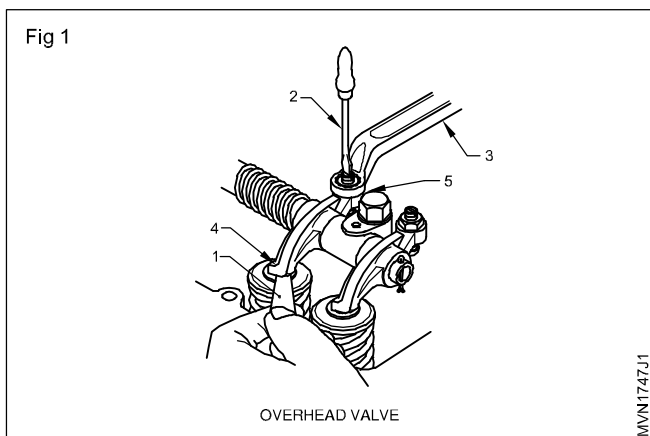
## TASK 2: Adjusting valve tappet clearance

1 Fit inlet manifold

2 Fit exhaust manifold

3 Turn the crankshaft in the clockwise direction and coincide the flywheels TDC 1/6 or 1/4 mark with the flywheel housing pointer. Ensure that the 1st cylinder is in compression stroke.

4 Hold firmly the tappet adjusting screw with a good screwdriver. (Fig 1)



5 Loosen the lock-nut with a ring spanner.

6 Insert a feeler gauge (1) of the specified thickness between the valve stem and the rocker tip (4).

7 Tighten the adjusting screw (5) by a screwdriver (2) and at the same time move the feeler gauge to and fro.

8 Stop tightening of the adjusting screw when the feeler gauge can be slid with a slight effort, but it should not be jammed.

9 Rotate the push-rod. It should also rotate with a slight load but it should not be jammed.

10 Hold the adjusting screw in position with the screwdriver firmly and tighten the lock-nut by a ring spanner.

11 Ensure that the adjusting screw does not turn while tightening the locking nut.

12 Check again the adjustment by sliding the feeler gauge leaf in the gap and turning the push rod.

13 Repeat the above steps to adjust the tappet clearance for other valves bringing the respective positions on TDC of compression stroke according to firing order.

14 Follow the sequence of adjusting the remaining valves by referring to the tabulation below:

**When the inlet valve in No.4 cylinder is fully open, No.1 cylinder inlet valve is fully closed - this feature is useful to remember when checking valve clearances.**

- Adjust No.1 valve when No.8 is lifted.

- Adjust No.2 valve when No.7 is lifted.

- Adjust No.3 valve when No.6 is lifted.

- Adjust No.4 valve when No.5 is lifted.

- Adjust No.5 valve when No.4 is lifted.

- Adjust No.6 valve when No.3 is lifted.

- Adjust No.7 valve when No.2 is lifted.

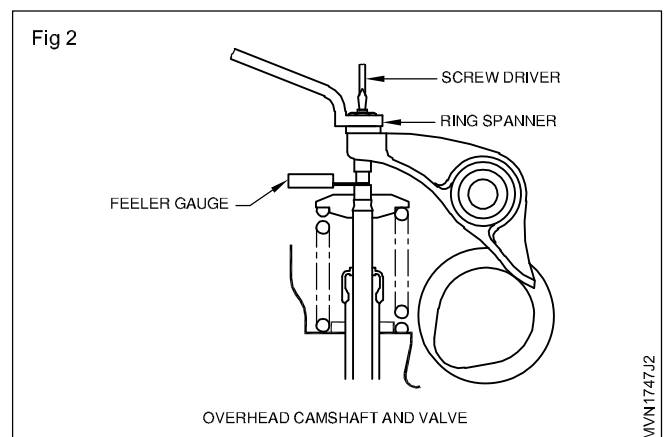
- Adjust No.8 valve when No.1 is lifted.

15 For adjusting valve tappet clearance of an overhead valve with an overhead camshaft engine, repeat the above steps correctly with the following precautions. (Fig 2)

**Precaution : Ensure that the rocker arm is off the camshaft cams. This is to be followed for each valve adjustment.**

16 Start the engine and leave it in idle speed

17 Check the tappet noise, if found noise adjust and rectify the noise.



**Overhaul the piston and connecting rod assembly.**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **remove the piston and connecting rod assembly**
- **use service manual for clearance and other parameters**
- **assemble the piston assembly.**

**Requirements**

**Tools / Instruments**

- |                          |         |
|--------------------------|---------|
| • Trainee's tool kit     | - 1 No. |
| • Socket spanner set     | - 1 Set |
| • Torque wrench          | - 1 Set |
| • Piston Ring expander   | - 1 Set |
| • Drift                  | - 1 Set |
| • Mallet                 | - 1 Set |
| • Ball pein hammer       | - 1 No. |
| • Ring groove cleaner    | - 1 No. |
| • Internal circlip plier | - 1 No. |
| • Feeler gauge           | - 1 No. |
| • Bench vice             | - 1 No. |

**Equipments**

- |                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| • Air compressor | - 1 No. |
| • Petrol engine  | - 1 No. |
| • Arbor press    | - 1 No. |

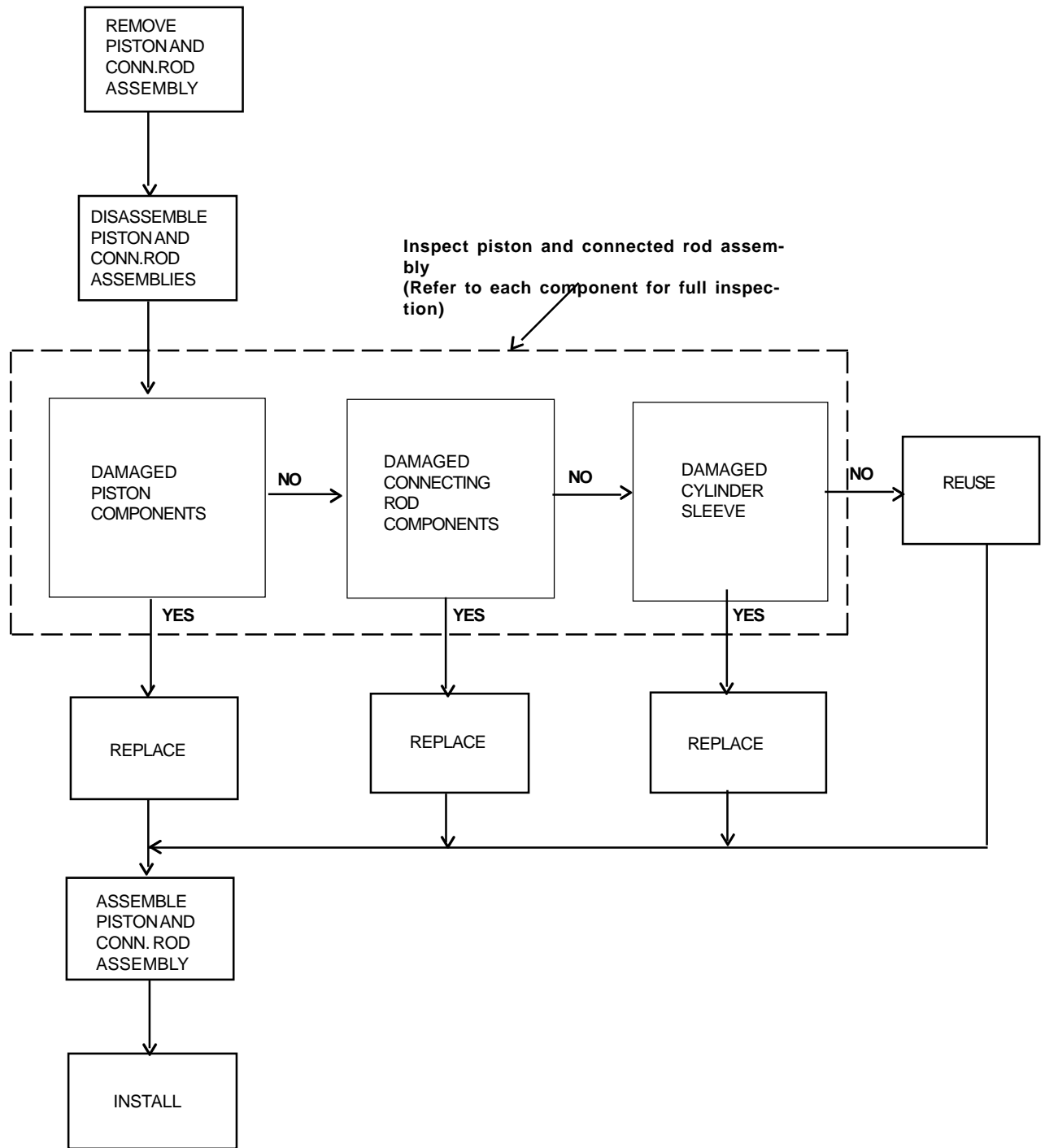
**Materials**

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| • Soap oil     | - as reqd. |
| • Kerosene     | - as reqd. |
| • Banian cloth | - as reqd. |
| • Lube oil     | - as reqd. |
| • Emery sheet  | - as reqd. |
| • Piston ring  | - as reqd. |

**PROCEDURE**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Drain the engine coolant.  | 17 For other parameters on reusing piston assembly components compare with service manual.                     |
| 2 Drain the engine oil and remove the oil pan.   | (Care in handling and cleanliness of piston dome bearings and piston pin)                                      |
| 3 Remove the cylinder head.  | 18 Fix the piston with connecting rod small end.   |
| 4 use emery cloth remove any carbon deposits from the upper surface of the cylinder liner. | 19 Position the piston ring gap on the piston at 90° intervals.  |
| 5 Remove the bearing cap from the connecting rod.  | 20 Push the piston and connecting rod assembly into the liner until the piston is free of the ring compressor. |
| 6 Push the piston and connecting rod assembly upward.                                      | 21 Push the piston assembly in firmly seated on the crank shaft journal.(Crankpin)                             |
| 7 Protect the crank shaft journal.   | 22 Install the bearing cap (as per number marked) on the same side.  |
| 8 Push the piston and connecting rod assembly out through the top of the cylinder block.   | 23 Tighten the connecting rod bolts (Recommended)  |
| 9 Place the piston assembly on the work bench.   | 24 Check the connecting rod side clearance on the crank pin and compare with the service manual.               |
| 10 Using the snap ring pliers, remove the circlip snap rings from the piston skirt.        | 25 Install the cylinder head with new gasket.  |
| 11 Slide out the piston pin and remove the connecting rod from the piston.                 | 26 Fit the rocker arm assembly and adjust tappets.   |
| 12 Remove the piston rings from the piston   | 27 Install oil pump with strainer.   |
| 13 Remove the carbon deposit from the piston head, skirt, oil holes and grooves.           | 28 Install oil pan.  |
| 14 Remove the dirt deposit from the piston pin boss.                                       | 29 Refill the recommended oil to the proper level.   |
| 15 Clean the oil hole of connecting rod and piston parts.                                  | 30 Close the drain cocks and fill the recommended coolant.   |
| 16 Discard the used piston pin, bolts/circlips and replace with new one.                   |  |

Draw chart



CONN. ROD = Connecting ROD

**Remove piston and connecting rod assembly from the engine block**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

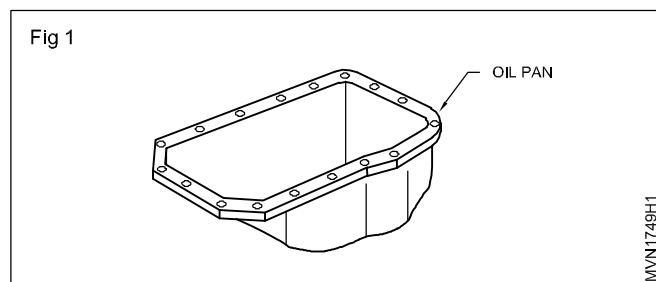
- remove the oil sump from the engine
- remove the oil pump from the engine
- remove the connecting rod from the piston.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainees tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
• Box spanner set	- 1 Set.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Feeler gauge	- 1 No	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Mallet hammer	- 1 No	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments/Machineries</b>		• Lube oil	- as reqd.
• Multi cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No		

**PROCEDURE**

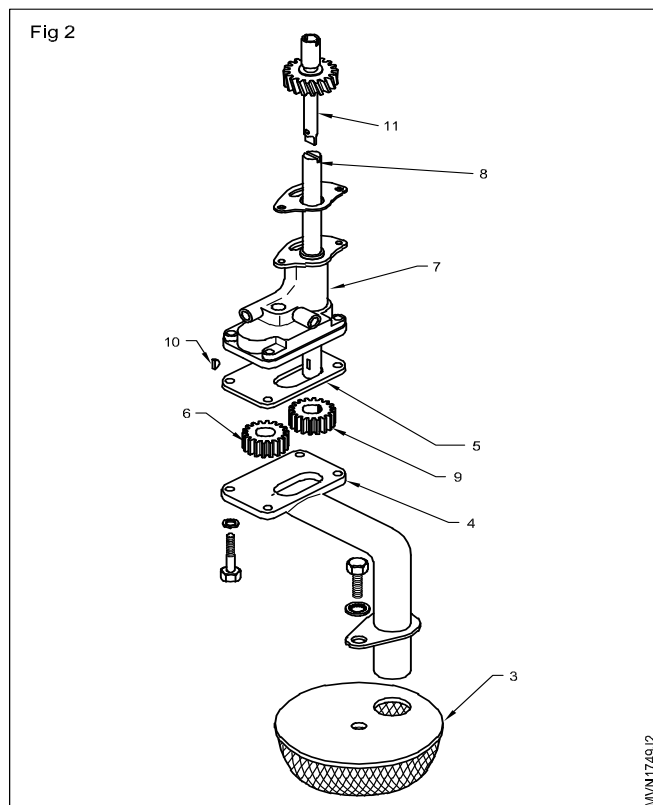
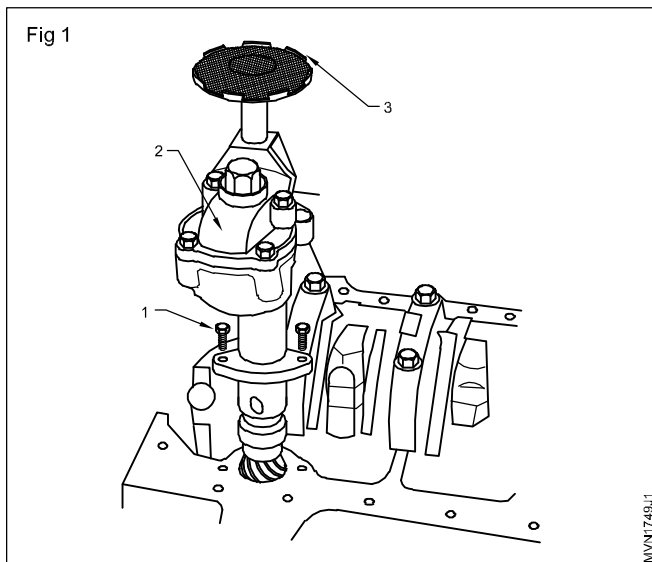
**TASK 1 : Removing oil sump. (Fig 1)**

- 1 Loosen the engine oil sump drain plug
- 2 Place the tray under the sump
- 3 Remove the drain plug and ensure the complete oil is drained from the oil sump
- 4 Crank the engine to drain remain oil from the engine
- 5 Fix the oil sump drain plug
- 6 Loosen the oil sump mounting bolt
- 7 Remove the all mounting bolts of oil sump
- 8 Remove the oil sump and place it on the work bench.
- 9 Remove the gasket from the sump
- 10 Clean the surface of the gasket fitting
- 11 Clean the sump with kerosene
- 12 Clean the dust particles deposited in drain plug
- 13 Inspect the oil sump for any damages and cracks , if found any crack, repair it.



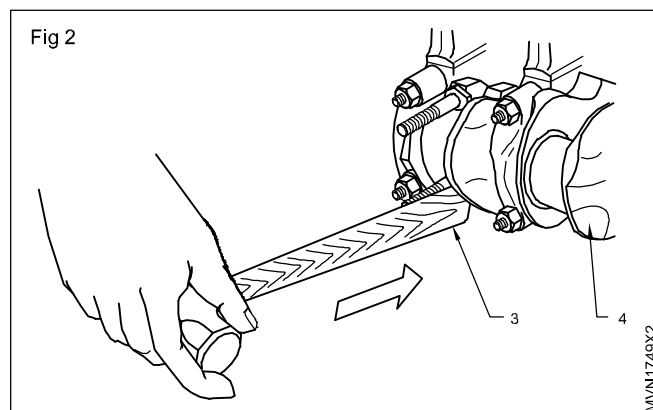
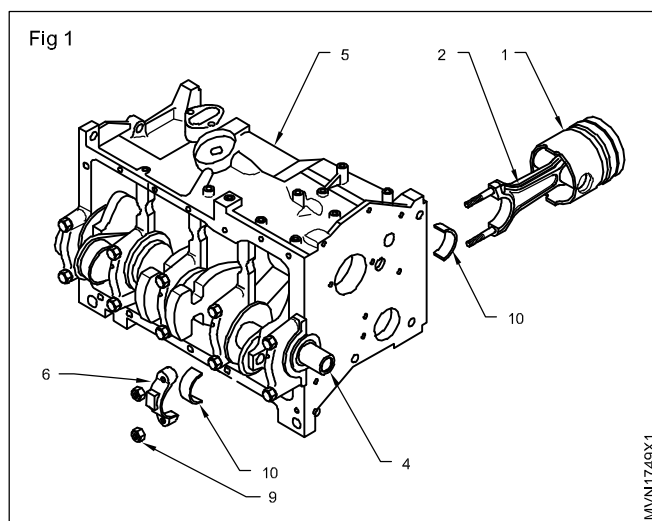
**TASK 2 : Removing oil pump from the engine. (Fig 1 & 2)**

- 1 Locate the oil pump mountings
- 2 Select the suitable tools to remove the oil pump mountings
- 3 Loosen the oil pump mountings (Fig 1)
- 4 Remove the oil pump along with strainer.
- 5 Place the oil pump on tray for cleaning and inspection.
- 6 Dismantle the oil pump parts and clean it (Fig 2)
- 7 Inspect the dismantled parts, if any damages, replace the defective parts.
- 8 Assemble the all parts in sequence
- 9 Check the pressure test of the oil pump with your instructor's guide line



### TASK 3 : Remove piston with connecting rod assembly

1 Remove the oil sump.



remove the cap (6) along with the bearing shell (10) from the connecting rod.

- 2 Disconnect the oil pipe from the oil pump and remove the oil strainer.
- 3 Remove the oil pump.
- 4 Tilt the engine block.
- 5 Clean and check for ridge formation of all cylinders.
- 6 Turn the crankshaft (4) till the piston (1) comes at B.D.C.
- 7 Remove the bolts/nuts (9) of the connecting rod (2).
- 8 Tap the connecting rod's (2) cap with a mallet and

- 9 Turn the crankshaft (4) till the piston (1) comes at T.D.C. Tap the connecting rod (2) with a wooden block (3).
- 10 Note down the connecting rod cap matching number stamped on it to avoid mismatching while reassembling.
- 11 Place the upper and lower bearing shell in their respective positions in the connecting rod and cap (6). Fit the cap on the connecting rod. (Fig 1)
- 12 Repeat the relevant steps to remove all the pistons (Fig 2).
- 13 Clean the connecting rod and pistons

**Check piston ring side clearance in groove by feeler gauge and measure the piston diameter by micrometer**

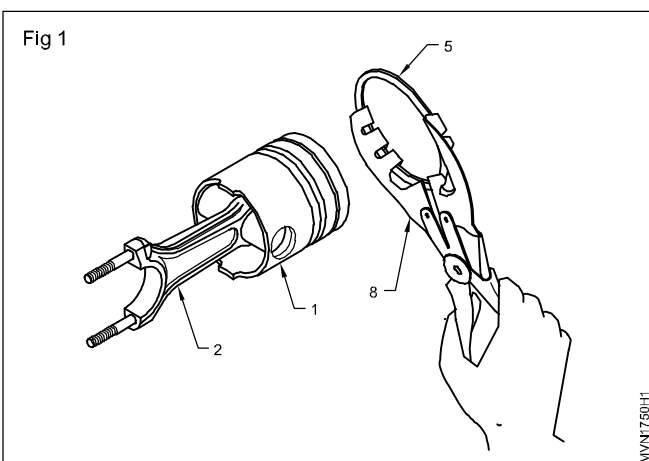
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the piston rings and piston pin from the piston
- remove the piston from the connecting rod
- check the piston ring clearance
- check the wear of piston skirt and crown.

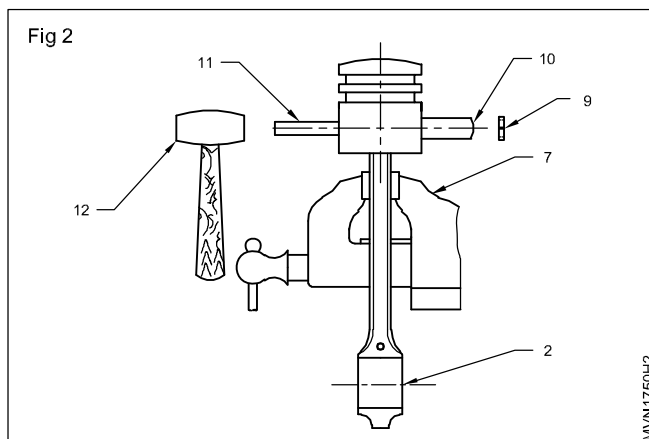
Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cotton waste	- as reqd.
• Feeler gauge	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Outside micrometer	- 1 No.	• Piston rings	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

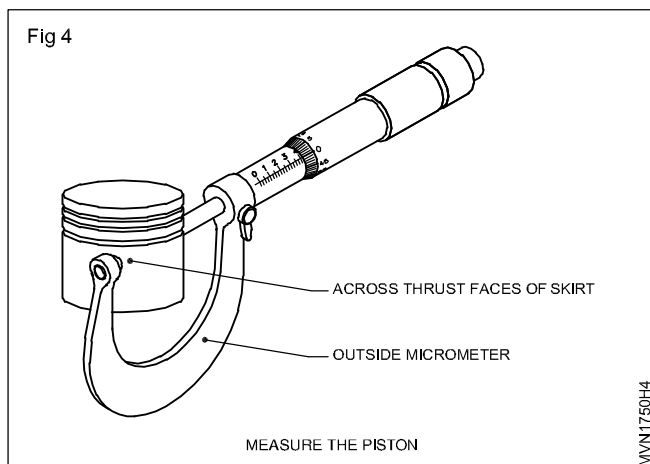
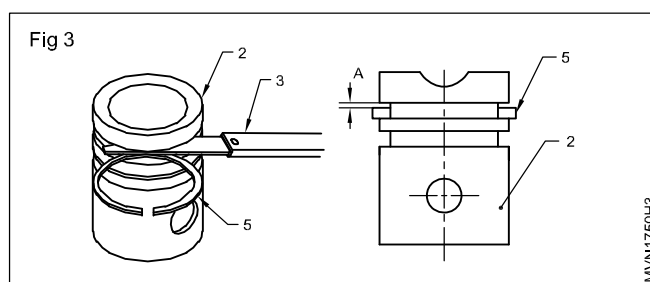
- 1 Remove the piston ring (5) with help of piston ring (8) expander as shown in (Fig1).



- 2 Remove the circlip (9) of the piston pin (10), using a circlip plier.
- 3 Remove the piston pin (10) with the help of a drift (11) and hammer (12). Repeat the steps to all the pistons. (Fig2)
- 4 Remove connecting rod from piston.
- 5 Clean the piston, piston pin, piston rings grooves, oil ring holes.



- 6 Remove the carbon deposits from the piston ring grooves.
- 7 Clean the piston rings and the connecting rod by using kerosene.
- 8 Check the piston skirt and crown for scuffing, crack, scoring etc.
- 9 Check the piston pin circlip grooves in the piston for damage.
- 10 Check piston ring side clearance (A) (Fig 3) in the piston's (2) groove with a feeler gauge (3).
- 11 Check the wear of piston (Fig 4) diameter at different point
- 12 Check the wear of piston ring grooves and land.
- 13 Measure the piston diameter at different points.(Fig 4)



**Measure the piston ring end gap clearance between piston and liner, clearance between crankpin & C.R big and bearing**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the piston ring close gap
- check the clearance between the piston and cylinder wall
- check the clearance between crank pin and big end bearing.

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No
- Torque wrench - 1 No.

**Equipments/Machineries**

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Work bench - 1 No.

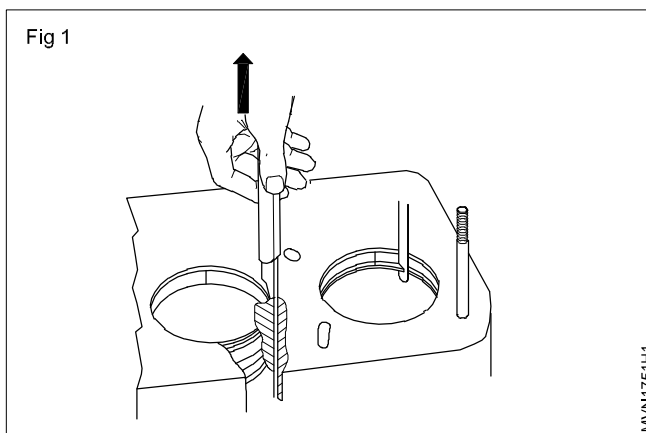
**Materials/Components**

- Cotton cloth - 1 No.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Piston ring - as reqd.
- Big end bearing - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Measure the piston ring close gap (Fig 1)**

- 1 Clean the cylinder bore with banyan cloth
- 2 Clean the selected piston ring for measure
- 3 Insert the piston ring inside of the cylinder bore
- 4 Ensure the piston ring placed in specified level in side of cylinder bore (push the ring in the cylinder by piston head without rings)
- 5 Measure the piston ring, close gap by feeler gauge
- 6 Note the feeler gauge leaf reading and compare with service manual specification.



**TASK 2: Measure the clearance between the liner and piston.**

- 1 Clean the oil and dust of the piston with kerosene
- 2 Clean the piston with compressed air and banyan cloth.
- 3 Clean the cylinder bore with banyan cloth
- 4 Insert the piston (without ring) inside of the cylinder bore/liner
- 5 Measure the clearance between the liner and the piston below the gudgeon pin by the feeler gauge
- 6 Note the reading of feeler gauge leaves and compare with service manual specification.

### TASK : 3 **Measure the clearance between the crankpin and connecting rod big end bearing**

- 1 Clean the big end bearing and crank pin
- 2 Install the shell bearing in connecting rod and lower cap of big end
- 3 Place the piece of gauging plastic to full width of crank pin as contacted by bearing. (avoid oil hole).
- 4 Install the connecting rod bottom cap and tighten the nuts gradually as follows
  - a. Tighten all cap nuts in hand tight.
  - b. Retighten them as per specified torque.
  - c. Repeat the relevant steps to all the connecting rod end caps
  - d. Once again check the tighten torque
- 5 Remove the big end cap and using scale and gauging plastic width at the widest point (Clearance). If clearance exceed its limit use a new standard size bearing and re-measure the clearance between the crank pin and connecting rod big end bearing.
- 6 If the clearance cannot be brought to within its limit even by using a new standard size bearing regrind the crankpin to under size and use 0.25 mm undersize bearing
- 7 Same method followed to other crank pin and connecting rod bearings.

**[Never place plastic gauge above oil holes]**

— — — — —



## Check the connecting rod for bend and twist.

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the connecting rod bend and twist
- assemble the piston and connecting rod.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Torque wrench, Ring expander - 1 No each.
- Mallet, Drift punch - 1 No each.
- Feeler gauge, Circlip plier internal - 1 No each.
- Connecting rod aligner - 1 No each.

#### Equipments/Machineries

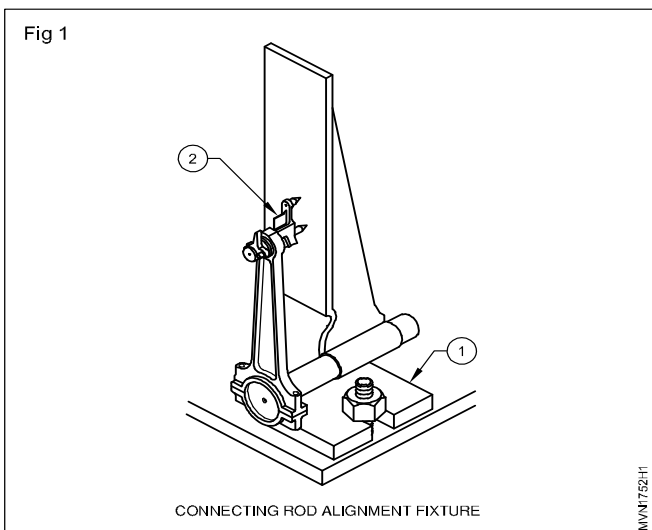
- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene, Soap oil, Lube oil - as reqd.

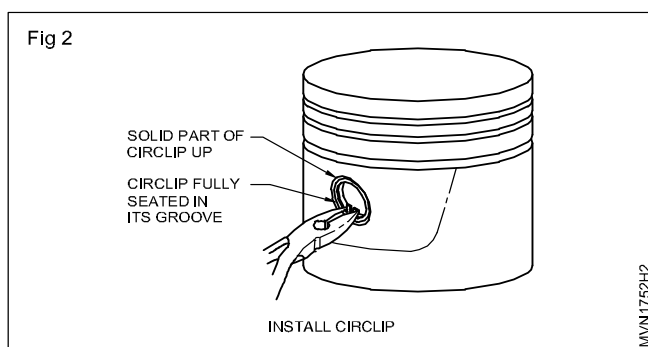
### PROCEDURE

- 1 Place the connecting rod assembly on the work bench and remove the piston from the connecting rod
- 2 Clean the dismantled piston and connecting rod.
- 3 Check the connecting rod's small end bush bearing for wear and scoring.
- 4 Check the connecting rod's alignment for bend and twist.
- 5 Check the gudgeon pin surface for any injury.
- 6 Place the connecting rod on the alignment fixture (1) (Fig 1).

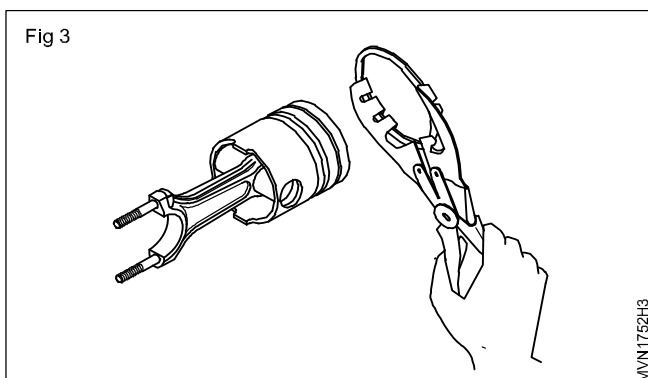


- 7 Insert the gudgeon pin in the small end bore.
- 8 With a square edge (2) check the square seating of the gudgeon pin. If the connecting rod is bent or twisted, the gudgeon pin will not sit squarely in the bore. Replace the connecting rod if found bent or twisted.
- 9 Fit one circlip in the groove of the piston (Fig 2).
- 10 Align the connecting rod's small end bore and the gudgeon pin bore of the piston.

- 11 Tap the gudgeon pin into the piston pin hole with the help of a mallet. While tapping, keep the small end hole aligned to avoid damage to the connecting rod bush. Fit another circlip on the groove. Repeat the above steps for all the pistons and connecting rods.
- 12 Hold the piston ring in the ring expander and fit it in the piston groove. Ensure that the word 'Top' stamped on the ring faces upward. Fit all the rings to the pistons (Fig 3).



- 13 Place the upper and lower bearing shells in all the connecting rods and caps and keep them in proper order for reassembling purpose.



## Overhaul the crankshaft

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- use of service manual
- check the clearance of crank shaft.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- |                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| • Trainee's tools kit   | - 1 No. |
| • Engine manual book    | - 1 No. |
| • soft hammer - plastic | - 1 No. |
| • Pry bar               | - 1 No. |
| • Feeler gauge          | - 1 No. |
| • Plastic gauge         | - 1 No. |
| • Torque wrench         | - 1 No. |
| • Dial gauge            | - 1 No. |
| • Inside micro meter    | - 1 No. |

#### Equipments/Machineries

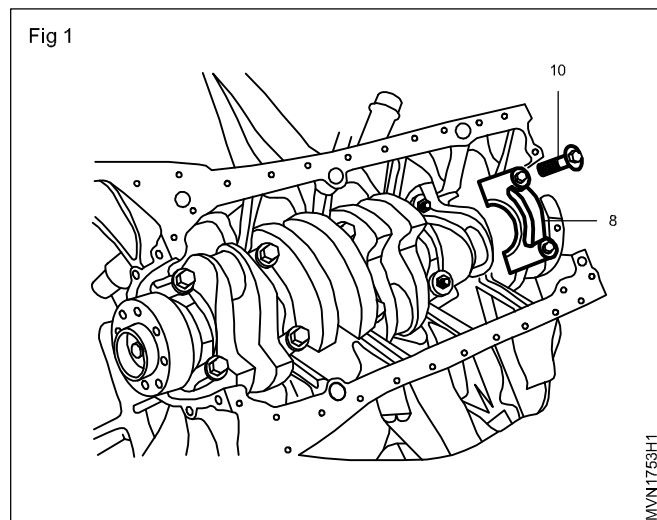
- |                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| • Work bench            | - 1 No. |
| • Multi cylinder engine | - 1 No. |

#### Materials/Components

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| • Tray          | - 1 No.    |
| • Banian cloth  | - as reqd. |
| • Soap oil      | - as reqd. |
| • Lube oil      | - as reqd. |
| • Shell bearing | - as reqd. |

## PROCEDURE

1. Remove the bearing cap bolt (10) (Fig 1).



2. Remove the bearing caps (8).

**Notice: The crankshaft bearing caps are marked with stamped numbers. Remove the bearing cap from the vibration damper side.**

3. Remove the crankshaft bearing caps (9) and lower thrust bearings (7).
4. Remove the lower bearing shell (6) from the bearing cap (9) (Fig 2).
5. Remove the crankshaft (5) (Fig 3).
6. Remove the upper thrust bearings (4).(Fig 4)
7. Remove the upper bearings shells (3) from crankcase.

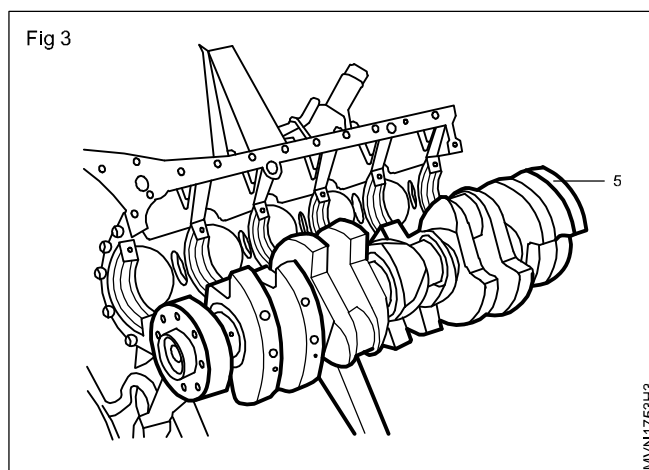
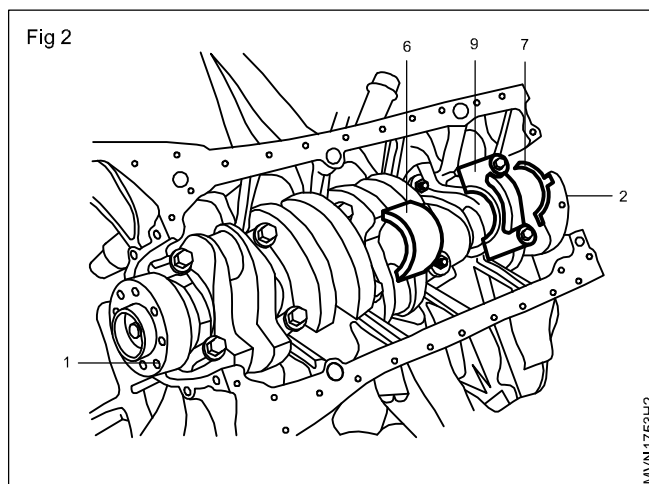
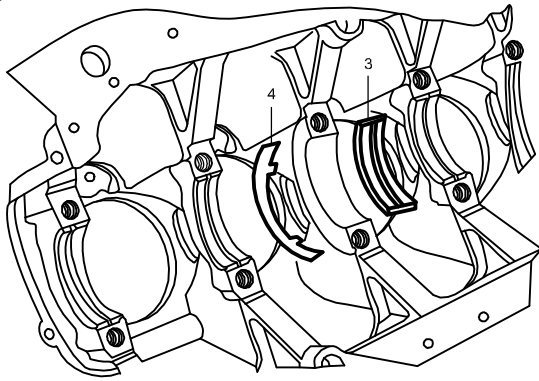


Fig 4



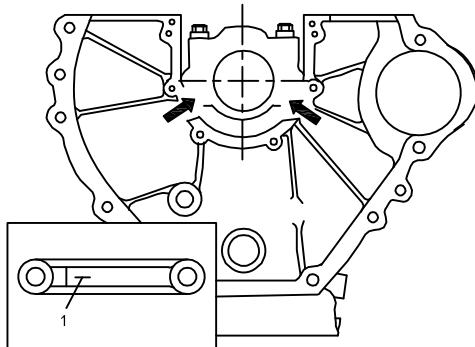
MVN1753H4

8. Thoroughly clean the oil gallery.
9. Select a proper new bearing shells with references to table.
- 10 Coat the new bearing shells with oil and insert into the crankcase and into the crankshaft bearing caps.

**Notice: Do not mix up upper and lower crankshaft bearing shells**

11. Install the bearing caps according to marking and tighten the 12-sided stretch bolts (Fig 5).

Fig 5



MVN1753H5

#### Installation Notice

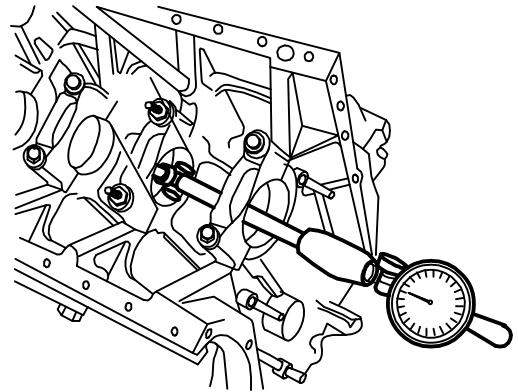
Tightening Torque	55 N•m (41 lb-ft) + 90°
-------------------	-------------------------

No. 1 is vibration damper side. (Fig 2)

- 12 Measure crankshaft bearing diameters (E) using the dial gauge 00 and extension (Fig 6).
- 13 Measure at 3 points (A, B and C) and if the average value of B and C is less than A's value, the average value of B and C is the mean value and if more than A's value, A's value is the mean value (Fig 7).
- 14 Measure crankshaft bearing journal diameter (F) (Fig 8).

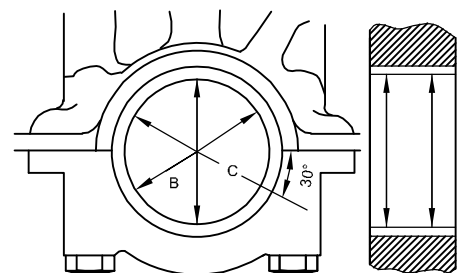
**Notice: When measured in A and B, the runout should not exceed 0.010mm (Fig 9).**

Fig 6



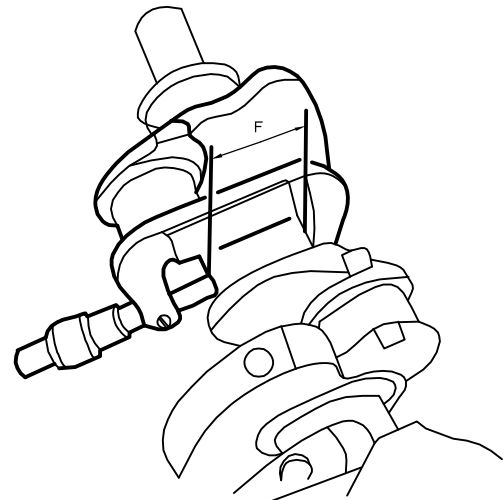
MVN1753H6

Fig 7



MVN1753H7

Fig 8



MVN1753H8

- 15 Measure radial clearance of crankshaft bearing (G).

Clearance 'G'	0.027-0.051 mm
---------------	----------------

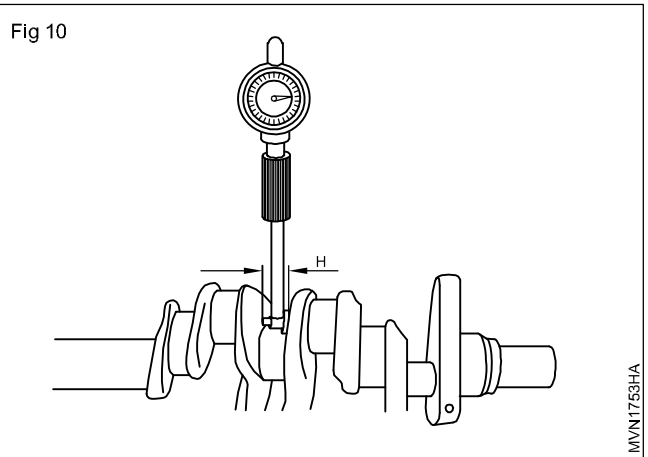
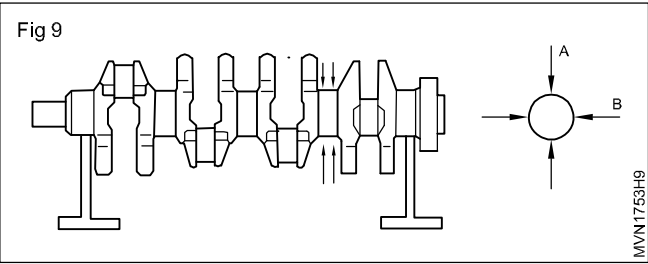
**Note: Compare final radial clearance figure of crank shaft bearing to the service manual**

(Example ) Measured value 'E' = 57.700 mm

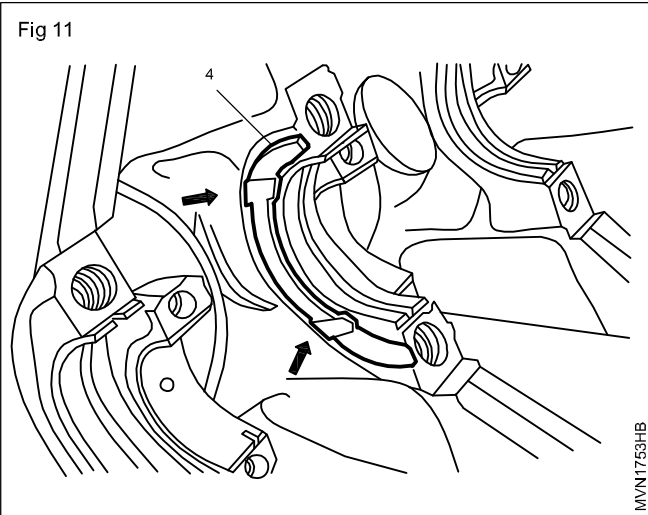
Measured value 'F' = 57.659 mm

Clearance 'G' = 0.041 mm

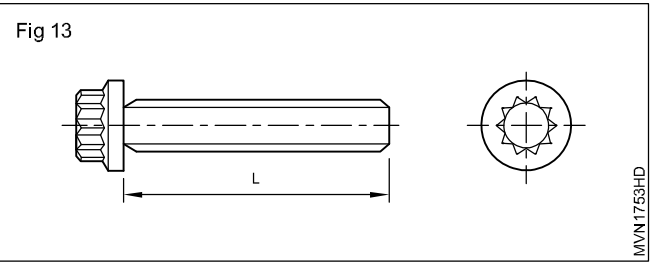
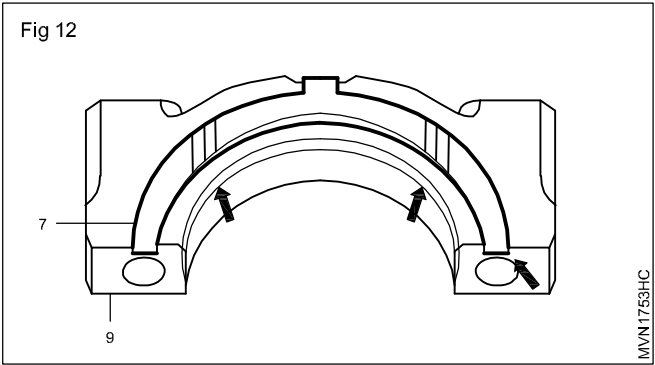
- 16 Remove the crankshaft bearing cap.
- 17 Measure width of trust bearing journal (H) and adjust with proper thrust bearings (Fig 10).



- Notice:** The same thickness of thrust washers should be installed on both sides of the thrust bearing.
- 18 Coat the upper thrust bearing (4) with oil and insert into the crankcase so that the oil grooves are facing the crank webs (arrow) (Fig 11).



- 19 Coat the lower thrust bearing (7) with oil and insert into the crankshaft bearing cap so that the on grooves are facing the crank webs (arrow) (Fig 12).
- Notice:** The retaining lugs should be positioned in the grooves (arrow).
- Notice:** If the max. length of bolts (L) exceed 63.8mm, replace them (Fig 13).
- 20 Coat the new crankshaft with engine oil and place it on the crankcase.

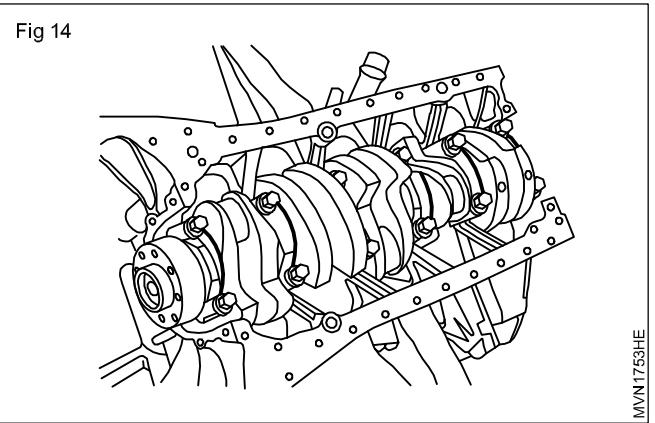


- 21 Install the crankshaft bearing caps according to marking and tighten the bolts.

**Installation Notice**

Tightening Torque	55 N•m (41 lb-ft) + 90°
-------------------	-------------------------

- Install from No. 1 cap.
- 22 Rotate the crankshaft with hand and check whether it rotates smoothly. Use soft hammer and pry bar/screw to move the crankshaft rear and forward.(Fig 14)

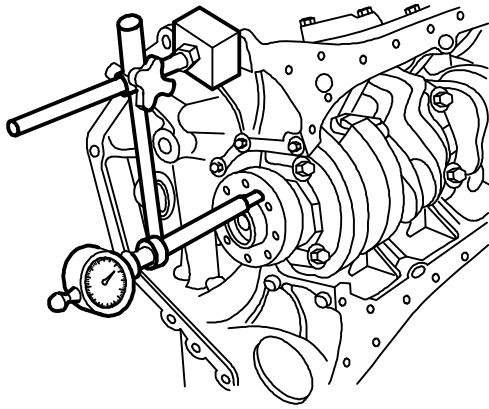


- 23 Measure crankshaft bearing axial clearance or thrust clearance dial gauge and dial gauge holder (Fig 15).

Clearance	0.100 - 0.245 mm
-----------	------------------

- Notice:** Compare your thrust clearance figure to the service manual
- Notice:** The same thickness of thrust washers should be installed on both sides of the thrust bearing.
- Notice:** If the clearance is out of standard, adjust the axial clearance of crankshaft bearing by replacing the thrust washers.

Fig 15



MVN1753HF

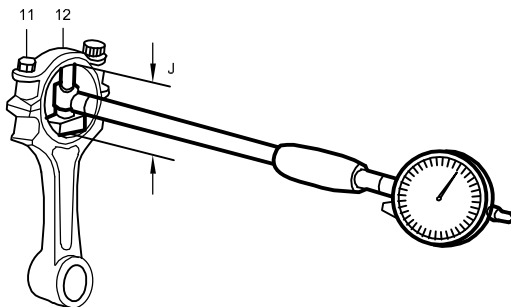
- 24 Insert the new connecting rod bearing shells into the connecting rod and connecting rod bearing shells into the connecting rod and tighten the 12-sided stretch bolts (11).

#### Installation Notice

Tightening Torque	55 N·m (26 lb-ft) + 90°
-------------------	-------------------------

- 25 Measure inner diameter of connecting rod bearing. (Fig 16)

Fig 16



MVN1753HG

- 26 Measure connecting rod bearing journal diameter (k).

**Note:** Refer to measurement of the crankshaft bearing journal diameter in service manual.

- 27 Measure the radial clearance (L) of the connecting rod bearing.

(Example ) Measured value 'E' = 47.700 mm

Measured value 'F' = 47.653 mm

Clearance 'G' = 0.047 mm

Radial Clearance 'L' 0.026 - 0.068 mm

**Note :** Compare your radial clearance of the connecting rod bearing to the service manual

**Notice:** if the clearance is out of standard, adjust the radial clearances of connecting rod bearing by replacing the connecting rod bearing shells.

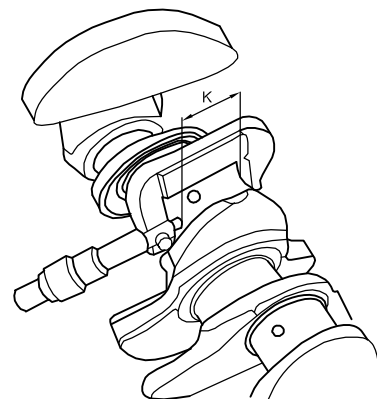
- 28 Remove the connecting rod bearing cap.

- 29 Install the piston.

- 30 Rotate the crankshaft by hand and check whether it rotates smoothly.

**Note:** Find how access to a dial gauge or micrometer set are plastic gauge in various different crush dimensions.(Fig 17)

Fig 17



MVN1753HH

**Remove the crankshaft and check oil retainer and thrust surfaces**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the damper pulley and timing gear
- remove the flywheel from the engine
- remove the crankshaft assembly from the engine.
- inspect the oil retainer of crankshaft

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Mallet, Drift punch - 1 No.

**Equipments/Machineries**

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

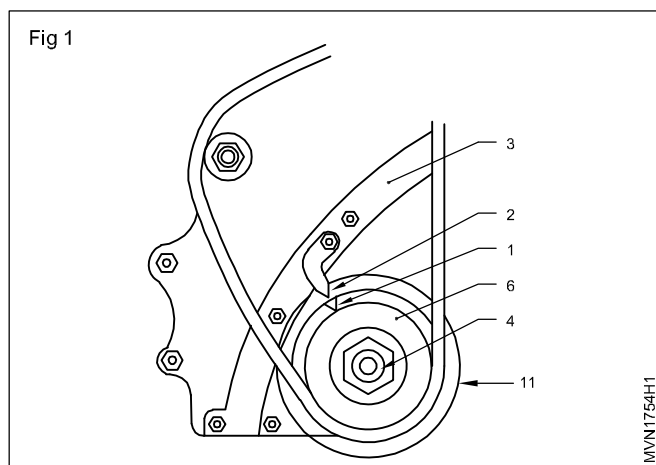
**Materials/Components**

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.

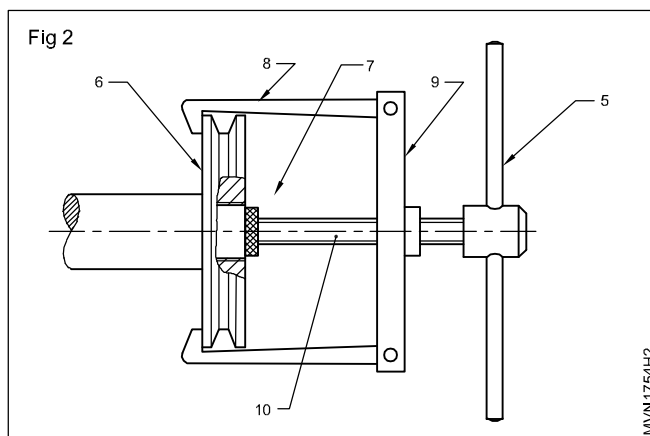
**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1 : Removal of damper pulley and timing gear**

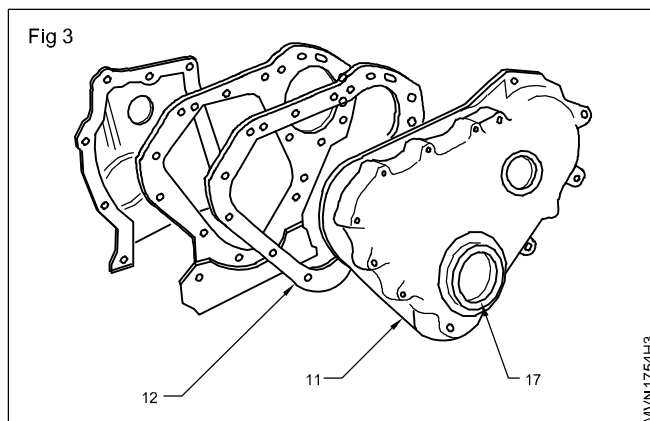
- 1 Rotate the engine and coincide the timing marks (1) with the timing pointer (2). (Fig 1)



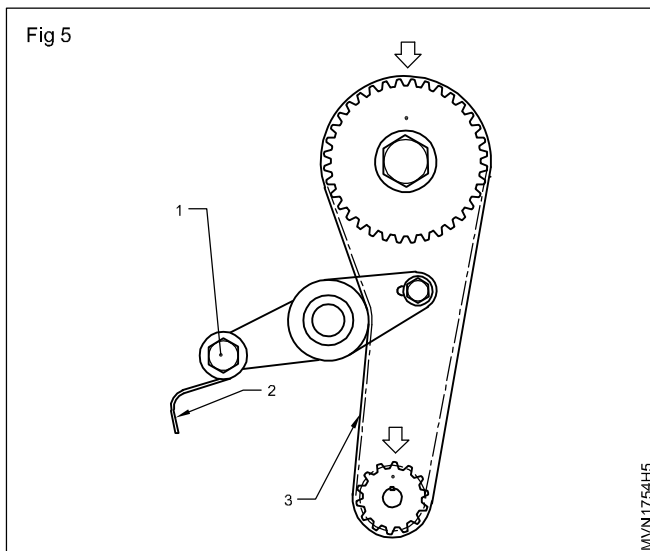
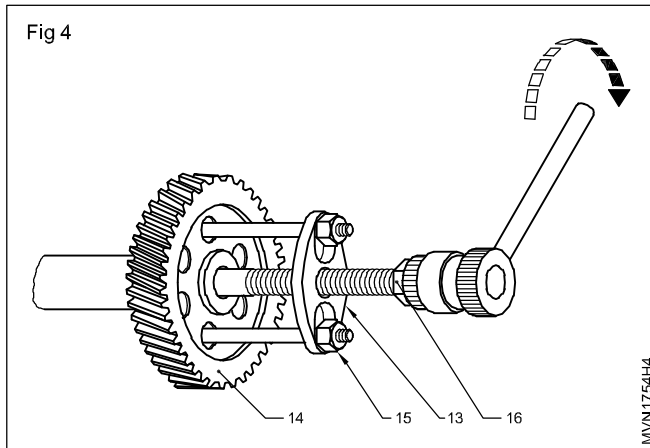
- 2 Mark the position of the pointer (2) with respect to the timing cover (3).
- 3 Place a wooden piece in between the flywheel ring gear and crankcase to prevent rotation of the flywheel.
- 4 Remove the crankshaft pulley nut (4).
- 5 Place the puller (5) on the crankshaft pulley (6). Ensure the distance piece (7) does not sit inside the crankshaft threads.
- 6 Place the puller legs (8) in such a way that the puller's flange (9) is parallel to the pulley (6). (Fig 2)
- 7 Tighten the centre bolt (10) till the pulley (6) comes out of the crankshaft.



- 8 Remove the damper pulley (11) with the help of puller. Remove the timing cover (11) loosening the mounting screws diagonally opposite.
- 9 Remove the gasket (12) and oil seal (17). (Fig 3)

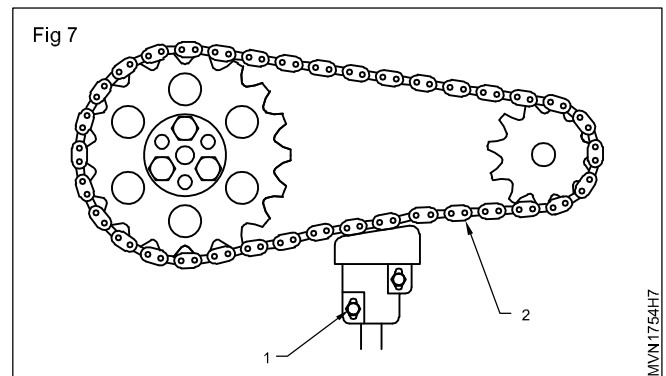
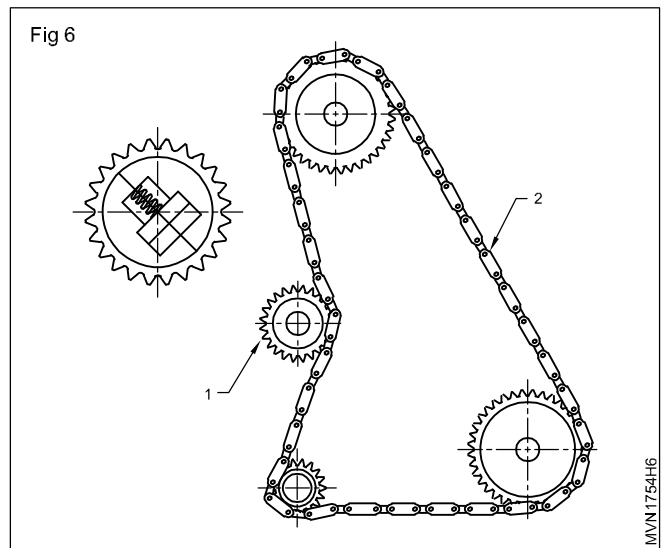


- 10 Unscrew the mounting bolts of the timing gear.
- 11 Place the puller (13) on the camshaft timing gear (14).
- 12 Tighten the puller bolt (15) in such a way that the puller flange (13) is parallel to the timing gear (14). (Fig 4)
- 13 Tighten the centre bolt (16) till the timing gear (14) comes out of the camshaft. (Fig 5)



- 14 Remove the woodruff key.
- 15 Remove the chain/belt from the gear/sprocket.
- 16 Remove the chain/belt having the tensioner.
- 17 Loosen the water pump bolt (1) till the spring's (2) tension is reduced.

- 18 Loosen and remove the belt (3) from the pulley.
- 19 Loosen the timing chain tensioner (1) and remove the tensioner from the tensioner contact and take out the chain (2) from the gear. (Fig 6)

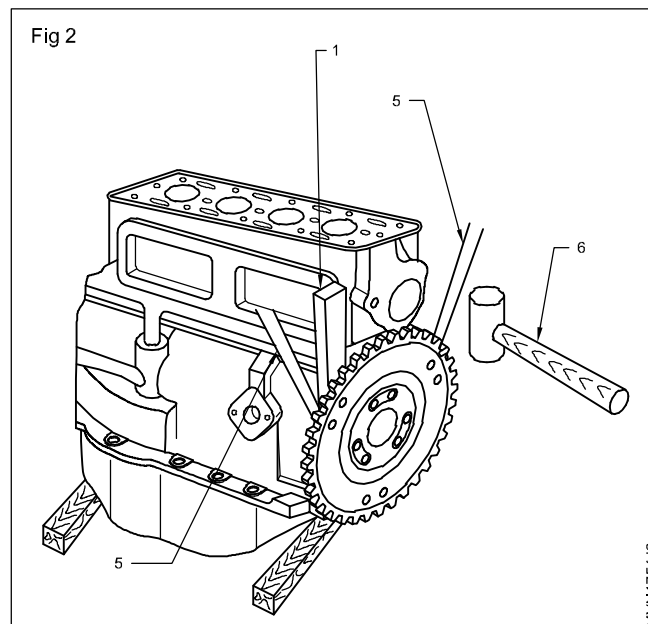
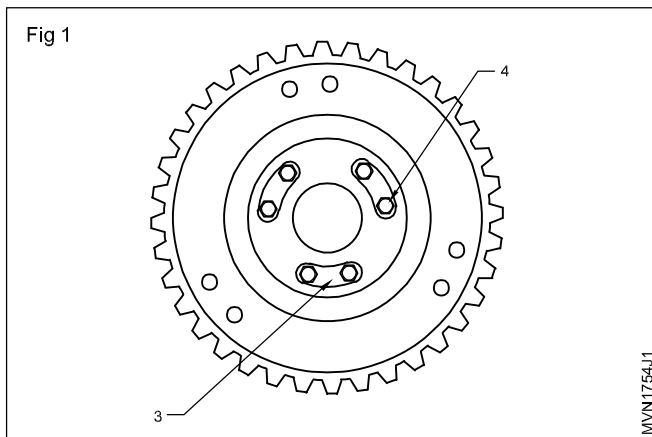


- 20 Loosen the chain tensioner mounting bolt (1). (Fig 7)
- 21 Remove the bolt.
- 22 Remove the spring.
- 23 Remove the tensioner pad.
- 24 Take out the chain (2) from the chain sprocket.

-----

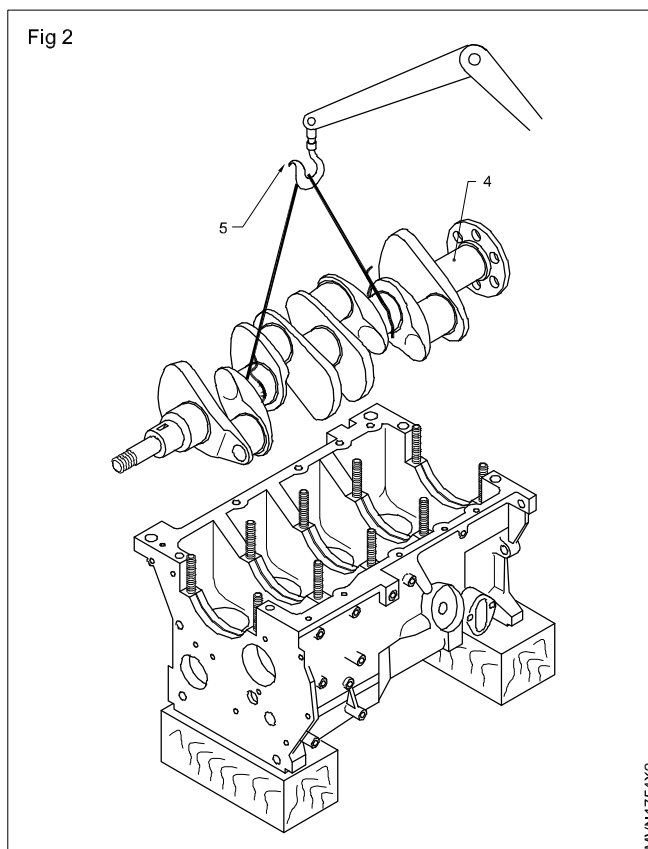
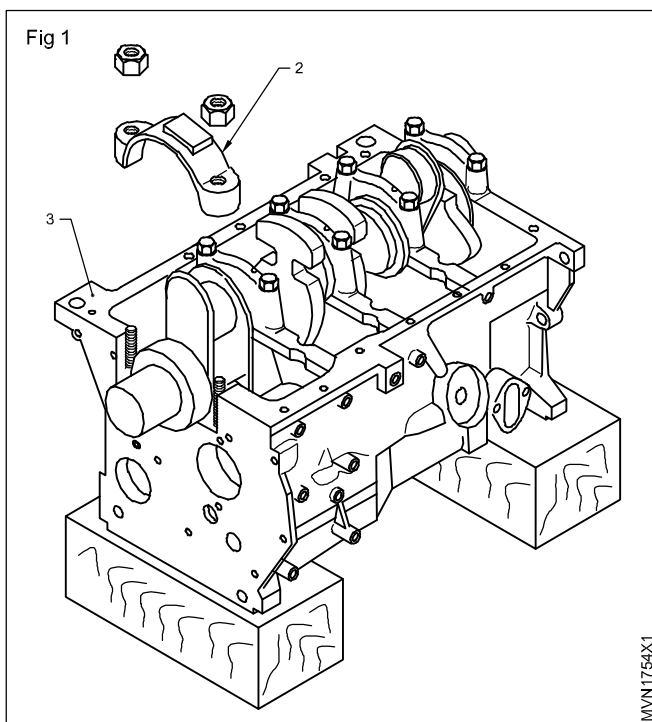
## TASK 2 : Removal of flywheel

- 1 Lock the flywheel by placing a wooden piece (1) between the flywheel and crankshaft or use a special tool to lock the flywheel rotation.
- 2 Unlock the lock plates (3)/locking wire from the flywheel mounting bolts (4). (Fig 1)
- 3 Unscrew the fastening bolts from the flywheel.
- 4 Use a pry bar (5) between the flywheel and the back of the engine or plastic mallet (6) for loosening the flywheel. Ensure that the flywheel does not fall on the ground. (Fig 2)
- 5 Remove the flywheel and keep it on the inspection table.



### TASK 3 : Removal of crankshaft

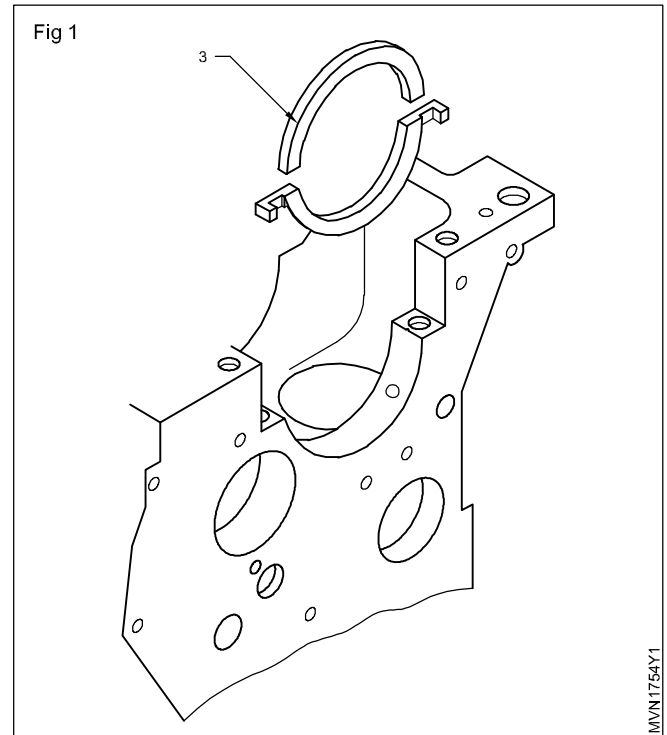
- 1 Turn the engine upside down and keep the engine on wooden blocks.
- 2 Mark the main bearing caps (2) with respect to the crankcase (3).
- 3 Unscrew the bolts/nuts of the main bearing caps (2).
- 4 Tap the main bearing caps (2) with a plastic mallet.
- 5 Lift the bearing caps (2) along with the bearing shell evenly. Ensure that dowels do not bend. A bent dowel may cause misalignment of the caps resulting in bearing wear/ crankshaft seizure. (Fig 1)
- 6 Lift the crankshaft (4) with the help of another person/ lifting the hook (5) by holding each end, and place it on the inspection stand. (Fig 2)
- 7 Put the bearing caps at their respective places with the same bolts.





#### TASK 4 : **Inspect the oil retainer of crankshaft**

- 1 Remove the crank pulley
- 2 Disconnect and remove the all connecting rods caps
- 3 Loosen the mounting of crank shaft
- 4 Remove the crankshaft from the engine
- 5 Place the crankshaft in tray on the work bench
- 6 Clean the crank shaft
- 7 Clean the thrust half washers and oil retainers (Fig 1)
- 8 Check the thrust washers for wear and damages
- 9 Check the crankshaft oil retainers (1) for damages
- 10 Place the crankshaft on the 'V' blocks and ensure crankshaft in freely rotate
- 11 Set the dial indicator for check the thrust surfaces and rotate the crank shaft and measure the weariness
- 12 Refer the weariness reading with service manual reading
- 13 If thrust surface wear is more than the specified limit recommend for regrinding
- 14 If any damage in thrust half washers and oil retainers replace it.



-----

Measure the crankshaft taper and ovality

- Objectives: At the end of this exercise you shall be able to
- measure the crankshaft journal wear, taper and ovality.
  - inspect the crankshaft for fillet radii.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
• Outside micrometer	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• 'V' block	- 2 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Dial guage with magnetic base	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Lube oil	- as reqd.	• Lube oil	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries			
• Multi cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.		
• Surface table	- 1 No.		

PROCEDURE

TASK 1: Measuring the crankshaft journal diameter

- 1 Remove the crankshaft from the engine block

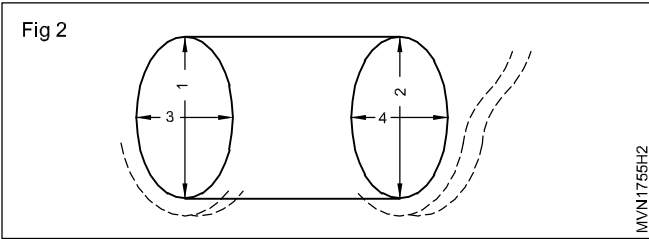
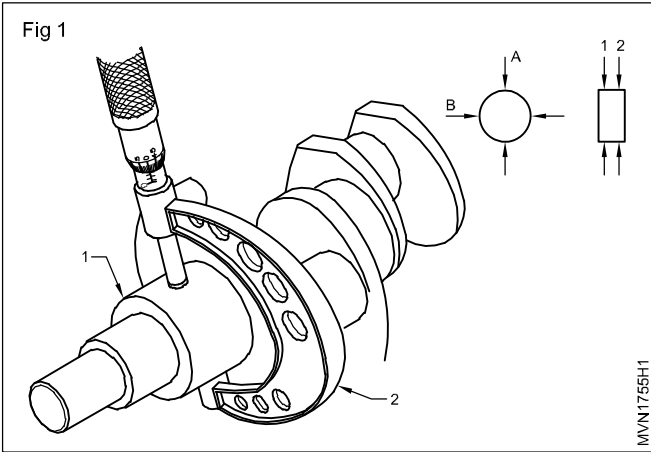
2 Clean the crankshaft assembly with cleaning solvent

3 Clean the crankshaft with compressed air and banyan cloth

4 Check the crankshaft visually for cracks and damages

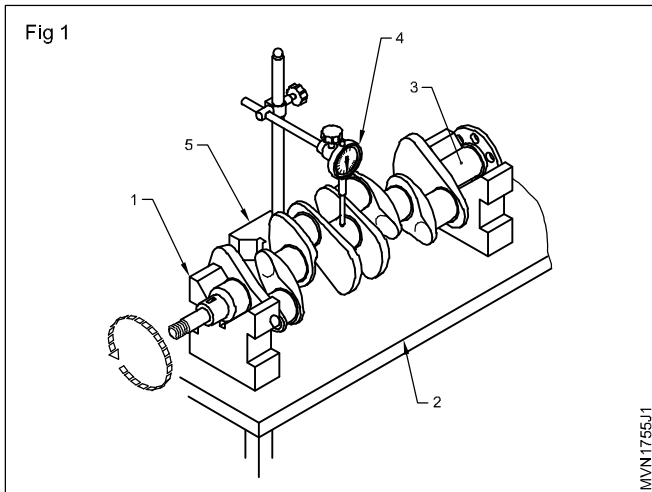
5 With the help of a outside micrometer measure the journal diameter at `1' `2' `3' & `4'. The difference in reading between `1' & `3' and `2' & `4' will give the ovality and `1' & `2' will give taper. (Fig 1 & Fig 2)
- 6 If the taper and ovality is more than the given specified limit, then the crankshaft should be reground for undersize.

7 Measure the oil clearance between the crankshaft main journal and the bearing shell.



## TASK 2: Inspect the crankshaft for fillet radii

- 1 Place two 'V' blocks (1) on the surface table (2).
- 2 Place the crank shaft (3) on the 'V' blocks and adjust the distance between the 'V' blocks in such a way that on either side of the 'V' block the shaft does not overhang more than 1/10th of its total length.
- 3 Place the dial indicator with the magnetic base (5) on the surface table. (Fig 1)

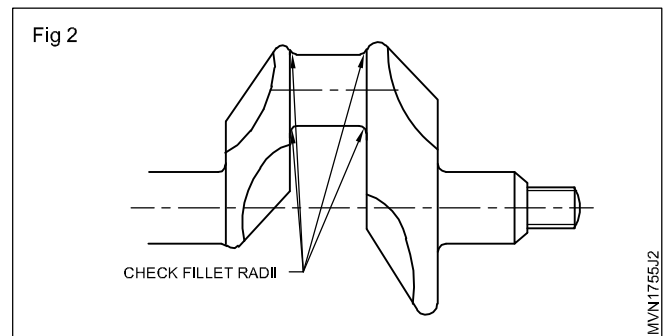


- 4 Bring the dial indicator (4) at the centre of the shaft (3).
- 5 Push the dial indicator's (4) needle on the shaft so that the needle shows some deflection.
- 6 Adjust the indicator's needle to 'O' position by rotating the dial.

- 7 Rotate the shaft (3) by hand and note down the deflection of the needle. This will give the bend of the shaft at the centre.
- 8 Repeat the above steps at three places, so as to cover the complete length of the shaft (3).
- 9 Check fillet radii of the main and connecting rod journals (Fig 2)

Note down the maximum bend at all the places.

**Removal of bend/replacement of shaft recommended, if the maximum bend at any one or more places is found more than the limit specified by the manufacturer.**



## Check flywheel mounting and spigot bearing

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- inspect the flywheel and mounting flange.
- inspect the spigot bearing

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Box spanner kit - 2 No.
- Bearing puller - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

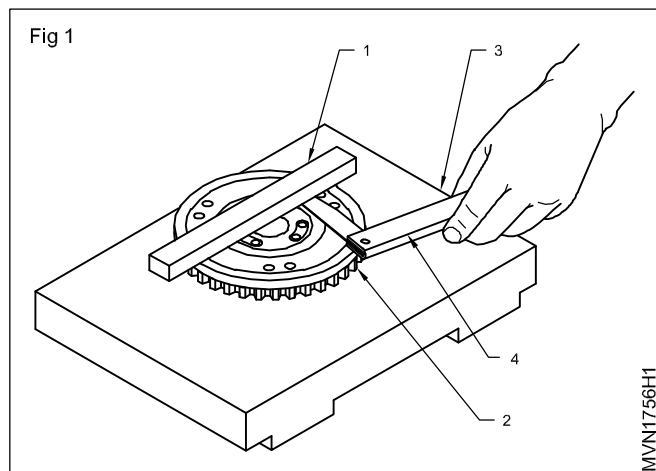
#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.

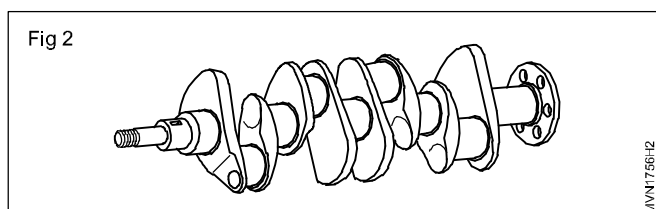
## PROCEDURE

### Inspecting flywheel and mounting flange

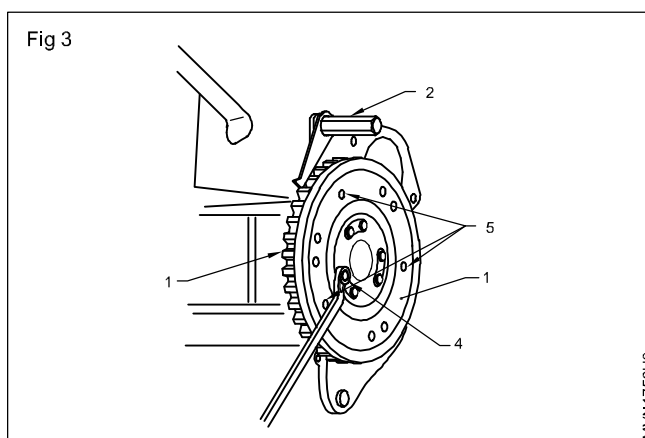
- 1 Clean the surface of flywheel
- 2 Visually check the flywheel (Fig 1) friction surface by using a straight edge (1) and feeler gauge (4)



- 3 Flywheel warpage is more than the specified limit by the manufacturer, then recommend for machining
- 4 Ensure that flywheel thickness after machining it has not become less than the specified thickness.
- 5 Clean the crankshaft flange and flywheel mating surface
- 6 Visually check the flywheel mounting flange (Fig 2) for damage and cracks



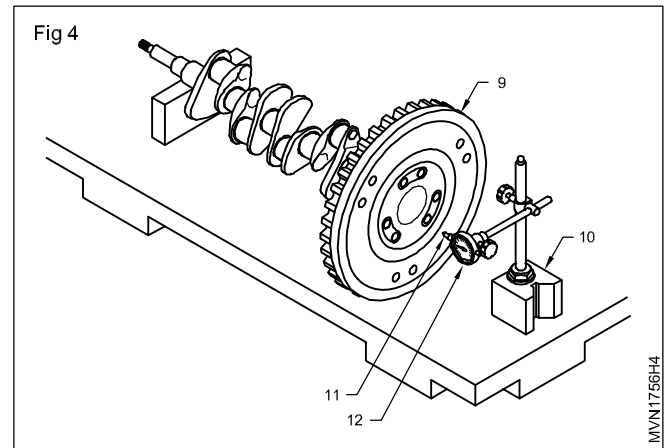
- 7 Fix the flange bolts on the crankshaft
- 8 Remove the spigot bearing from rear end of the crankshaft/flywheel
- 9 Clean and inspect the bearing clearance and noise  
[If worn out replace with new bearing]
- 10 Fit the spigot bearing in the socket of crankshaft rear end.
- 12 Align the bearing with the help of dummy shaft.
- 13 Align the flywheel holes and flange bolts/dowel pins (5) (look for timing mark alignment with 1st cylinder (Fig 3))



- 14 Install the flywheel (1) on the crankshaft flange.
- 15 Lock the flywheel from rotation (by using the special tool) (2).
- 16 Tighten the flywheel mounting bolts/nuts (4) diagonally and evenly to the specified torque.
- 17 Use positive locking device avoid failure

18 Check the face run out of the flywheel (Fig 4)

19 If the face run out is more than the specified limit, recommend for machining. Ensure that, after machining, the flywheel thickness has not become less than the specified thickness.



-----

## Check the vibration damper and camshaft

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the vibration damper defects
- removing and checking the camshaft.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Socket spanner for damper pulley - 1 No.
- Pulley puller - 1 No.

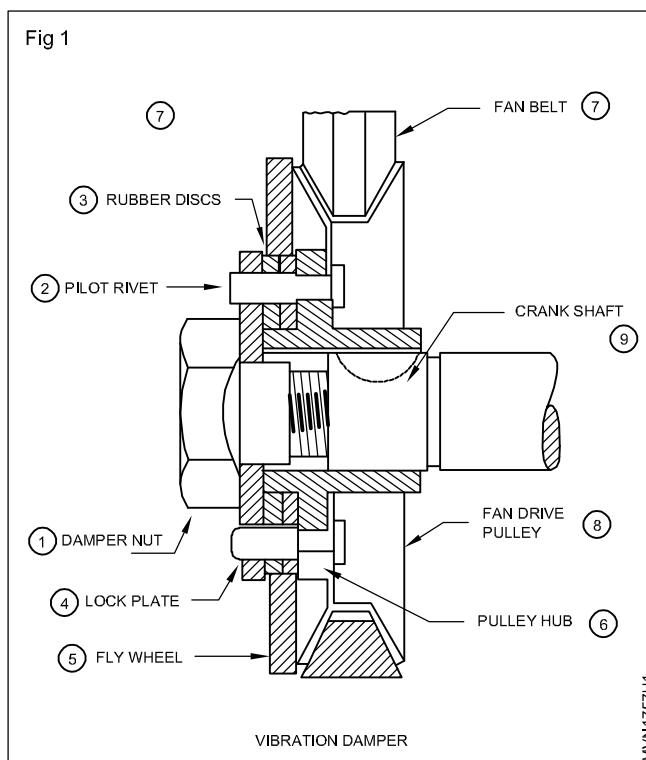
#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Vibration damper accessories - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Remove and refit the vibration damper

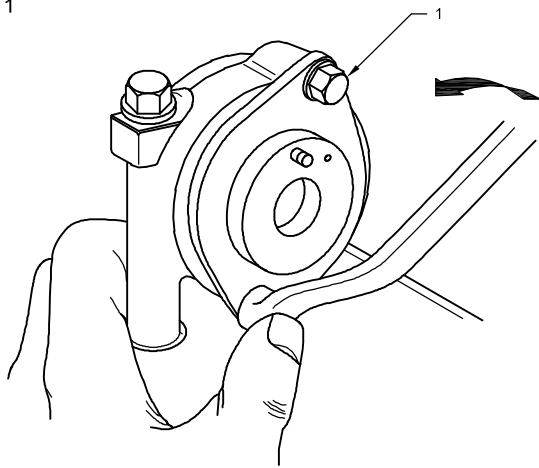
- 1 Remove the fan belt (7) (Fig 1) from the fan drive pulley
- 2 Loose the damper nut (1) with help of socket spanner and remove the damper nut
- 3 Fix the puller on fan drive pulley (8) and remove it
- 4 Place the fan drive pulley on the tray
- 5 Clean the vibration damper and fan drive pulley
- 6 Visually check the rubber discs (3), pilot rivet (2) and lock plate (4) of vibration damper.
- 7 Dismantle the vibration damper
- 8 Plate the vibration damper, pilot rivet discs, pulley hub, fandrive pulley, lock plate, damper nut on the work bench in tray.
- 9 Clean all dismantle parts of the vibration damper
- 10 Inspect the dismantled parts for wear and damages
- 11 Select the damaged/ wearing parts and replace it with new parts.
- 12 Assemble the all dismantled parts of vibration damper.
- 13 Fit the vibration damper on the crank shaft.
- 14 Ensure the vibration damper is properly installed with the fan drive pulley.



### TASK 2: Removing and checking the camshaft

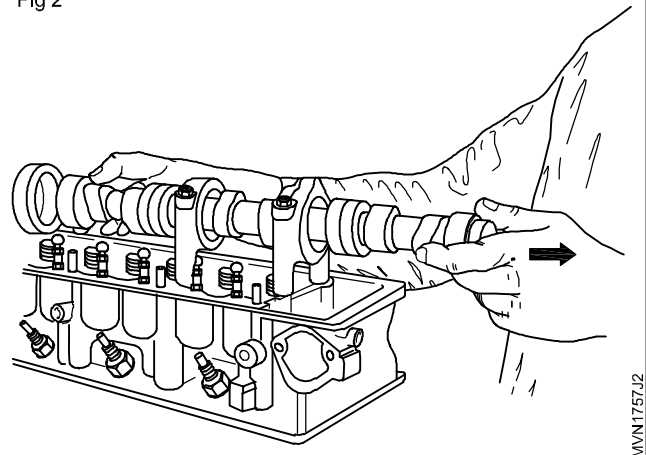
- 1 Remove the bolts (1) retaining the camshaft thrust plate and remove thrust plate (Fig 1)
- 2 Support the camshaft and carefully slide the journals through each bearing. Avoid contact of the surface with cam lobe and pull the camshaft. (Fig 2)
- 3 Clean the camshaft thoroughly.
- 4 Inspect the camshaft journals for scratches, grooves and pitting marks.
- 5 Measure each journal for ovality, taper and wear.
- 6 Check camshaft for bend and twist with dial test indicator

Fig 1



MVN1757J1

Fig 2



MVN1757J2

Inspect camshaft and mesure cam lobe lift

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

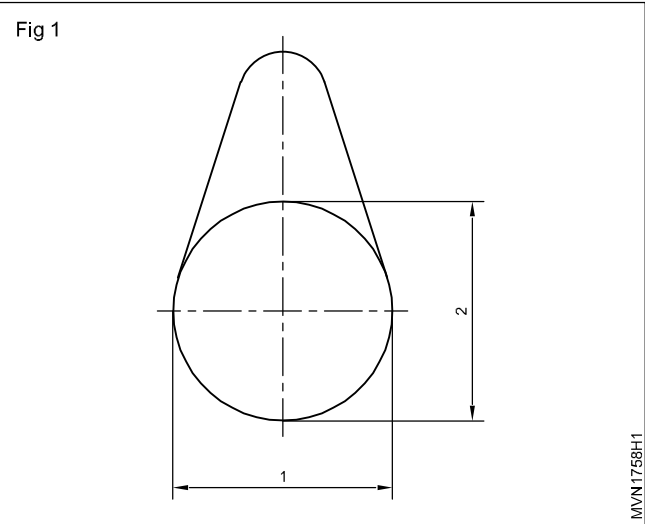
- check the camshaft wear
- check the camshaft clearance.

Requirements			
<b>Tools/Instruments</b>		<b>Materials/Components</b>	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cleaning Solvent	- 1 No.
• Outside Micrometer	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Feeler gauge	- 1 No.	• Lub Oil	- as reqd.
<b>Equipments/Machineries</b>			
• Diesel Engine	- 1 No.		

PROCEDURE

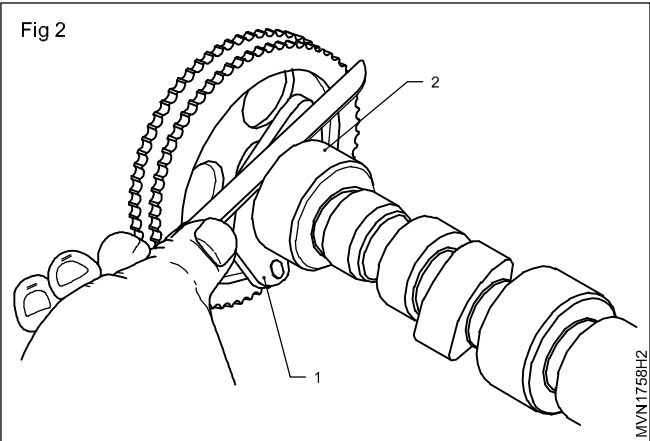
TASK 1: Remove and refit the camshaft

- 1 Clean the camshaft with cleaning solvent
- 2 Measure each camshaft journal for taper, ovality and wear with the help of outside micrometer
- 3 Check cam lobes surface for wear. (Fig 1) Measure diameter of the base circle (1) of camshaft with a micrometer.



- 4 Measure height (2) of cam lobe with micrometer.
- 5 Difference between cam lobe height (2) and base circle diameter (1) is cam lift.

- 6 Check oil pump drive gear for pitting, wear and damage.
- 7 Check eccentricity for driving fuel pump.
- 8 Check the cam shaft bearings. If any damages, replace the bearing.
- 9 Measure clearance between thrust washer (1) and camshaft's first journal (2). (Fig 2)
- 10 Change thrust washer if clearance is not as per manufacturer's recommendation.





## Assemble the crankshaft in block

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- fix the bearings in the cylinder block
- fix the crank shaft in the cylinder block
- fix the connecting rod bearing cap
- check crank shaft end play.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Magnetic base with dial gauge - 1 No.
- Trainee tools kit - 1 No.
- Heavy duty screw driver/bar - 1 No.
- Torque wrench - 1 No.
- Box spanner - 1 Set.
- Piston ring compressor - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

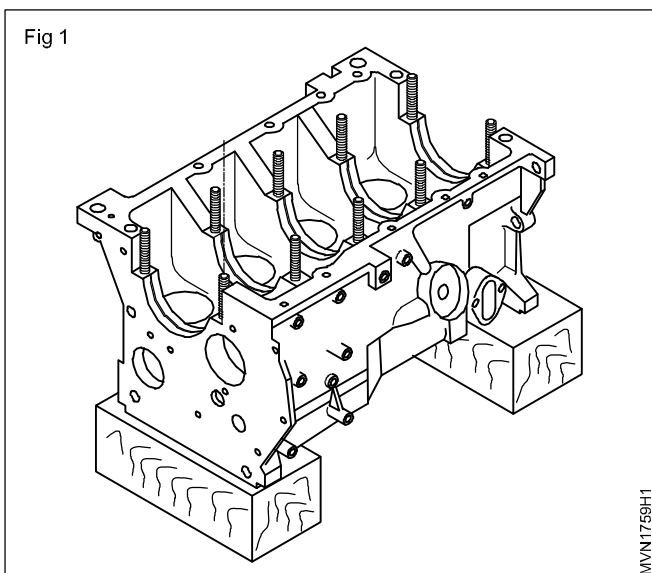
- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Work bench - 1 No.
- Wooden block - 2 Nos.
- Oil can - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Main journal bearing - 1 No.
- Big end bearing - as reqd.
- Piston pin - as reqd.
- Nut bolts - as reqd.
- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Baniyan cloth - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.

### PROCEDURE

- 1 Place the engine block on the wooden block (Fig 1)



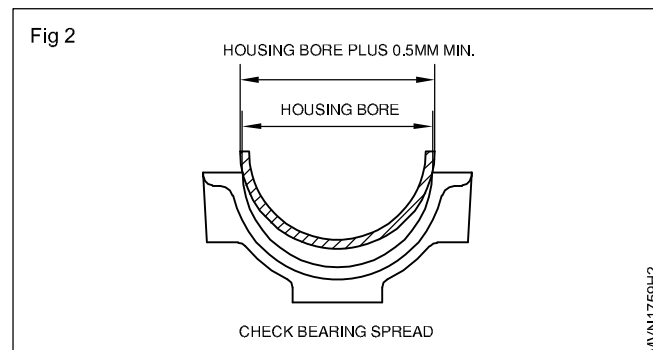
- 2 Clean the parent bore of the main bearing in the cylinder block.
- 3 Clean the oil holes of the parent bore.
- 4 Place the main bearing shell into its respective parent bore. Ensure that the oil hole of the bearing shell and that of the parent bore align.
- 5 Install the crankshaft rear bearing seal (oil seal).  
Insert the rubber packing (rubber rod) in the holes between the bearing cap and the cylinder block.

- 6 The projection of the rubber packing should not be more than 6 mm. If it is more than 6 mm, cut off the excess length.

- 7 Install the thrust washers into the respective bearings.  
Lubricate all the bearing surfaces with clean engine oil. Place the crankshaft in its position in the cylinder block.

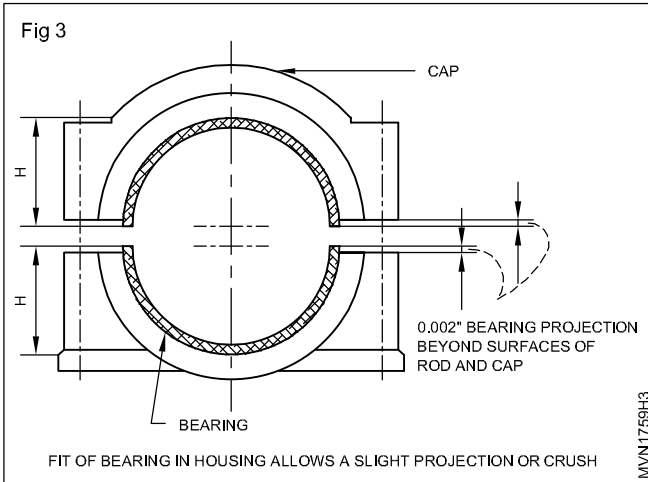
Place the shell bearings into their respective bearing caps.

Check the bearing shells for spread. The inserts should 'snap' into position in the housing and cap. (Fig 2)

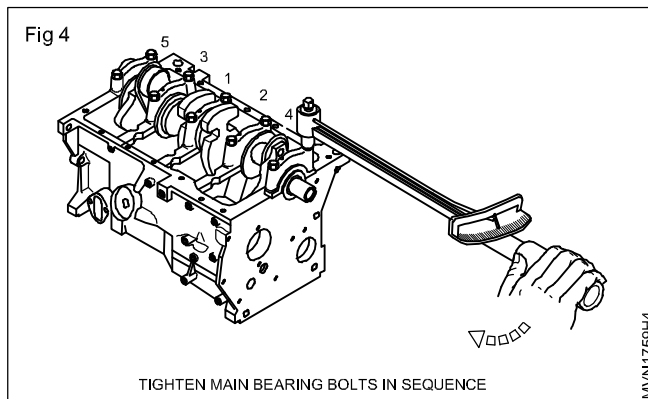


- 8 Lubricate and install the main bearing caps. Ensure that the bearing caps are fitted into their original positions.
- 9 Hand-tighten the main bearing cap bolts.
- 10 Tighten the middle bearing cap to the specified torque and check the crankshaft for free rotation.

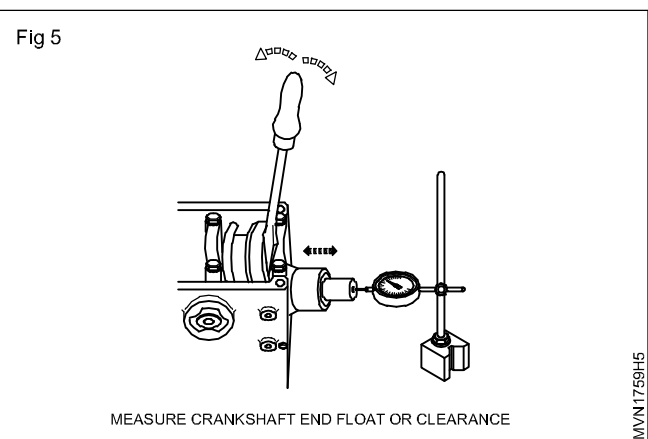
- 11 Loosen the main bearing caps and bolts on one side.
- 12 Check the gap between the main bearing cap and the cylinder block surface with a feeler gauge. This gap indicates the bearing crush. (Fig 3)



- 13 Tighten the bolts of the main bearing caps on either side of the centre bearing, one by one to the specified torque. (Fig 4)



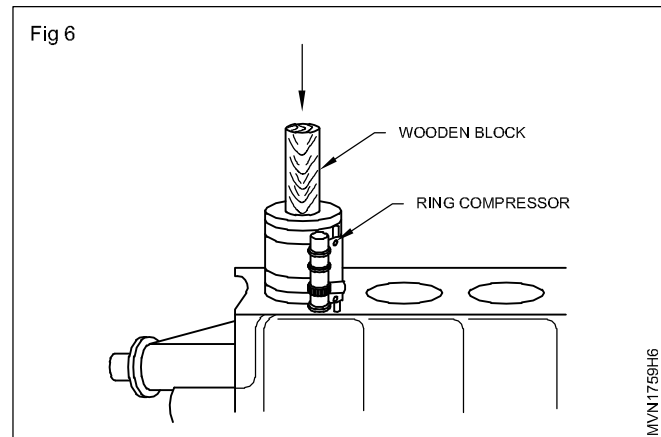
- 14 Check the crankshaft for its free rotation after tightening each bearing cap's bolts.
- 15 Check the crankshaft end play. (Fig 5)



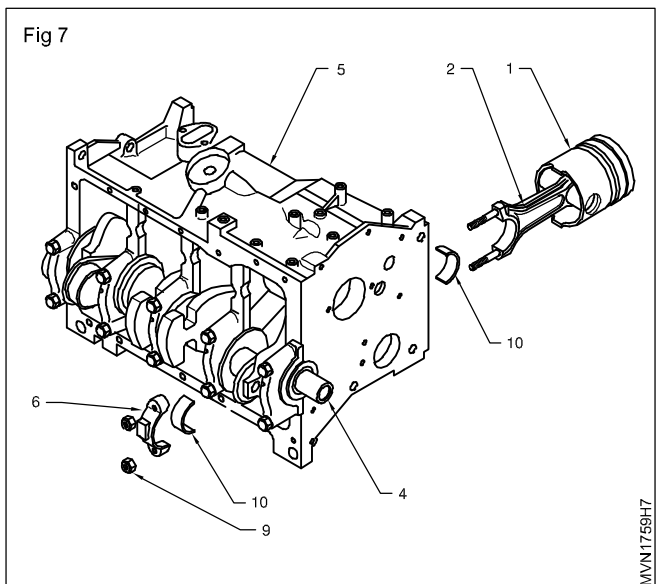
- 16 To increase the end play use a thinner thrust washer and to reduce the end play use a thicker thrust washer.
- 17 Clear the cylinder block surface.
- 18 Keep the cylinder block in a tilted position and support it on wooden blocks.

- 19 Stagger the piston rings as specified by the manufacturer.
- 20 Lubricate the cylinder walls, piston and rings, big end bearing shells and crankpins with engine oil.
- 21 Place the piston in the cylinder till the bottom ring touches the cylinder block top. Ensure that the piston is placed in the cylinder in the same direction as specified by the manufacturer.
- 22 Bring the respective crankpin to T.D.C.

Compress the piston rings by a ring compressor. (Fig 6) Push the piston with a wooden block till the connecting rod big end bearing sits on the crankpin.



- 24 Push the piston, and simultaneously rotate the crank shaft till it comes to B.D.C. Ensure that the connecting rod does not dislodge from the crankshaft while rotating the crankshaft. (Fig 7)



- 25 Fit the connecting rod bearing cap, along with the lower bearing shell.
  - 26 Tighten the bearing cap bolts/nuts to the recommended torque.
  - 27 Rotate the crankshaft and check for free rotation.
- Repeat the above steps for fitting all the remaining pistons and connecting rod assemblies.

## Clean and check cylinder block

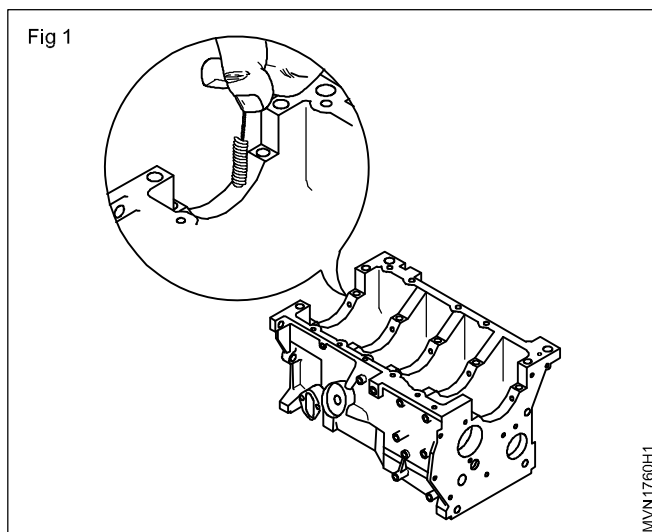
**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to  
 • clean the cylinder block.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
• Scraper	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Multi cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Air compressor, Water washer	- 1 No.	• Lube oil	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Cleaning

1 Put the cylinder block on wooden blocks (Fig 1)



- 2 Clean cylinder block with suitable solvent or steam
- 3 Clean the oil passages of cylinder block with help of wire brush
- 4 Remove all sludge of dirt and carbon deposits in crank case, cylinder walls and valve chambers
- 5 Remove carbon deposits in cylinder block
- 6 Use scrapper to remove hard carbon deposits and take care with out damage the highly finished sur faces
- 7 Clean the cylinder block by using compressed air blast
- 8 Visually check the cylinder block for cracks and dam-ages
- 9 Replace the cylinder block if any damage is found.

## Check cylinder block surface

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **check cracks and flatness of cylinder block**

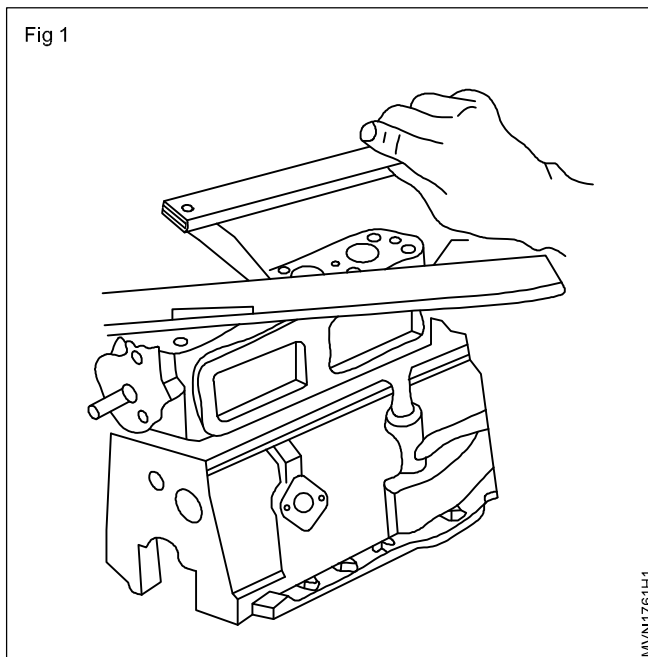
Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
• Straight edge, Feeler gauge	- 1 No.	• Banian cloth	- as reqd.
• Bore dial gauge	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Engine cylinder block	- 1 No.	• Lube oil	- as reqd.
• Air compressor, Water washer	- 1 No.		

## PROCEDURE

**TASK : Check flatness of cylinder block with straight edge.**

- 1 Place the cylinder block on the plain two wooden block
- 2 Clean the top plain surface of the cylinder block
- 3 wipe the plain surface with clean banian cloth to be required part of the cylinder block.
- 4 Keep the straight edge on the surface of the cylinder block and press the straight edge at the centre with your left hand.
- 5 Insert the feeler gauge leaves between the straight edge and the surface of the cylinder block (Fig 1).
- 6 Note down the thickness of the thickest leaf, which can be inserted between the straight edge and the surface of the cylinder block. This thickness gives the maximum face out in the direction.
- 7 Repeat the above steps in different direction and places on the surface of cylinder block and note down the maximum face out in all directions.
- 8 Recommend for replacing or resurfacing of cylinder block in maximum face out is more than the specified limit by the manufacture.

Fig 1



MVN1761H1

## Clean oil passages and descale water passages

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check taper and ovality of cylinder bore and clean oil passages.
- descaling water passages of cylinder block.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Straight edge, Feeler gauge - 1 No.
- Bore dial gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Engine cylinder block - 1 No.
- Air compressor, Water washer - 1 No.

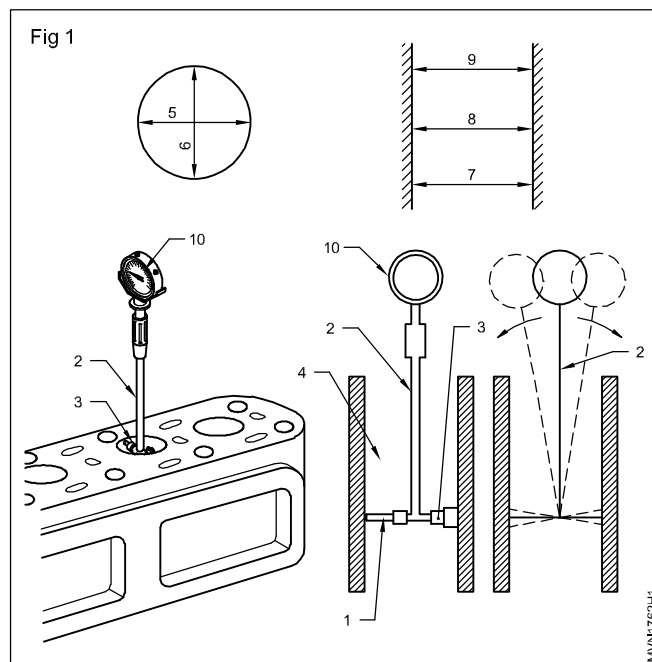
#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Banian cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.
- Steel plate with rubber pad - as reqd.
- Hot water - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Taper, ovality and clean oil passages

- 1 Clean cylinder bore with a piece of cloth.
- 2 Measure inside diameter of the bore with an inside micro meter (80 mm)
- 3 Select the correct size of extension rod (1) which is more than measuring range (80.8 mm).
- 4 Assemble the extension rod on the stem of the dial test indicator (2).
- 5 Press the spring loaded plunger end (3) as it enters inside the bore.
- 6 Keep the bore gauge parallel to the cylinder wall by slightly rotating the gauge (2).
- 7 Set the needle at 'O' in dial indicator (10).
- 8 Take measurement at (6) with the bore gauge and note down the reading.
- 9 Take another reading (5) at right angles to the first reading.
- 10 Repeat above at three places (7,8 and 9).
- 11 The difference in measurement between (5) and (6) at all places is ovality. The difference in measurement between (7) and (8), (8) and (9), and (9) and (7) is taper.
- 12 Note down maximum ovality and taper. If any one of them is more than the specified limit, recommend for reboring/ replacement of liner. (Fig 1)

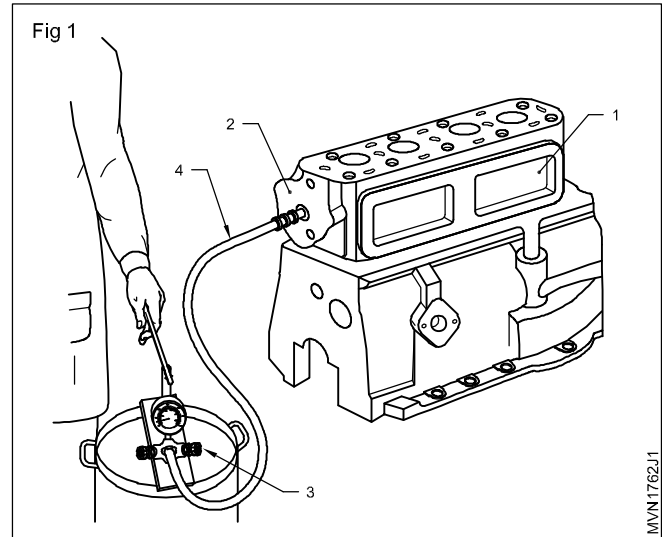


13 Clean the oil main gallery with help of wire brush

14 Clean the oil pipe line by air pressure

## TASK 2: Descaling water passages of cylinder block

- 1 put the engine on two wooden block
- 2 Clean the engine block with suitable solvent
- 3 Descal water passages by injecting water with suitable solvent at high pressure.
- 4 Clean the cylinder block by using compressed air blast. (Fig 1)
- 5 Check engine block visually for cracks.
- 6 Fit steel plate (1) with rubber pads on cylinder block to close water jackets opening and also fit side sealing plate.
- 7 Fit sealing plate (2) with adapter on the front face of the block and connect rubber hose (4) to hand operated pump (3) dipped in a container of hot water of 70°C to 80°C temperature.
- 8 Pump water in cylinder block at approximate 5kg./cm<sup>2</sup> and check cylinder block correctly for leakage.
- 9 If leakage found in cylinder block Repair/ replace it.
- 10 Clean the cylinder block oil gallery passages
- 11 Clean the oil pipe lines of engine



## Remove and refit new liners

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove cylinder liners from the cylinder bore
- refit the wet liners in the cylinder block.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Scraper - 1 No.
- Drift liner, Tray - 1 No. Each

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Hydraulic press - 1 No.
- Workbench - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Liners - as reqd.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.
- Liner sealing ring - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Removing the cylinder liners

- 1 Clean the cylinder block with soap oil
- 2 Dry the cylinder block with compressed air pressure
- 3 Keep the cylinder block upside down on the hydraulic press bed
- 4 Ensure sufficient space is available for the liner come out properly on hydraulic machine bed
- 5 Place the drift (1) on liner and ensure that the drift, is seating properly on bottom base of liner (2) (Fig 1)
- 6 Use suitable distance piece between the bore and the drift
- 7 Press out linear, individually and keep the liners on work bench
- 8 Clean the parent bores in the cylinder block thoroughly
- 9 Scrape out all the deposits of rust, scale, carbon, etc., from the block bore.
- 10 Scrape all the deposits, from the block counter bore for flanged type liner (Fig 2)

Fig 1

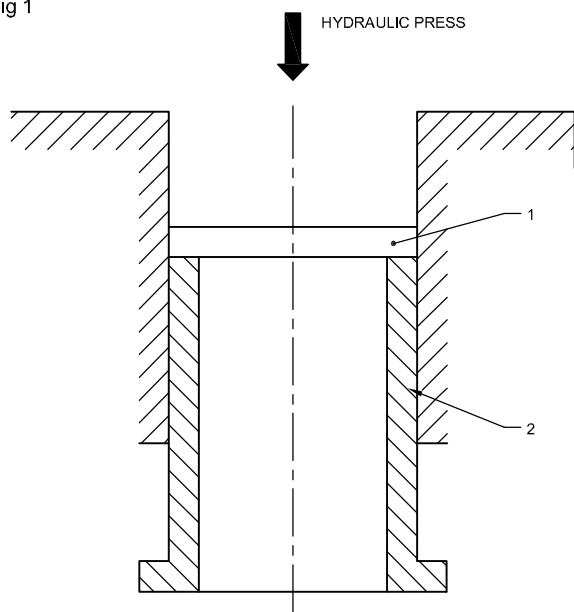
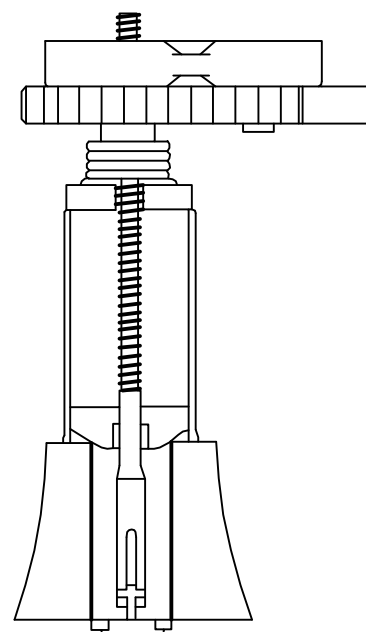
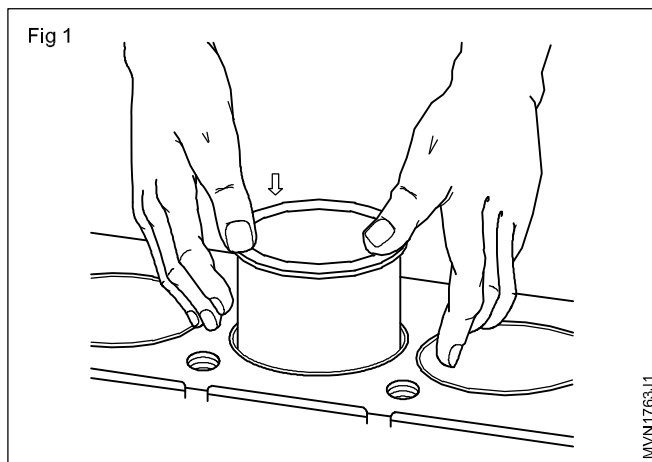


Fig 2



## TASK 2: Refitting cylinder liners

- 1 Clean the cylinder block liner's scaling
- 2 Select the new liner's
- 3 Visually inspect the liners
- 4 Measure the liner's out of roundness and thickness
- 5 Measure the liners diameter at one point and then moving 180° and measuring the diameter again with dial bore gauge
- 6 Confirm the liners specification with maker's recommendations.
- 7 Ensure the liner is fit for the cylinder bore
- 8 Clean wet liner sealing ring grooves and install the and bottom ('O' rings)



- 9 Liners protrusion can be checked at before used to installed with 'O' rings
- 10 Ensure 'O' rings are not twisted and properly sealed on liner grooves
- 11 After fix the liner 'O' rings inserts the small screw under the 'O' rings and drawn the around the entire grooves to allow the 'O' rings to align itself in the grooves on the sleeve.
- 12 Lubricate the 'O' ring and lower packing are of the block with lubricant recommended by the engine manuals
- 13 Insert the liner into block carefully and wind damage 'O' rings by sharp ridges on top of the block (Fig 1)
- 14 Allow the liner to set into block on its own weight and ensure that 'O' rings are setting on the lower packing ring chamfer
- 15 Dont use excessive force when pushing liner
- 16 If the liner does not seated in the chamfer, bounce back up after pressure is smoked
- 17 In this condition remove the liner and replace the install the liner into cylinder block.
- 18 Finally ensure the liner is properly seated into block space
- 19 Liner it is advisable to use suitable bolts and washers to hold the liner it place



## Practice on checking and topup coolant

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the coolant of radiator
- topup the coolant.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Coolant oil / Water	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Multi-cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Radiator cap	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Park the vehicle on level plate
- 2 Open the radiator cap
- 3 Check the coolant level of the radiator
- 4 If coolant level is low, top up the coolant as specified
- 5 Check the coolant for leakage
- 6 Start the engine and check water circulation of cooling system
- 7 Check the water leakage at engine running mode, if found any leakage in cooling system, rectify it.

— — — — —

## Remove and replace the hoses and radiator

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- replace the hoses and top up the coolant.
- dismantling radiator
- cleaning and inspection
- refit the radiator

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Tray - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Running diesel engine - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

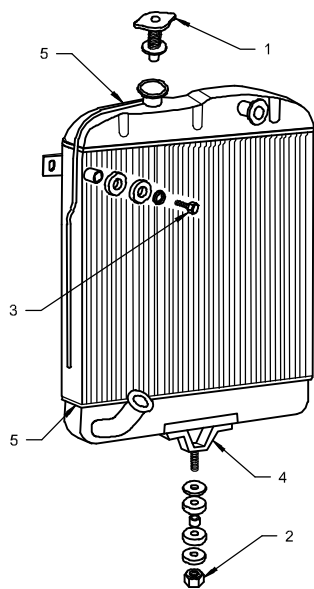
- Coolant - as reqd.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Radiator hose - as reqd.
- Hose clamp - as reqd.
- Grease - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Funnel - 1 No.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Check and replace hoses

- 1 Locate the top and bottom hoses between the radiator and engine. (Fig 1)

Fig 1



- 2 Check swelling, cracking and leaking of the hoses.
- 3 Allow to cool the engine.
- 4 Keep a tray below the radiator
- 5 Open the drain cork of radiator and drain water completely

- 6 Close the drain cork.
- 7 Remove all the clamps by using screw driver
- 8 Remove the top and bottom, of the hoses.
- 9 Clean the fittings spots with fine sand paper or emery cloth.
- 10 Check and compare the new hoses with removed hoses. [Make sure they are correct length, diameter and shape]
- 11 Apply sealing compound inside of the new hoses.
- 12 Sliding the new hoses into the position on the fittings with new clamps.
- 13 Tightened the clamps (6m in from the end of the hoses)
- 14 Refill the coolant in cooling system by using the funnel
- 15 Start and run the engine for few minutes.
- 16 Check the hose connections to make sure there is no leaks.
- 17 Stop the engine and allow to cool
- 18 Open the radiator cap
- 19 Check the coolant level, if necessary top up.

## **TASK 2: Dismantling the radiator**

- 1 Remove the radiator cap (1).
- 2 Place a suitable container below the radiator and unscrew the drain cock of radiator and drain the water from the radiator.
- 3 Open the drain plug at the cylinder block and drain the water from the cylinder block.
- 4 Disconnect the top and bottom water hoses.
- 5 Remove the nuts (2) securing the radiator to the mounting bracket (4) on the frame.
- 6 Remove the stay bolt (3) at the radiator end.
- 7 Remove the bracket if provided.
- 8 Remove the radiator. Place it vertically with proper support so that it does not fall. Ensure that the radiator cores do not touch the support (Fig 1).
- 9 Unscrew and remove the thermostat housing
- 10 Remove the thermostat valve and place it in a tray.

— — — — —

## **TASK 3: Cleaning and inspecting the radiator**

- 1 Check the radiator pressure cap (1) and its valve mechanism for movement, pressing it by hand.
- 2 Check visually the radiator core for damage, clogging and leakage.
- 3 Check the mounting straps on the tanks of the radiator for tightness.
- 4 Check the soldered joints (5) of the top and bottom tanks as well as the filler neck.
- 5 Check visually the radiator mounting brackets for cracks, damage etc. Repair/replace the damaged parts.
- 6 Check visually the stay rod end for damage. Replace the damaged parts.
- 7 Clean the thermostat valve
- 8 Check the thermostat valve, if it is defective, replace it.

— — — — —

## **TASK 4: Refit the radiator**

- 1 Assemble the mounting bracket to the radiator, if provided.
- 2 Mount the radiator on the frame aligning the top and bottom hose connections.
- 3 Fix the radiator stay bracket.
- 4 Tighten the radiator mounting and stay bracket with the help of a suitable ring spanner.
- 5 Fix the thermostat valve and pressure cap
- 6 Connect the water hoses-top and bottom. Tighten hose clips.
- 7 Fix the drain plug in the cylinder block and close the radiator drain tap and fill the radiator with a coolant. Start and keep the engine running for approx. one minute at high speed. Check the water level in the radiator. Fill it again, if required.
- 8 Start the engine and check for leaks. Rectify if there is any leak. Replace water hose if they are found leaky.

— — — — —

## Check the radiator pressure cap and thermostat valve

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the thermostat valve
- inspect and test the thermostat valve
- refit and test the thermostat valve.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Water jar - 1 No.
- Thermometer - 1 No.
- Heater - 1 No.
- Radiator pressure tester - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Work bench - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Coolant - as reqd.
- Gasket - as reqd.
- Thermostat valve - 1 No.
- Radiator cap - 1 No.

## PROCEDURE

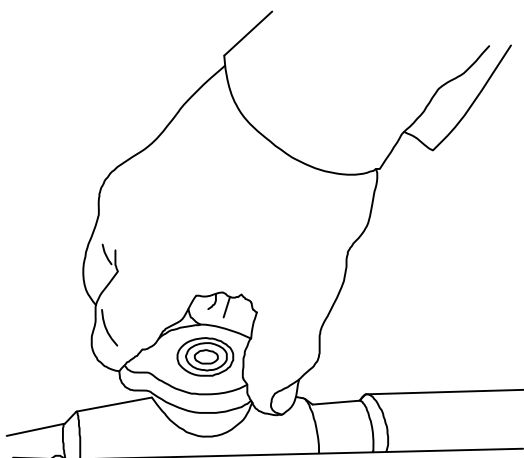
### TASK 1: Check the radiator pressure cap

- 1 Carefully touch the radiator hose and feel its hot.
- 2 Make sure the cooling system is not in hot

**Do not attempt to remove the radiator cap if engine is hot.**

- 3 Pushing down first and then twist it counter - clock wise (Fig 1) take the cap adapter from the radiator neck (Fig 2). (Radiator cap hold pressure between 6 to 16-PSI)

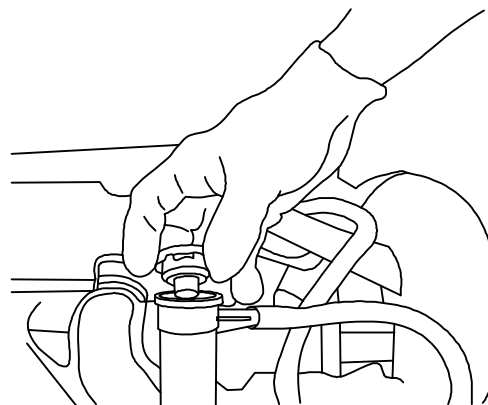
Fig 1



IMVN1866H1

**Attach the pressure tester to the filler neck of the radiator.**

Fig 2



IMVN1866H2

- 4 Pump the pressure tester handle until the pressure builds to the specification written on the radiator cap

**NOTE: The radiator cap should be able to hold most of the max pressure for up to five minutes. This takes a little bit of judgement on your part. Identify the gauge should reach at least 15 PSI.**

(If the pressure cap is not functioning correctly, then the gauge will start to drop)

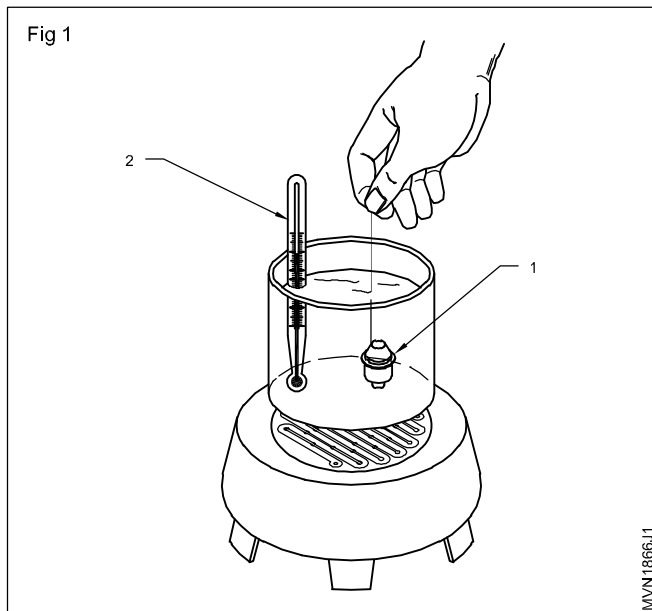
- 5 Clean any sediment or debris off the pressure cap.
- 6 Retest the cap, ensure the leak was not due to blockages

- 7 If found damage in radiator pressure cap valve or valve spring, replace it.

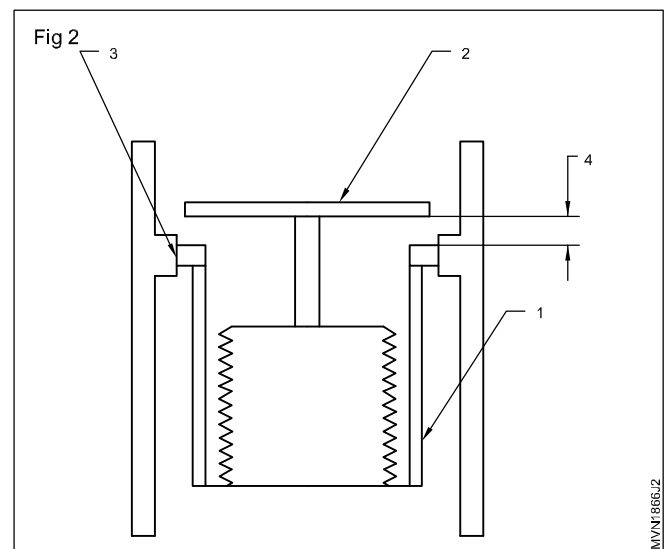
**NOTE: Too much pressure in the system can result damage**

## TASK 2: Inspection of Thermostat valve

- 1 Remove the thermostat cover from the thermostat case.
- 2 Remove the thermostat valve.
- 3 Clean the thermostat valve cap, and valve seat.
- 4 Tie the thermostat valve's collar with a thread.
- 5 Immerse the thermostat valve in water. Ensure that the thermostat valve (1) is fully merged in the water but does not touch the walls or the base of the jar.
- 6 Heat up the water (Fig 1).
- 7 Note down the temperature of the water in the thermometer (2) at which the thermostat starts to open.
- 8 Note down the temperature at which the thermostat opens fully.
- 9 Remove the thermostat valve (1) from the water and measure the gap between the thermostat collar (2) and the shroud (3). (Fig 2)
- 10 Compare the thermostat's opening temperature, thermostat's opening (4) and the temperature at which the thermostat opens completely, with the specifications given by the manufacturer. If any of these three observations do not match with the manufacturers specifications, then replace the thermostat (Fig 2).
- 11 Fit the thermostat in the thermostat case.
- 12 Fit the thermostat cover in the thermostat case.



- 7 Note down the temperature of the water in the thermometer (2) at which the thermostat starts to open.



**Perform cleaning the radiator by reverse flushing**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **clean and reverse flushing radiator.**

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 Set.

**Equipments/Machineries**

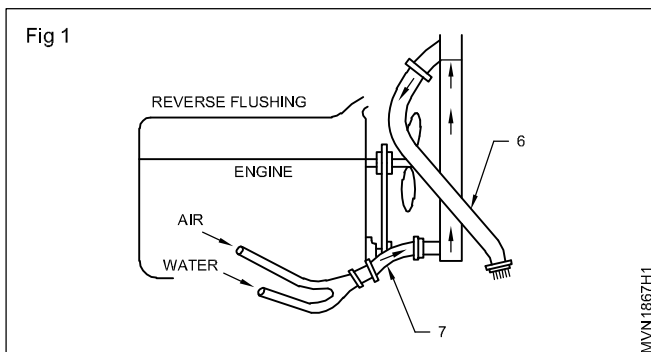
- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Air compressor, water washer - 1 No.

**Materials/Components**

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Coolant - as reqd.
- Radiator hose and clamp - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Remove the radiator upper and lower hose
- 2 Attach a drain hose pipe (6) at the top of the radiator.
- 3 Attach a new piece of hose (7) to the radiator outlet at the bottom.
- 4 Insert a flushing water and air gun in the mouth of the hose pipe at the radiator outlet (Fig 1).



- 5 Connect the water hose of the flushing gun to a water line and the air hose to an air line.

- 6 Start the water line and fill up the radiator.
- 7 When the radiator is full of water, switch on the airline and blow air in short blasts. Fill water into radiator again and blow air in short blasts again.
- 8 Continue the flushing operation until the water runs clear through the top hose.
- 9 Plug the outlet at the bottom of the radiator.
- 10 Fit the radiator filler cap.
- 11 Remove the drain cock. Connect a long air hose to the radiator at the drain cock hole.
- 12 Submerge the radiator in a water tank with the air hose above the water level.
- 13 Admit air at 1 to 1.5 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> pressure into the air hose and check for signs of leakages.
- 14 Repair the leaky spots.
- 15 Repeat the air pressure test for check radiator leaks, ensure there is no leakages in the radiator assembly.

### Overhaul the water pump

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- dismantle the water pump
- inspect the parts of a water pump
- assemble the water pump.
- refitting and testing

#### Requirements

##### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 No
- Puller, Circlip pliers - 1 No each.

##### Equipments/Machineries

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

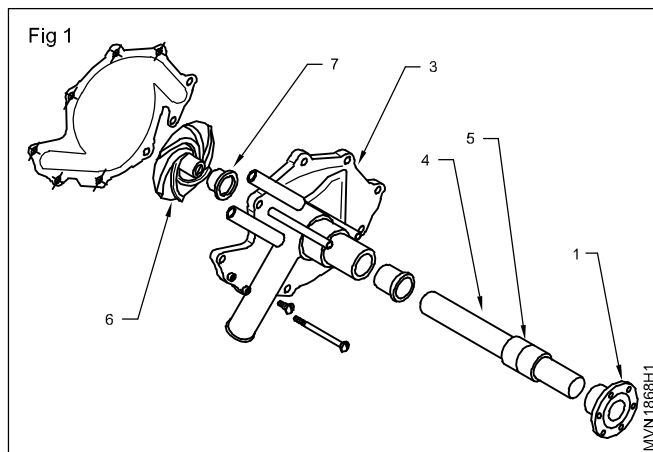
##### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Coolant - as reqd.
- Grease - as reqd.

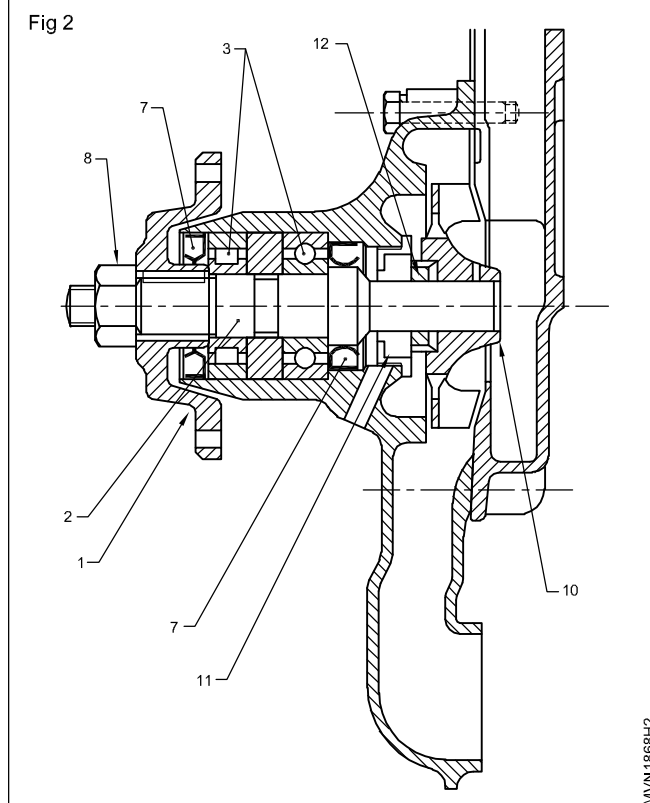
### PROCEDURE

#### TASK 1: Dismantling

1 Lock the water pump's pulley hub (1) (Fig 1).



- 2 Remove the water pump pulley hub nut(8) (Fig 2).
- 3 Remove the water pump pulley hub. Use a puller.
- 4 Remove the water pump rear cover, if provided.
- 5 Unscrew the oil seal holder and remove the oil seal shims and gasket.
- 6 Place the water pump housing (3) on support and press out the water pump shaft (4) with the bearing assembly (5) from the impeller (6).
- 7 Remove the inner oil seal (7) from the housing.
- 8 Place the water pump shaft on the tube, supporting the inner bearing's inner race, with the shaft's taper end facing upward.



- 9 Fix the nut on the threaded end of the shaft to protect the shaft's threads from damage.
- 10 Press/tap the shaft till the bearing comes out of its seat, from the water pump shaft.

- 11 Remove the outer race of the bearing from the housing with the help of a drift and hammer.
- 12 Remove the insert (12) with its rubber sleeve from the impeller (10).

- 13 Remove the water seal (11) from the water pump housing.

— — — — —

## TASK 2: Inspection

**Inspect the following parts visually for any crack/damage.**

- 1 Water pump shaft
- 2 Bearing
- 3 Water seal

- 4 Impeller
- 5 Water pump housing
- 6 Check the water pump shaft for bend
- 7 Hoses and engine drive belt

— — — — —

## TASK 3: Assembling

- 1 Press the bearings on the water pump shaft.
- 2 Press the water pump pulley hub on the shaft.
- 3 Fit the oil seal in the water pump housing; use a drift.
- 4 Fit the water seal in the water pump housing; use a drift.
- 5 Press the shaft assembly in the pump housing.
- 6 Invert the water pump housing and press the impeller on the water pump shaft.

- 7 Rotate the water pump shaft and check that the impeller does not touch the water pump housing. If the impeller touches the water pump housing, replace it.
- 8 Fit the rear cover with a new gasket.
- 9 Check the water pump shaft for free rotation.
- 10 Fix the water pump pulley and fan
- 11 Ensure the tightness of fan and water pump pulley.

— — — — —

## TASK 4 : Refitting and testing

- 1 Apply grease on both side of the pump gasket
- 2 Fix the gasket between water pump and engine
- 3 Fix the water pump mounting bolts and ensure the specified tightness of mountings
- 4 Connect the fan belt and radiator hoses

- 5 Fill the coolant in the radiator
- 6 Start the engine and check noise from the water pump
- 7 Ensure no noise and leaks from the water pump

— — — — —



## Replace oil filter and change the engine oil

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

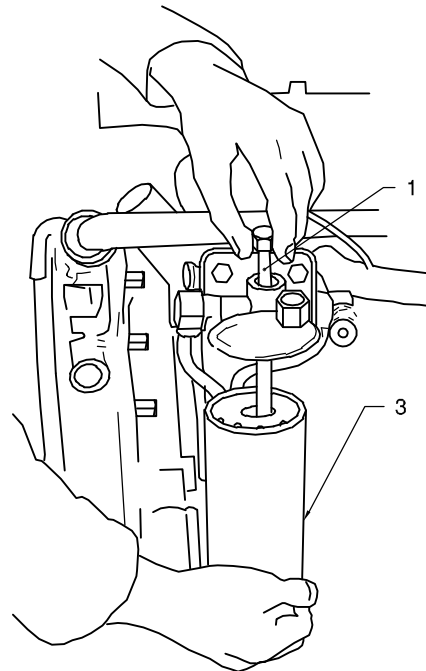
- **change the engine oil.**

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Tray	- 1 No.
Equipments/Machineries		• Cotton waste/Banjan cloth	- as reqd.
• Multi-cylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
		• Soap oil	- as reqd.
		• Lube oil as prescribed by the manufacturer, Filter elements	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Start the engine and warm up till the operating temperature is achieved.
- 2 Stop the engine.
- 3 Unscrew the engine oil dipstick.
- 4 Check the level and condition of the oil (using a dip stick).
- 5 If engine oil colour changed into brown or black, sludge or contaminated change engine oil and filter.
- 6 Unscrew the pan drain plug and drain oil completely.
- 7 Change the oil filter in the bowl (Fig 1). Ensure that the washer and spring are fitted in correct position.
- 8 Check the drain plug gasket washer and replace it, if found damaged.
- 9 Refill the engine oil with the correct grade of oil as recommended by the manufacturer.
- 10 While refilling check the oil level by the dip stick till the oil level reaches the upto level mark.
- 11 Refit the oil filling cap.
- 12 Start the engine and warm up.
- 13 Check the oil leak through the drain plug and filter; if a leak is found rectify the leakage.
- 14 Stop the engine and check the oil level with the dip stick. If required Top - up oil till the oil level reaches the maximum mark on the dip stick.
- 15 Start the engine and observe the oil pressure at the idling speed of 600 to 700 r.p.m., 1000 r.p.m., 1500 r.p.m. and 2500 r.p.m. Observe the engine speed with the help of a tachometer and note down all the readings and compare them with the manufacturer's specifications.

Fig 1



MYN1869H1

**Overhaul oil pump, oil pipe line, oil cooler, air cleaner and adjust oil pressure relief valve**

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **dismantle the oil pump**
- **check the clearances and endplay**
- **assemble the oil pump**
- **service oil cooler**
- **adjust oil pressure relief valve.**
- **service air cleaner (dry type)**
- **service air cleaner (oil bath type)**
- **service charge air cooler.**

**Requirements**

**Tools/Instruments**

- Trainees tool kit - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 Set.
- Feeler gauge, Puller - 1 No.
- Straight edge - 1 No.

**Equipments/Machineries**

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

**Materials/Components**

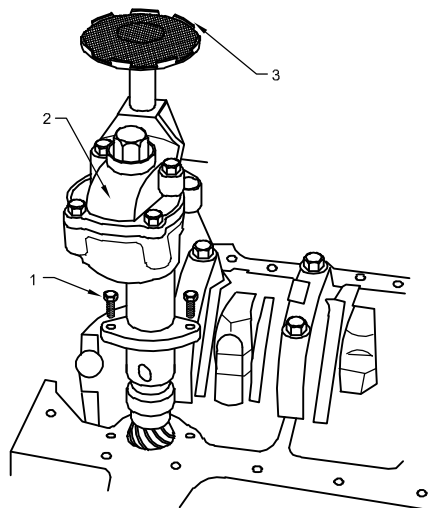
- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.
- Oil filter - as reqd.
- Air cleaner filter - as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Dismantling**

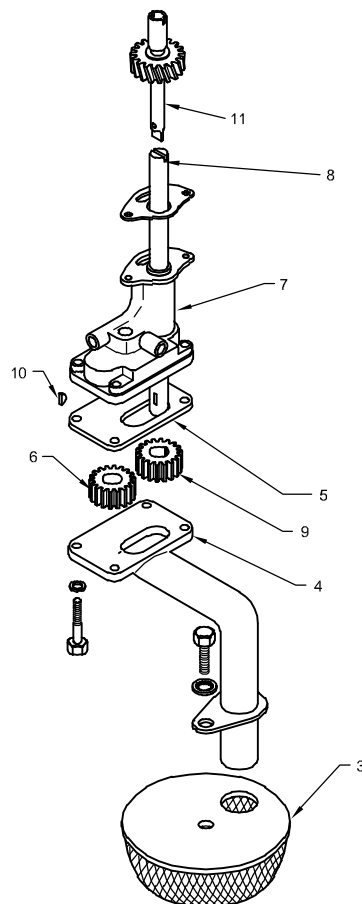
- 1 Remove the oil sump.
- 2 Remove the oil pump mounting bolts/nuts (1) (Fig 1).

Fig 1



- 3 Take out the oil pump (2) along with the strainer (3).
- 4 Remove the strainer assembly (3) from the pump.
- 5 Remove the oil pump end cover (4) (Fig 2).
- 6 Remove the pump cover packing (5).

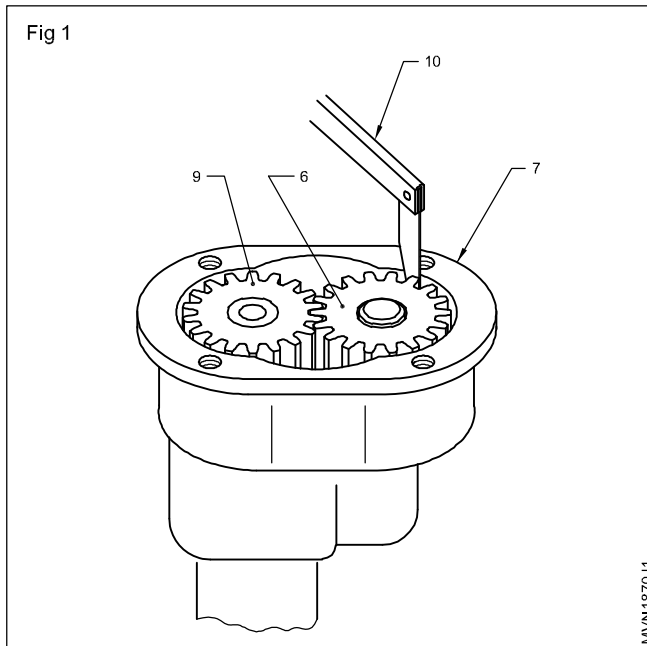
Fig 2



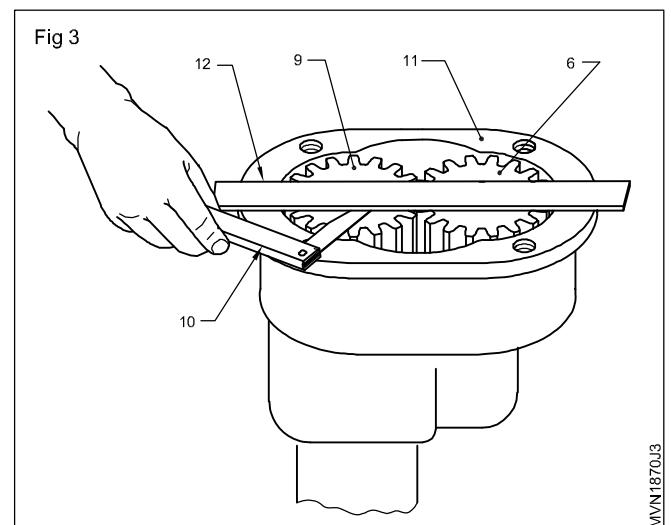
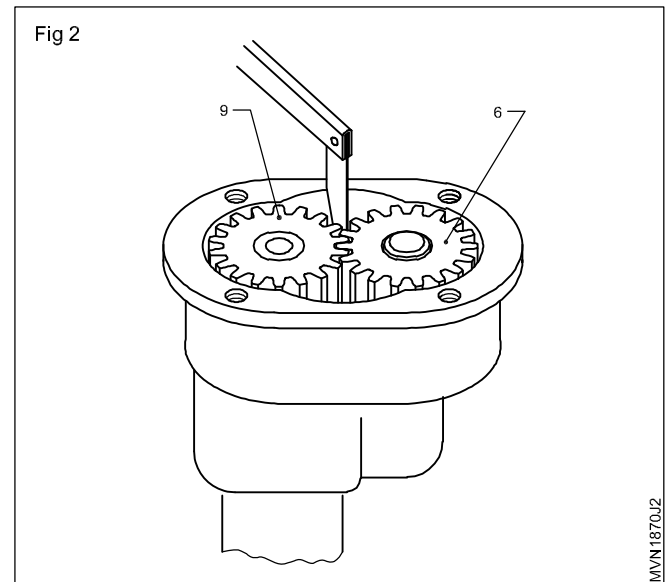
- 7 Remove the idler gear (6) from the oil pump housing (7).
- 8 Remove the driving gear (9) with the shaft (8).
- 9 Press out the driving gear from the drive shaft.
- 10 Remove the woodruff key (10) from the driving shaft.
- 11 Remove the driving gear by using the puller.

## TASK 2: Cleaning and Inspection

- 1 Clean all the parts by kerosene oil.
- 2 Clean the suction pipe by compressed air.
- 3 Inspect visually the gears and shafts for pitting and damage.



- 4 Check visually the contact surface of the oil pump housing and cover for scoring marks.
- 5 Check the radial clearance between the oil pump housing (7) and gear teeth with a feeler gauge (10) (Fig 1).
- 6 Check the backlash between the oil pump gears (9&6) with a feeler gauge (Fig 2).
- 7 Check the depth of the gears (6 & 9) from the oil pump housing surface (11) by using a straight edge (12) and feeler gauge (10) (Fig 3).
- 8 Check the condition of the strainer for damage and blockage and clean the blockage of strainer.



- 9 Check the suction pipe for cracks, damage and blockage and clean the blockage through air pressure.
- 10 If any damage/cracks in oil flow pipe and unions repair or replace it.

## TASK 3: Assembling

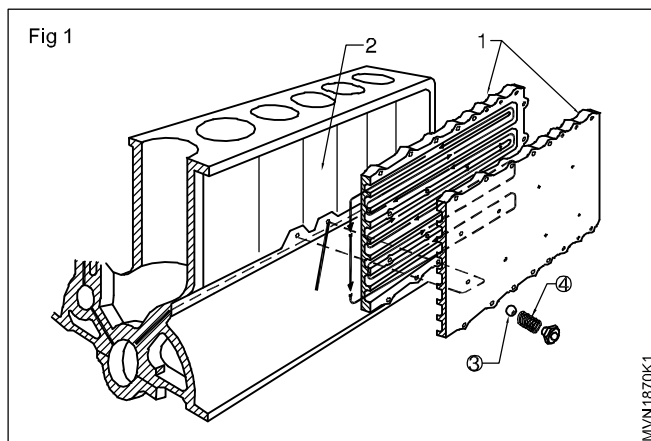
- 1 Fix the driving gear (9) on the driving shaft (8) with a new woodruff key by using a press.
- 2 Place the driving gear (9) with the shaft (8) in the pump housing (7).
- 3 Place the driven gear (6) on spindle in the pump housing.
- 4 Place the pump housing packing and align the holes.

- 5 Place the pump cover, align the holes and tighten the pump cover bolts.
- 6 Check for the free rotation of gears.
- 7 Fit the suction strainer (3).
- 8 Insert the oil pump into the crankcase.
- 9 Tighten the mounting bolts to the specified torque.

- 10 Install the oil sump with a new gasket.
- 11 Fill recommended oil in the sump up to the correct level.
- 12 Start the engine.
- 13 Note down the oil pressure at the various r.p.m.s and compare them with the manufacturer's specification.

#### TASK 4: Servicing of oil cooler

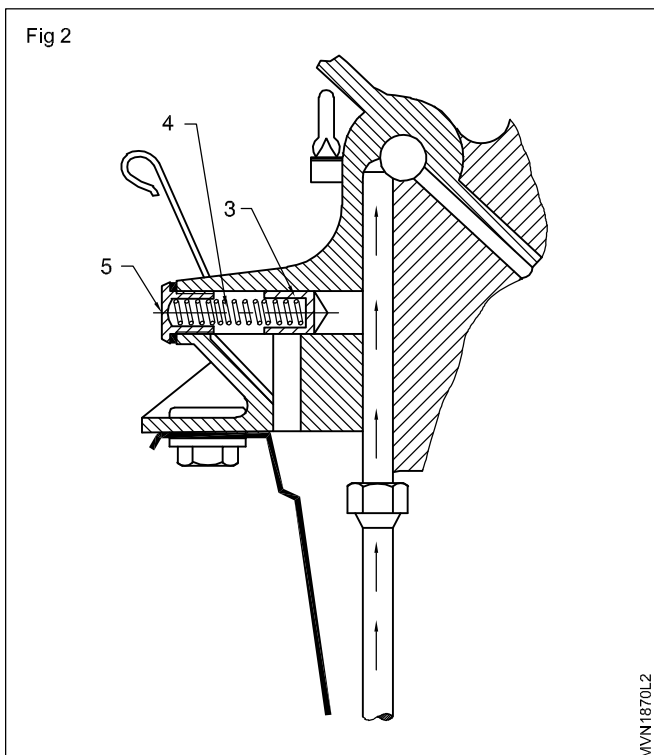
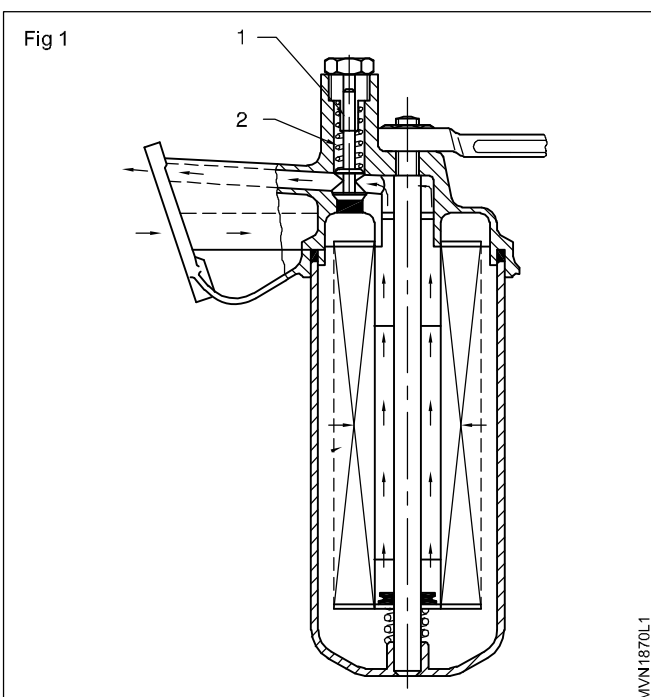
- 1 Remove the oil cooler (1) from the engine block (2) (Fig1).
- 2 Remove by pass valve (3) and spring (4).



- 3 Clean the oil cooler with kerosene oil and compressed air.
- 4 Check oil cooler for crack.
- 5 Check the bypass valve ball (3). If necessary replace the bypass valve ball.
- 6 Check the bypass valve spring's (4) free length and tension. Replace the spring if necessary.
- 7 Fix gasket and washer in between oil cooler's halves, with the help of grease and fix the screws.
- 8 Fix gasket on the cylinder block (2).
- 9 Fit the oil cooler and tighten all the screws at recommended torque in correct sequence.
- 10 Fit the bypass valve ball, spring and tighten retaining nut with washer.

#### TASK 5: Adjust oil pressure relief valve

- 1 Remove the bypass valve (1) (Fig 1) from the filter head.
- 2 Remove the oil pressure relief valve closing plug (5).



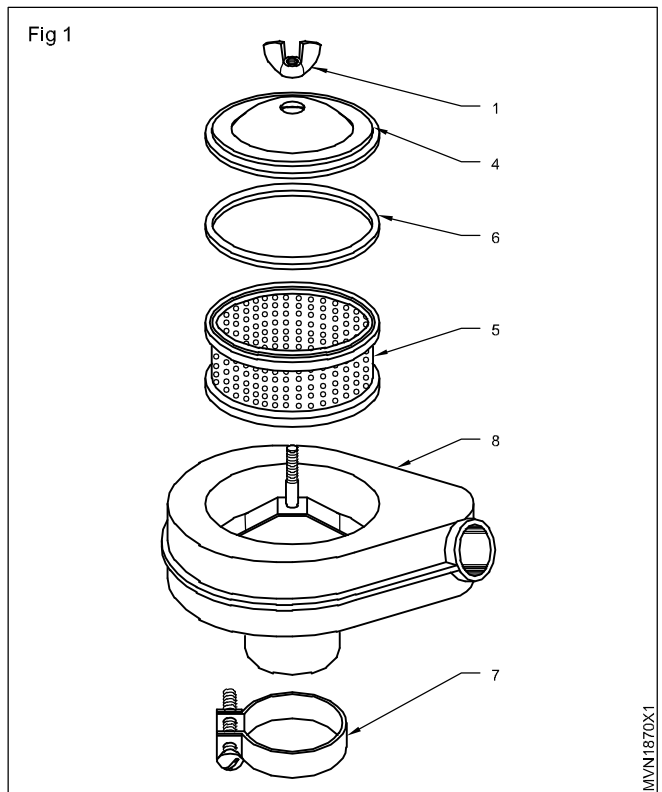
- 3 Remove the oil pressure relief valve (3) and pressure spring (4) (Fig 2).
- 4 Check visually the oil pressure relief valve seating area of the crank case, for pitting.
- 5 Check the filter bypass valve spring for damage and tension.
- 6 Check the filter bypass valve seating area for pitting/scoring.
- 7 Place the bypass valve in its seat on the filter head.
- 8 Place the spring over the bypass valve.
- 9 Tighten the bypass valve holder.
- 10 Place the oil pressure relief valve and spring in its seating in the crank case.

- 11 Tighten the pressure adjusting screw.
- 12 Tighten the closing plug.
- 13 Start the engine and warm up.
- 14 Check for leakage of oil from the filter edge, bypass valve, centre bolt and pipe connection.
- 15 Check the oil pressure on the oil pressure gauge.
- 16 Correct it if necessary by adjusting the relief valve spring tension. To increase the oil pressure, tighten the pressure adjusting screw and to decrease the oil pressure, loosen the adjusting screw.

#### TASK 6 : **Service air cleaner** (Dry type)

- 1 Open the bonnet.
- 2 Unscrew the bolt or wing-nut (1) of the air cleaner with the help of a spanner or plier (Fig 1).
- 3 Remove the top cover (4) with the filter element (5) and gasket (6).
- 4 Loosen the nuts/fixing clip (7) fixing the air cleaner on the inlet manifold.
- 5 Remove the bottom case (8) of the air cleaner.
- 6 Clean the air cleaner housing and cover with cloth.
- 7 Inspect the filter element (5). If it is clogged, replace the same.
- 8 Blow off the dust from the inside element by compressed air.
- 9 If the element is heavily dirty, wash it with a household type detergent
- 10 After washing rinse the detergent out of the element and dry it completely
- 11 Check visually the cleaned element (5) for puncture of damage. Discard if it is found punctured or damaged.
- 12 Check the plastic or rubber gasket ring (6) for smoothness which acts as a gasket
- 13 Place the new or old element (5) in the lower housing (8).
- 14 Put the plastic gasket ring (6) on the element (5).

Fig 1



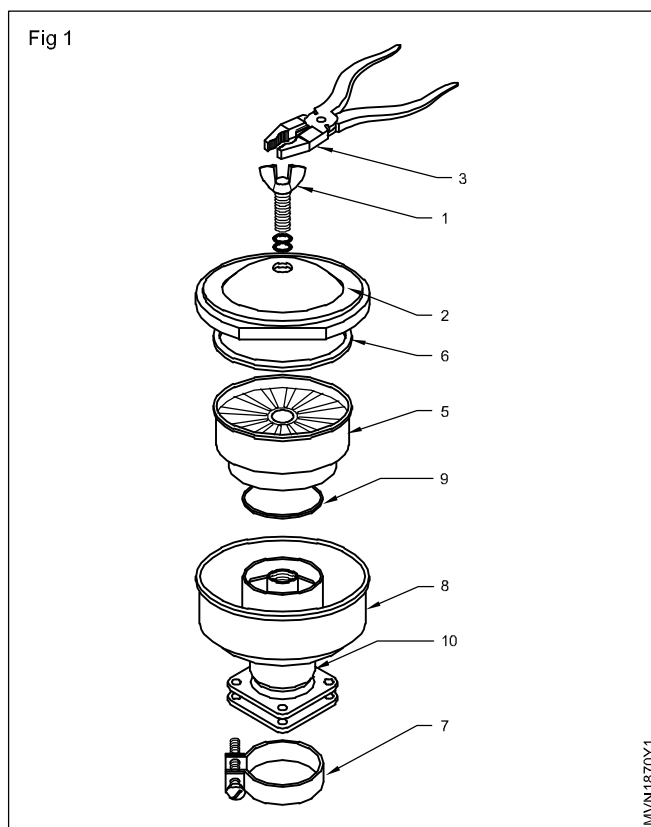
- 15 Put the top cover (4) on the element (5).
- 16 Tighten the wingnut (1) with the help of a plier.
- 17 Test the air cleaner by starting the engine for smooth running.

#### TASK 7: **Service air cleaner** (Oil bath type)

- 1 Open the bonnet of the vehicle.
- 2 Unscrew the bolt or wing-nut (1) on the top cover (2) by hand or plier (3) (Fig 1).
- 3 Remove the top cover (2) with the element (5) and gaskets (6 & 9).

- 4 Loosen the nuts/fixing clip (7) of the lower portion (10) of the air cleaner.
- 5 Remove the bowl (8) from the inlet manifold or carburettor.
- 6 Drain the oil from the bowl (8) and clean the sludge.

- 7 Using a piece of cardboard, block the opening of the air intake on the inlet manifold/carburettor to avoid entry of foreign material.
- 8 Pour a little diesel/ kerosene over the air cleaner element (5). Hold it in vertical position. Rotate and stir the element by hand until all the dust is absorbed by the oil. Drain the used oil. Repeat the procedure until all the dust or dirt is removed from the wire mesh.
- 9 Blow compressed air under reduced pressure over the wire mesh from the opposite side and dry the element.
- 10 Clean the bottom case (bowl) (8) of the air cleaner with diesel/kerosene and wipe with clean cloth.
- 11 Check the filter element and the wire mesh for damage and clogging of dust. If damaged, replace with a new one.
- 12 Check the gasket ring (6) and clean it; if damaged replace the gasket ring.
- 13 Check the threads of the top cover mounting bolts/wing-nut (1).
- 14 Check the air cleaner bowl (bottom case) for damage.
- 15 Mount the bowl (bottom portion) on the engine manifold or on the carburettor by tightening the fixing nuts or bolts of the clip (7).
- 16 Refill the air cleaner bowl /housing up to the oil level mark with clean, recommended grade of oil.
- 17 Place the gasket (9) and install the filter element (5) in the housing bowl(8).

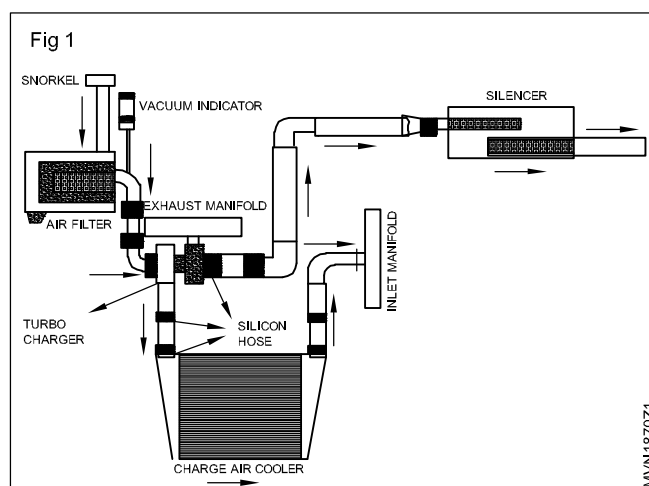


18 Place the gasket ring (6) and fit the cover (2) by tightening the wing-nut (1).

19 Start the engine and check the performance of the engine for smooth running.

### TASK 3: Servicing charge air cooler (Fig 1)

- 1 Remove charge air cooler mounted along side or a head of radiator by removing the bolts.
- 2 Disconnect hose pipe connection from both LHS & RHS.
- 3 Clean external fins by controlled water jet.
- 4 Clean interior passage by pressurise water and dry the same.
- 5 Check for leaks by blocking one end and applying air pressure in the other end and dip the CAC completely in water.
- 6 Look for leaking air bubbles.
- 7 If there is a leakage follow the manufacturer's guide line to repair it.
- 8 If leakage from welded joints and severe, this may have to be replaced.
- 9 Refit the cleaned & tested CAC and connect the silicon hoses.



**CAC is made of aluminium & fins are welded - needs adequate care in handling.**

## Overhaul the turbocharger

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove turbocharger from vehicle
- dismantle turbocharger
- clean, replace or repair defective parts
- assemble and check turbocharger
- refit turbocharger on vehicle and start the engine.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- |                      |         |
|----------------------|---------|
| • Trainee's tool kit | - 1 No  |
| • Circlip plier      | - 1 No  |
| • Box spanner        | - 1 set |
| • Dial gauge         | - 1 No  |
| • Torque wrench      | - 1 No  |
| • Plastic mallet     | - 1 No  |

#### Equipments/Machineries

- |                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| • Work bench   | - 1 No. |
| • Turbocharger | - 1 No. |

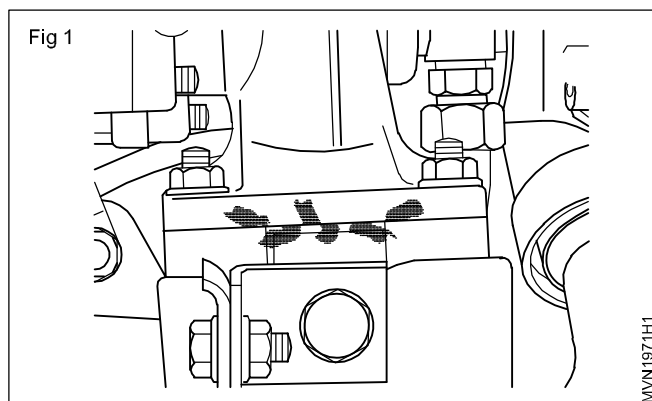
#### Materials/Components

- |                           |            |
|---------------------------|------------|
| • Kerosene                | - as reqd. |
| • Cotton cloth            | - as reqd. |
| • Anti corrosive solution | - as reqd. |
| • Cleaning brush          | - 1 No     |
| • Turbochager accessories | - as reqd. |

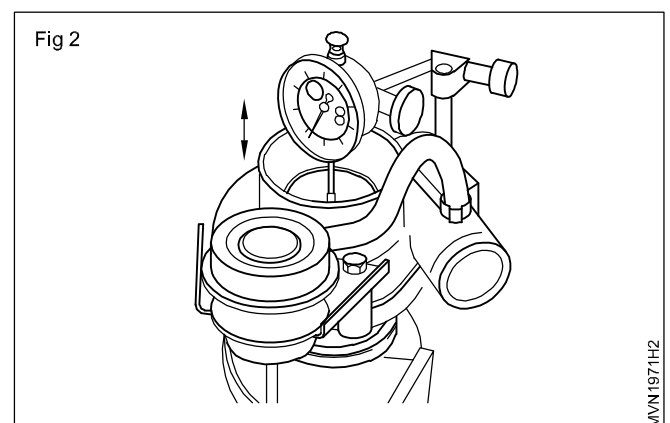
## PROCEDURE

### Removal

- 1 Park the vehicle on level surface.
- 2 Make sure the engine is cool-down. Open the hood and remove the battery cables.
- 3 Remove the compressor side hose clamp of hose pipe.
- 4 Disconnect the oil connections/pipes from turbo charger and vacuum connections of actuator.
- 5 Remove the mounting bolts of turbine side.
- 6 Remove the turbo charger from vehicle and place it on working table (Fig 1).

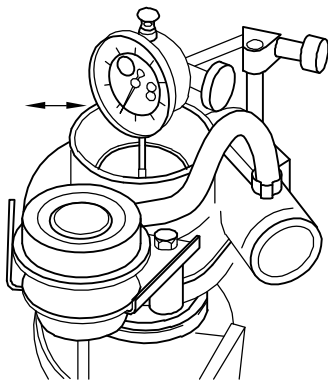


- 7 Check visually for cracked, bent or damaged compressor wheel blades.
- 8 Check bearing clearances-secure the turbine hosing and check the thrust clearance using a dial gauge. Ensure clearance is within MIN/MAX values. If axial clearance does not meet specification than overhaul to strip and rebuild the turbocharger. (Fig 2)



- 9 Check the radial movement at compressor impeller nose using a dial gauge (Fig 3).

Fig 3



MVN1971H3

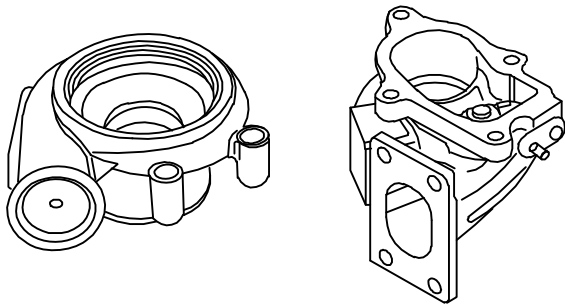
**Ensure movement is within MIN/MAX TIR (Total Indicator Reading) values.**

**If radial movement does not meet specification than overhaul to strip rebuild the turbo charger.**

### Dismantling/Cleaning

10 Clean turbo charger external surface and inspect for cracks and damages (Fig 4).

Fig 4



MVN1971H4

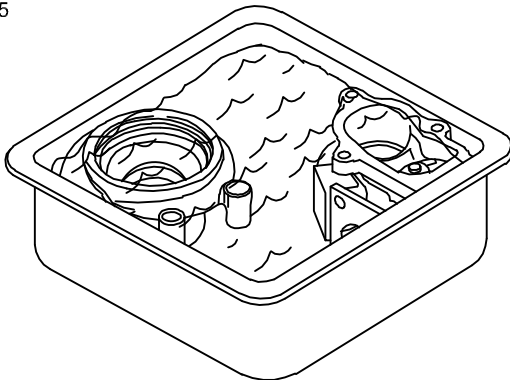
11 Remove actuator and placed in tray.

12 Remove 'V' band clamp and remove turbine body.

13 Remove circlip and remove the compressor body.

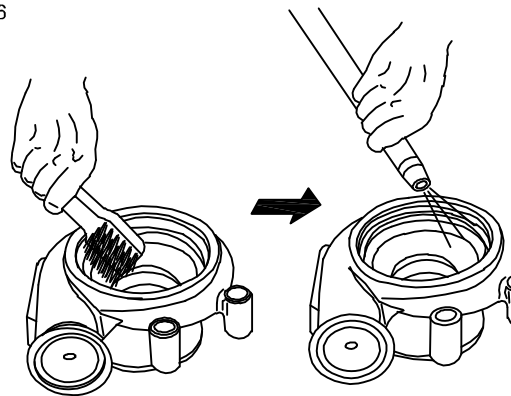
14 Remove the drive and driven impeller by loosening the impeller nuts (Fig 5 & Fig 6).

Fig 5



MVN1971H5

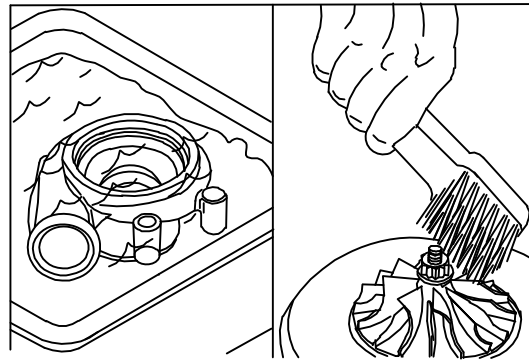
Fig 6



MVN1971H6

15 Remove both the impellers and place into tray (Fig 7).

Fig 7



MVN1971H7

16 Remove impeller shaft with bearing.

17 Remove "O" rings from both side of turbo charger body.

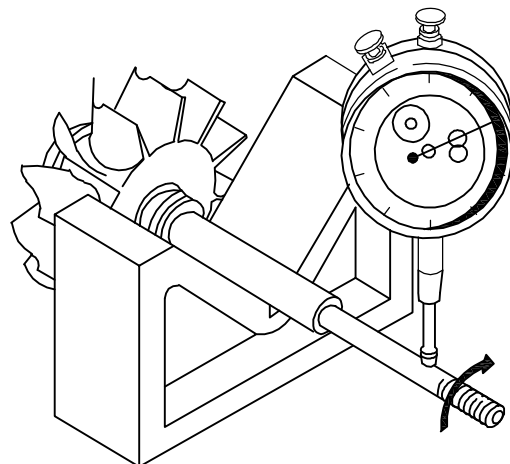
18 Remove thrust plate and "O" ring from turbo charger body.

19 Clean the above parts with kerosene except rubber parts (Fig 7, Fig 8 & Fig 9).

### Inspection and repair

20 Inspect bearing and shaft free play. (Fig.8)

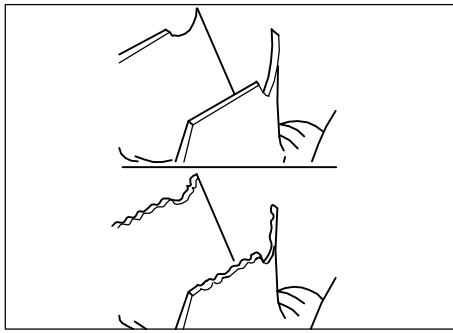
Fig 8



MVN1971H8



Fig 9



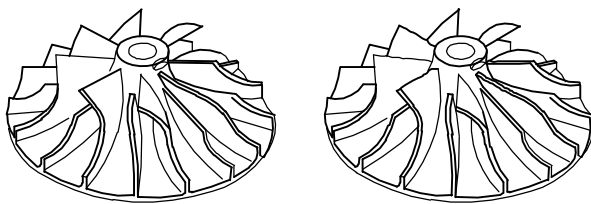
MVN1971H9

21 Check rubber "O" rings for crack or tear.

22 Check both impellers, shaft, thrust plate.(Fig 10)

23 If necessary replace faulty parts.

Fig 10

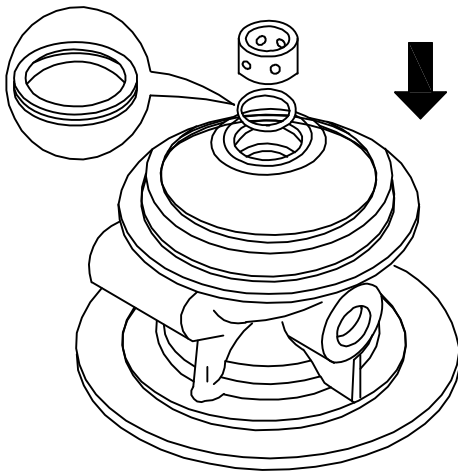


MVN1971HA

### Assembling and testing (Fig.15)

24 Assemble rubber "O" ring and thrust washer in turbo charger body (Fig 11).

Fig 11



MVN1971HB

25 Fit external circlip of thrust washer and insert impeller shaft along with bearing (Fig 12).

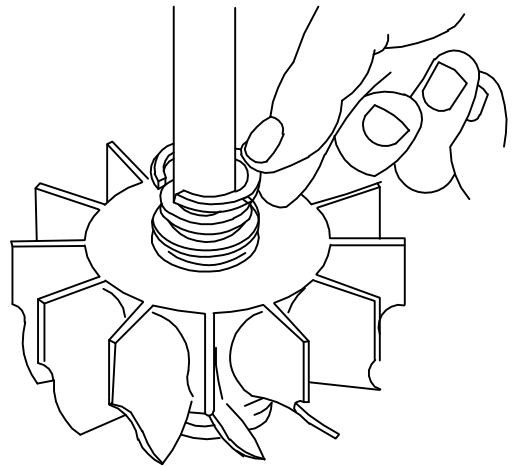
26 Fit both the impellers with impeller nuts (Fig 13).

27 Check impeller shaft free-play and end play and check impeller free movement (Fig 14).

28 Fit compressor and turbine flange with circlip and "V" band clamp respectively.

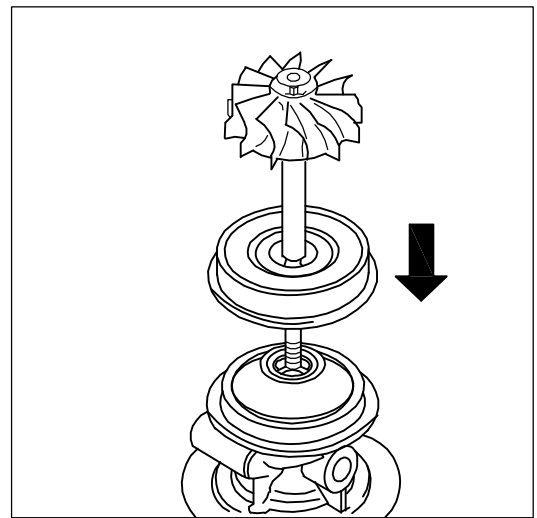
29 Refit actuator on turbo charger.

Fig 12



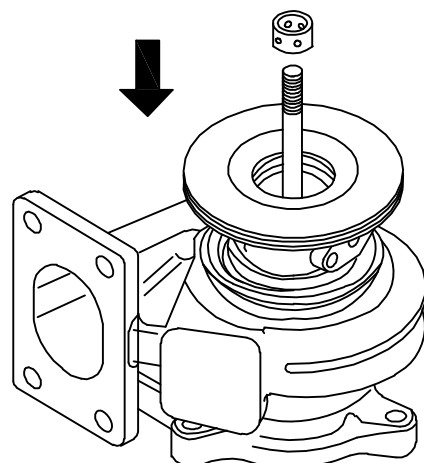
MVN1971HC

Fig 13



MVN1971HD

Fig 14



MVN1971HE

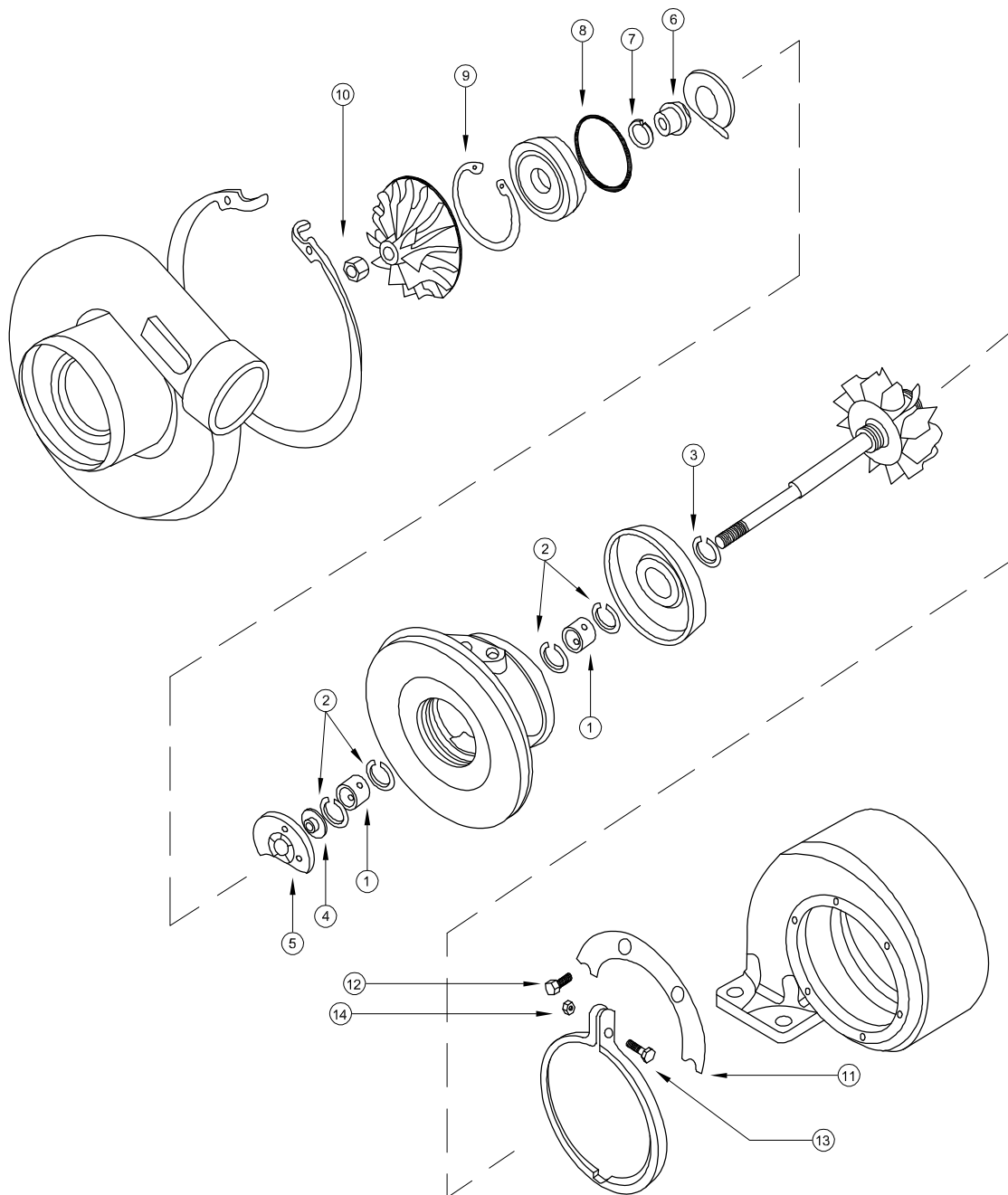
### Refitting (Fig 15)

30 Fit the turbo charger on mounting and tighten the mounting bolts of manifold.

31 Reconnect the oil pipe on turbo charger. Connect hose pipe on compressor side.

32 Start the engine and check for proper functioning of the engine.

Fig 15



MVN1971HF

## Check the exhaust system in engine

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- examine the exhaust system of an engine.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee tools kit - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

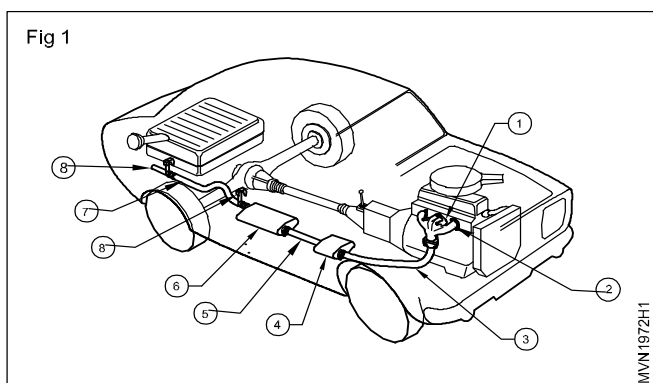
- Heavy motor vehicle - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Tray - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Strap - as reqd.
- Gas welding plant - 1 No
- Welding wire - as reqd

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Examine the exhaust system of an engine in off mode (Fig 1)



- 1 Visually check the exhaust manifold(1) mounting(2) tightness and gasket leakage symptoms
- 2 Examine the heat strap and exhaust damper damages

- 3 Examine the downpipe connection (3) gasket and mounting with exhaust manifold flange
- 4 Examine both side mountings of catalytic converter (4)
- 5 Visually check the outside damages of resonator pipe (5)
- 6 Visually check the muffler mountings (6) and connections
- 7 Visually check the loose connection of tail pipe (7)
- 8 Visually check the exhaust pipe having strap (8) with vehicle body
- 9 Visually check the deteriorate parts in exhaust system
- 10 Visually check the exhaust pipe dent and damages

### TASK 2: Examine the exhaust system of an engine running mode

- 1 Start the engine
- 2 Identify leak in between the engine head and exhaust manifold joint (Gasket)
- 3 Conform the leakage by spraying soap water on it
- 4 Stop the engine and allow to cool
- 5 Remove and clean the surface and studs with the helps rust remove and emery paper
- 6 Place a new gasket, align and tighten it with recommended torque
- 7 Restart the engine and check the leakage
- 8 Identify leaks by loose connection between muffler and tail pipe
- 9 Dismantle the fittings, remove carbon, rust and clean
- 10 Apply metal sealing compound in between sleeve
- 11 Join the tail pipe and properly tighten it.
- 12 Restart the engine and check its smooth running without noise
- 13 Ensure, there is no exhaust gas leaks in the exhaust system.

## Remove and refit exhaust manifold

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove and clean the manifold, silencer, tail pipe and refit.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainees tools kit - 1 No.
- Scraper - 1 No.
- Straight edge - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

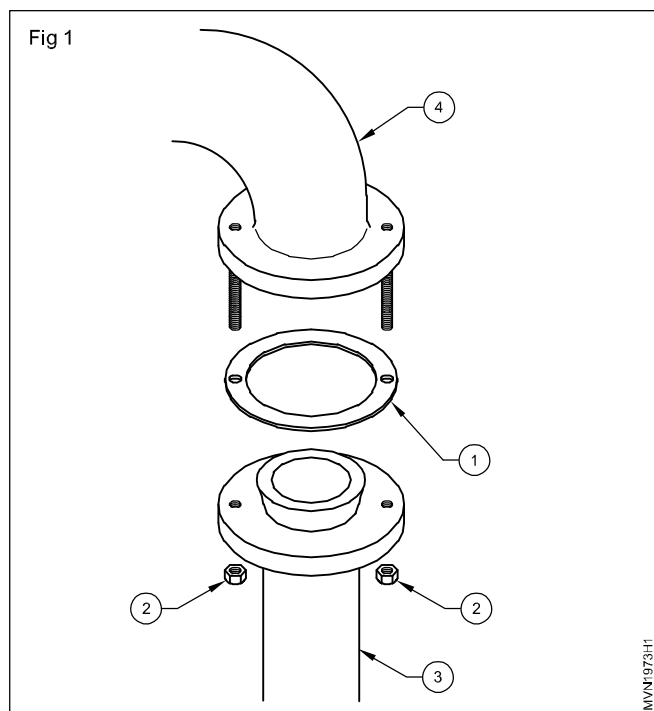
- Diesel Engine Vehicle - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

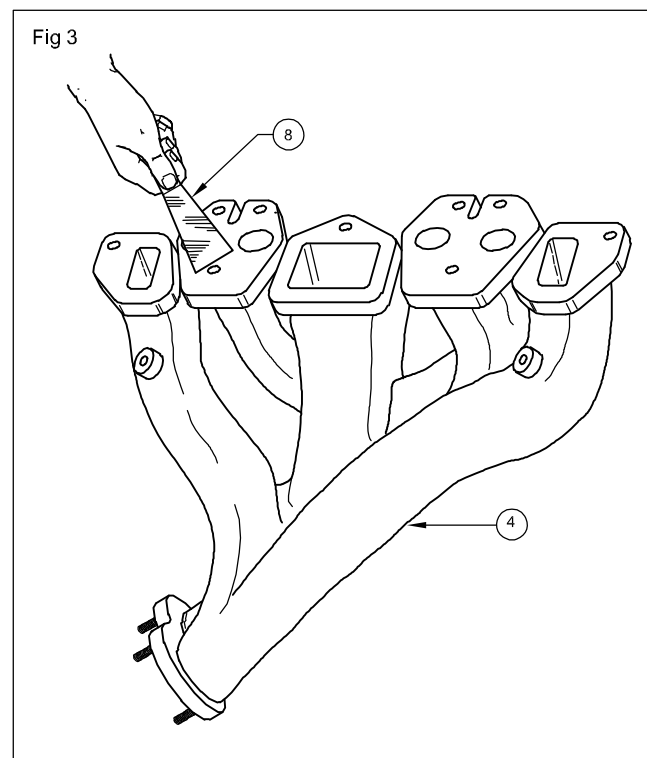
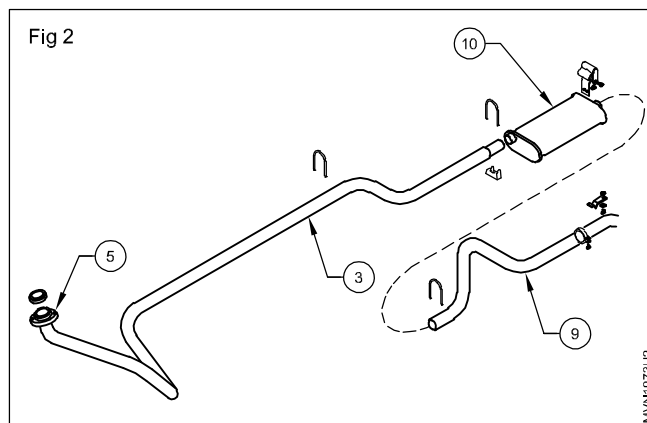
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Cleaning cloth - as reqd.
- Energy paper - as reqd.
- Wire rope - as reqd.
- New gaskets - as reqd.

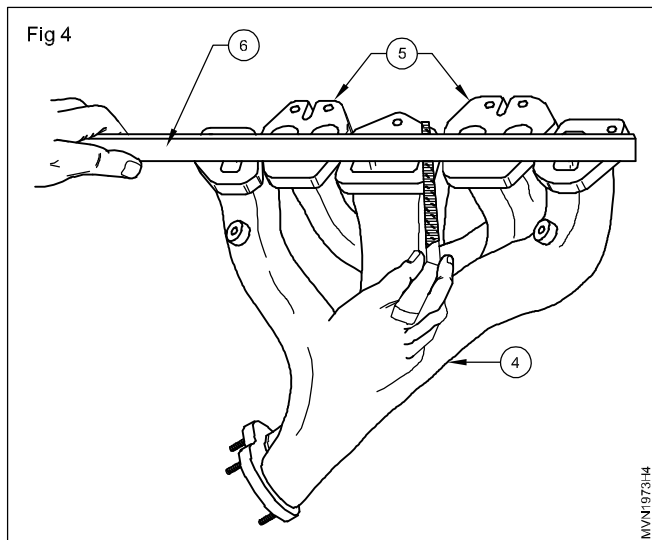
### PROCEDURE

- 1 Loosen the nuts (2) and disconnect the exhaust pipe (3) from the exhaust manifold (4). (Fig 1)

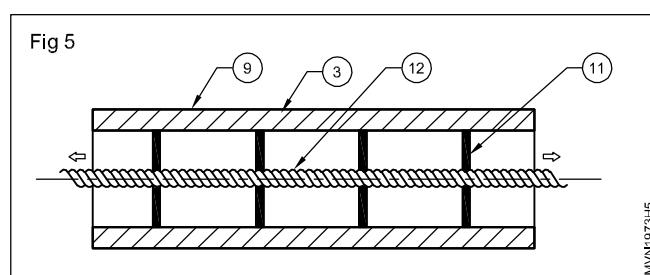


- 2 Remove the exhaust manifold (4) from the cylinder head.
- 3 Disconnect the exhaust pipe (3) and tailpipe (9) from the muffler (10) after loosening the clamp bolts and nuts. (Fig 2)
- 4 Scrape the carbon deposits from the mounting faces of the manifold with a scraper (8). (Fig 3)
- 5 Inspect the manifold flanges (5) for alignment of level by using a straight edge (6). (Fig 4)





- 6 Scrape the carbon deposit from the exhaust manifold using a wire/brush. (In some engines the exhaust manifold is in more than one piece. Remove them separately and clean.)
- 7 Inspect the exhaust manifold for any damage/crack. Replace, if necessary.
- 8 Inspect the tailpipe (9) and exhaust pipe (3) for any crack/damage etc.
- 9 Attach the scrapers (11) on the wire rope (12). (Fig 5)
- 10 Insert a wire rope (12) in the exhaust pipe (3) and tailpipe (9) till it comes out at the other end. Clean the exhaust pipe and tailpipe by passing a wire rope through (Fig 5).



- 11 For cleaning the muffler (10) some manufacturers recommend to cut the outer cover and weld after cleaning the baffles inside. (Consult your instructor.)
- 12 Remove the inlet manifold and clean and inspect it following the same procedure adopted for the exhaust manifold.
- 13 Fix the new gasket for the inlet manifold and fit the inlet manifold, to the cylinder block.
- 14 Fix new gaskets on the exhaust manifold flange and fit the exhaust manifold (4).
- 15 Fix a new gasket (1) between the exhaust manifold and exhaust pipe (3) and fit the exhaust pipe on the exhaust manifold.
- 16 Fit the muffler (10) with the exhaust pipe and tighten the clamp. (Fig 1)
- 17 Fit the tailpipe (9) on the muffler and tighten the clamp.
- 18 Align the assembly and fix it in the supporting clamps to the chassis.

-----

## Remove and refit catalytic converter

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove and clean the manifold, silencer, tail pipe and refit.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainees tools kit	- 1 No.	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
• Scraper	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Straight edge	- 1 No.	• Cleaning cloth	- as reqd.
• Feeler gauge	- 1 No.	• Energy paper	- as reqd.
• Scraper	- 1 No.	• Wire rope	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Manifold gaskets	- as reqd.
• Diesel Engine Vehicle	- 1 No.	• Flange, nuts, bolts	- as reqd.
• Wrench	- 1 No.	• Flex joints	- as reqd.
• Rotary saw	- 1 No.		
• Hydraulic Jack	- 1 No.		

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Park the vehicle in level plate
  - 2 Jack the vehicle up at four wheels and support on jack stands
  - 3 Allow the vehicles exhaust to cool down
  - 4 Locate the catalytic converter
  - 5 Remove the O<sub>2</sub> (oxygen) sensor from the catalytic converter (In modern vehicle more sensors are available)
  - 6 Apply penetrating oil to the holes
  - 7 Unbolt the catalytic converter by socket with ratchet wrench slide it down
  - 8 If the converter is actually welded, use a rotary saw. (Make sure to raise the vehicle enough to give space for free movement underneath the vehicle. Set the parking brake and use stoppers or wooden blocks under the tyre.)
  - 10 Hold the converter with one hand align it with another hand.
  - 11 Replace new gaskets, bolts and nuts.
  - 12 Tighten them manually. Make minor adjustments as needed. Tighten down all the bolts.
  - 13 If welding required, use the welding expert (be sure to all the welds to cool to a safe temperature).
  - 14 Screw the oxygen sensor back into place.
  - 15 Check to make sure the attached wiring is secured.
  - 16 Check the engine lighting
  - 17 Start the engine check the leakage between the gaskets and welding.
- Caution: While aligning flange, gaskets use only mallet.**

## Installation of catalytic converter

- 9 Put the new catalytic converter in the position where it will eventually be installed to check and make sure it is pointed in the right direction (where showed be an arrow indicating correct side is facing down)

## Test the MPFI components and its sensors

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- locate the various parts of MPFI and sensors.
- test MPFI components (temperature sensor, pressure sensor, throttle position sensor, CKP sensor)

### Requirements

#### Tools / Instruments

- Trainees tool kits - 1 Set
- Engine scan tool - 1 No.

#### Equipments

- MPFI engine / vehicle - 1 No.

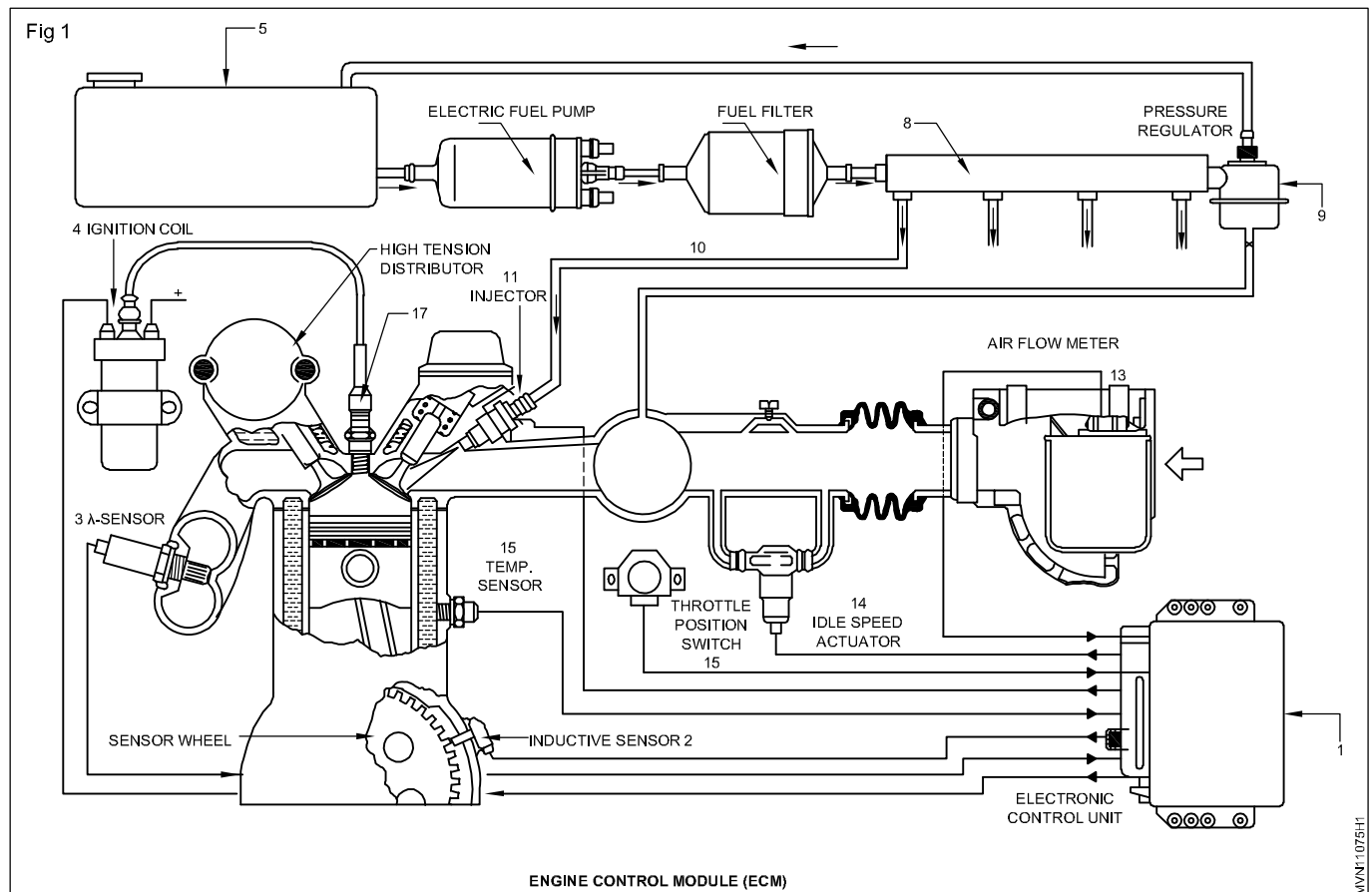
#### Materials

- Tray - 1 No.
- Banian cloth - 1 No.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Locate the various parts of MPFI and sensors (Fig.1)

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Locate the ECM(1)  | 6 Locate the electric fuel pump (6) |
| 2 Locate the fly wheel and the crank shaft position sensor (2) | 7 Locate the fuel filter (7)        |
| 3 Locate the oxygen / $\gamma$ sensor (3)                      | 8 Locate the common rail (8)        |
| 4 Locate the ignition coil (4)                                 | 9 Locate the pressure regulator (9) |
| 5 Locate the fuel tank (5)                                     | 10 Locate fuel delivery line (10)   |
|  | 11 Locate the petrol injector (11)  |



12 Locate the accumulator (12)

13 Locate intake air pressure sensor (13)

14 Locate idle speed actuator (14)

15 Locate the throttle speed switch (15)

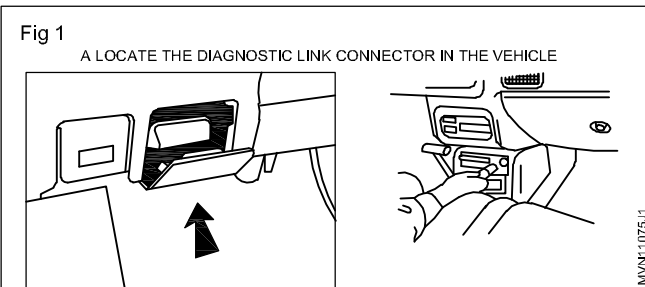
16 Locate the engine temperature sensor (16)

17 Locate the spark plug (17)

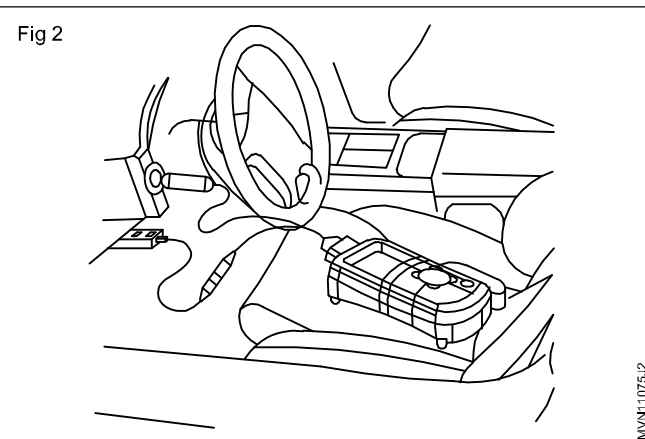
---

## TASK 2: Identify the E.C.U. and engine scanner and test the electronic control unit.

- 1 Select the scan tool related service manual for the vehicle.
- 2 Attach the proper test connector cable and power lead to the scan tool.
- 3 Ensure that the ignition switch is in the 'OFF' position.
- 4 Attach the correct diagnostic connector. (Fig.1)



- 5 Attach the scan tool test connector cable to the diagnostic connector. If necessary, use the proper adapter to connect the scan tool. (Fig.2)



**OBD II scan tools are powered from terminal 16 of the diagnostic connector, and no other power connection are needed.**

- 6 Observe the scan tools screen to ensure that the scan tool is working properly. Most scan tools will complete an internal self check and notify the technician if there is a software (or) communication problem.

- 7 Enter vehicle information as needed to program the scan tool

- Most OBD II scan tools automatically read the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). When the ignition switch is turned to the 'ON' position. This gives the scan tool the information needed to check for codes and perform other operation.
- Older scan tools are programmed with the proper vehicle information by entering the vehicle year, engine type and other information. This information is usually contained in certain numbers and letters in the VIN.

- 8 Turn the ignition key to the 'ON' position.
- 9 Observe the scan tool to determine whether any trouble codes are present.
- 10 List all trouble codes as indicates in scan tool.
- 11 List all trouble codes as indicated in scan tool.
- 12 Use the scan tool literature (or) service manual to determine the meaning of the cods.
- 13 Erase the trouble codes shown in the scan tool.
- 14 Switch 'OFF' the 'ignition and switch on again.
- 15 Erase the trouble codes shown in the scan tool.
- 16 Switch 'OFF' the ignition and switch on again.
- 17 Check the engine indicator in OFF position. If not, some problems with the electronic management system (EMS).
- 18 When the test is completed, turn the ignition switch to the 'OFF' position.
- 19 Remove the san tool test connection cable from the diagnostic connector.

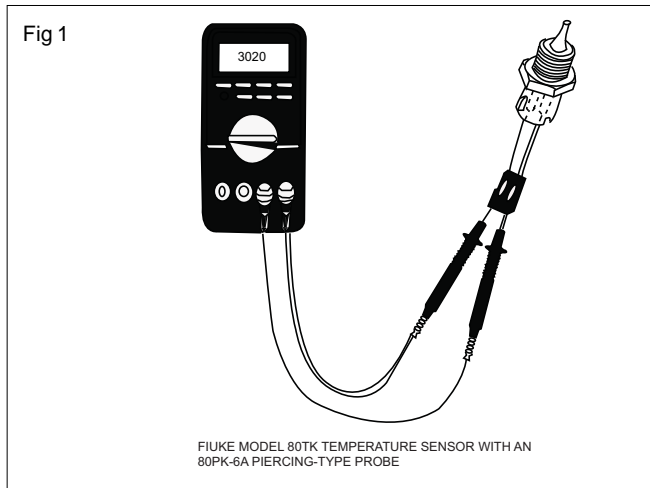
---

## TASK 3: Temperature sensor (Fig 1)

- 1 First open the bonnet by removing the lock

- 2 Locate the temperature sensor, mostly it is located in the thermostat valve region.



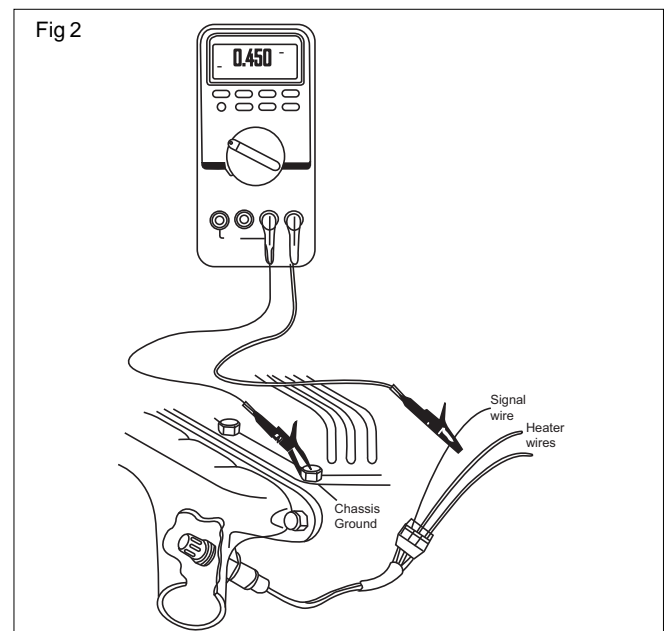


- 3 Set the multimeter in the resistance measuring mode.
- 4 Ground the black terminal, connect the red terminal to the temperature sensor, measure the resistance.
- 5 Turn the engine on, run for two to three minutes to warm up the engine.
- 6 Now measure the resistance with the same procedure.
- 7 If the difference in resistance is more than 200 ohms the sensor is in good condition.
- 8 If the difference is not more than 200 ohms. Replace the temperature sensor.

#### TASK 4: Pressure sensor (Fig 2)

Air intake pressure, atmospheric pressure, vapor pressure in the fuel tank and fuel injection pressure sensors are the types of sensors used in the vehicle. But the testing procedure of the sensors used in the vehicle is same of all the sensors.

- 1 Identify the location of the sensor.
- 2 Use the multimeter, set in AC mV range.
- 3 Start the engine, keep it in running.
- 4 Ground the black terminal
- 5 Touch the red terminal
- 6 If any voltage say at about 200 to 400mV then the sensor is functioning correctly.
- 7 If no develops any voltage then replace the sensor.



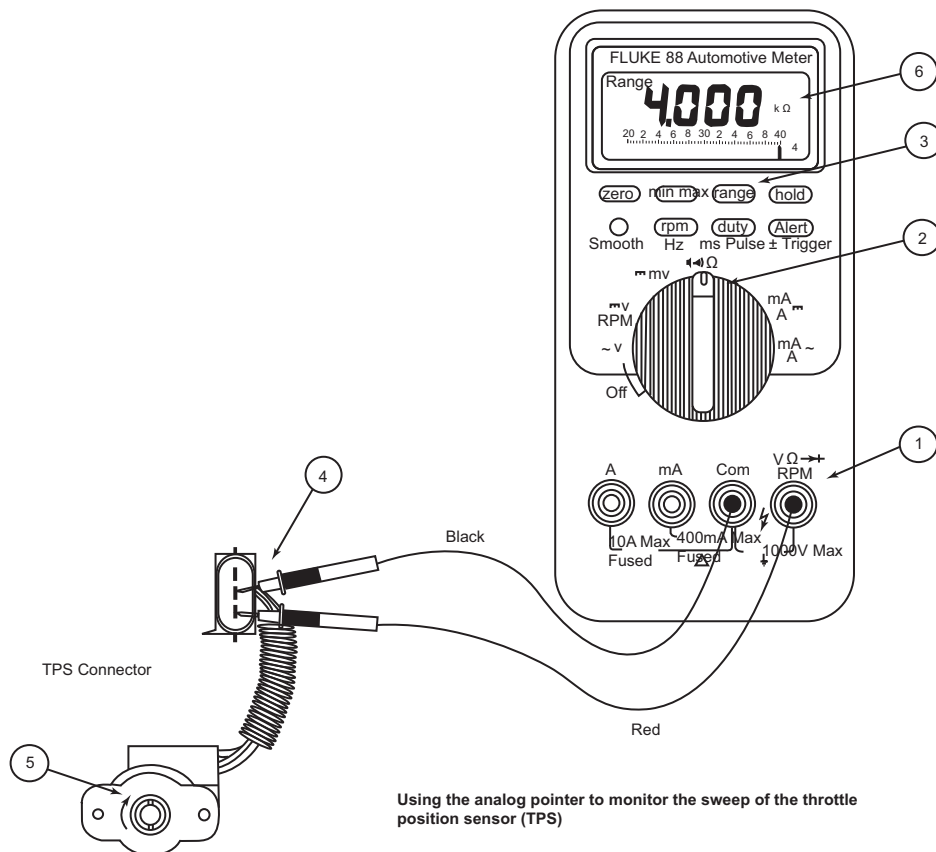
#### TASK 5: Throttle position sensor (Potentiometer) test (Fig 3)

- 1 Remove the air cleaner assembly
- 2 Turn off the ignition switch
- 3 Disconnect the connector from electric throttle body.
- 4 Check the TP sensor main and sub output voltage as follows.
- 5 Arrange 3 new 1.5 voltage batteries in series and check the voltage is 4.5 to 5.0 voltage.
- 6 Connect the voltmeter and batteries to TP sensor as shown in the figure.
- 7 Check the voltage linearly varies depending on throttle opening angle as shown in the figure while throttle valve is opened and closed by finger.

**While testing the following condition to be satisfied.**

- 8 Ambient temperature should not exceed 5°C.
- 9 Accelerator pedal should be in idle position. i.e fully closed condition.

Fig 3



#### TASK 6: Crank shaft position sensor (CKP) (Fig 4)

These sensors are called by so many different names like: Hall effect sensor, CKP sensor, CMP sensor, pickup coil, Magnetic pulse generator, variable reluctor and the list goes on with a few more names.

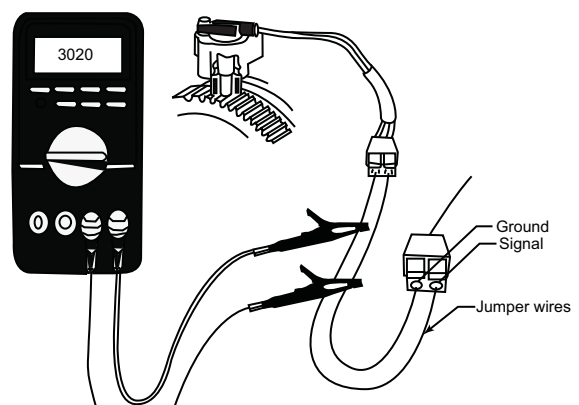
There are two types

Three pin type and two pin type.

If the car engine fails to start properly, there may a defect in crank shaft position sensor and cam shaft position sensor. This sensor measures the crank shaft position and speed. Both the sensor have the control in injection and ignition timing.

- 1 It is comprises of very simple procedure.
- 2 Locate the sensor. Normally it is located either end of the crank shaft.
- 3 Run the engine for a while.
- 4 Set the multi meter in the AC millivolt range.
- 5 Measure the voltage using the probes.

Fig 4



- 6 Normal range would be 200mV. Also refer the manufacturer's manual for the exact readings. It may vary manufacturer to manufacturer.
- 7 If not develops any voltage sensor may be opened. Replace it.

## Overhaul the feed pump

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- overhaul the mechanical fuel feed pump
- overhaul the electrical fuel feed pump
- replace the fuel pump filter

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Circlip plier - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

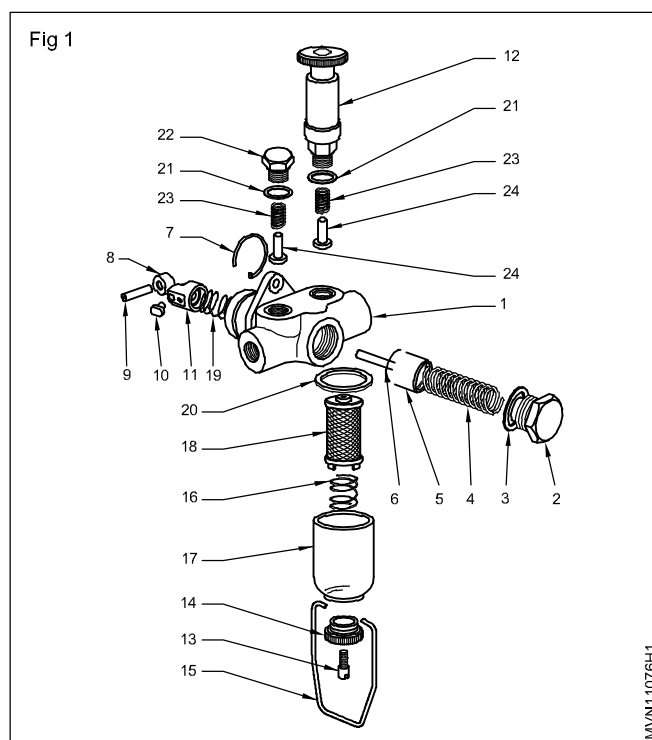
- Multicylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Air compressor - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Diesel - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- New gasket - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Dismantling (Fig 1)



- 1 Check the fuel line connection with fuel pump
- 2 Operate the fuel pump and check fuel feed pump delivery pressure
- 3 If fuel pressure is low, check fuel filter and overhaul the fuel pump
- 4 Disconnect the fuel lines of the feed pump.
- 5 Remove the feed pump assembly from the fuel injection pump by loosening the mounting nuts uniformly.

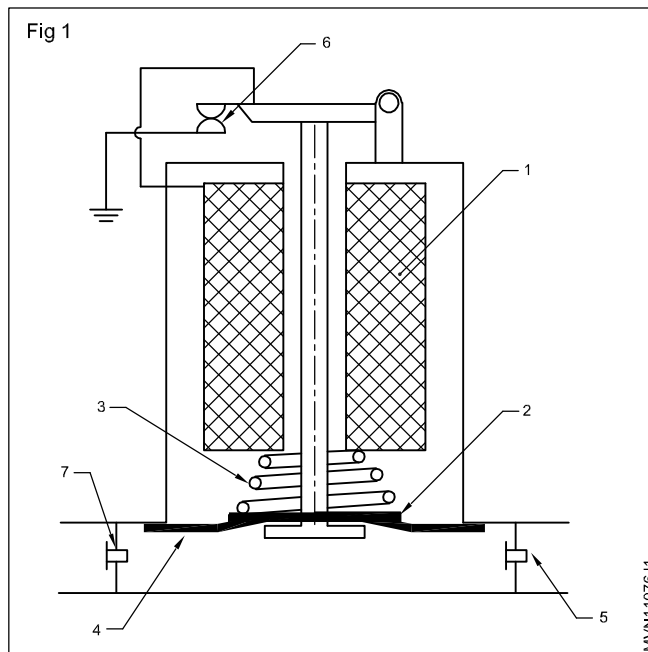
- 6 Remove the filter housing (17) by loosening the clamping nut (14), screw (13) and clip (15) along with the spring (16), filter (18) and gasket (20).
- 7 Remove the snap ring (7) and take out the roller tappet assembly of the feed pump.
- 8 Remove the screw plug (2) and gasket (3) and take out the plunger and spindle (5 & 6) with the return spring (4).
- 9 Remove the hand priming pump (12) and gasket (21).
- 10 Remove the screw plug (22), gasket (21) and remove the valves (24), along with the springs (23).
- 11 Remove the roller pin (9) and roller (8).
- 12 Remove the slider (10), tappet (11) and spring (19).
- 13 Cleaning and Inspection
- 14 Cleaning all the parts of the fuel feed pump with kerosene or diesel.
- 15 Check visually all the parts for wear and replace if required.
- 16 Check the tension of all the springs, and replace if necessary.
- 17 Check the valve seats.
- 18 Check the gaskets, and replace if necessary.
- 19 Check the filter clamping nut threads.

## TASK 2: Assembling

- 1 Assemble the roller tappet assembly in the housing and secure it by the snap ring.
- 2 Assemble the spindle and plunger assembly and tighten the screw plug.
- 3 Place valves on their seats along with the springs and the gasket in position and screw in the plug.
- 4 Fit the hand priming pump.
- 5 Fit the filter assembly.
- 6 Rotate the F.I.Ps camshaft so that the heel of the cam driving and the feed pump is at the front.
- 7 Fit the feed pump on the F.I.P.
- 8 Tighten the feed pump mounting screws uniformly.
- 9 Connect the inlet fuel line.
- 10 Check for the operation of the pump by the hand priming pump and also by turning the engine. If the fuel comes out freely without air bubbles, connect the outlet line.

## TASK 3: Overhauling electrical feed pump (Fig 1)

- 1 Disconnect the +Ve and -Ve battery terminal.
- 2 Disconnect the wires connections of the electrical feed pump
- 3 Unscrew the mounting bolts & nuts
- 4 Remove the electrical feed pump
- 5 Place it on the work bench
- 6 Clean dust on the pump and dismantle it
- 7 Check the fixed contact point and movable point
- 8 Remove the pitting by fine emery paper
- 9 Check the fixed point body earth
- 10 Check the insulation and continuity of armature coil
- 11 Check the plunger movement
- 12 Inspect the inlet and outlet valve fitted below the diaphragm
- 13 Check the diaphragm, if damaged replace it
- 14 Assemble all the part of fuel pump and fit the fuel pump in the engine
- 15 Connect the wiring with insulation switch



- 16 Connect the battery terminal
- 17 Check its operation at high speed and idle speed.
- 18 Ensure no loose connection and leaky in fuel pump.

## Remove and replace the fuel filter and bleed the system

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

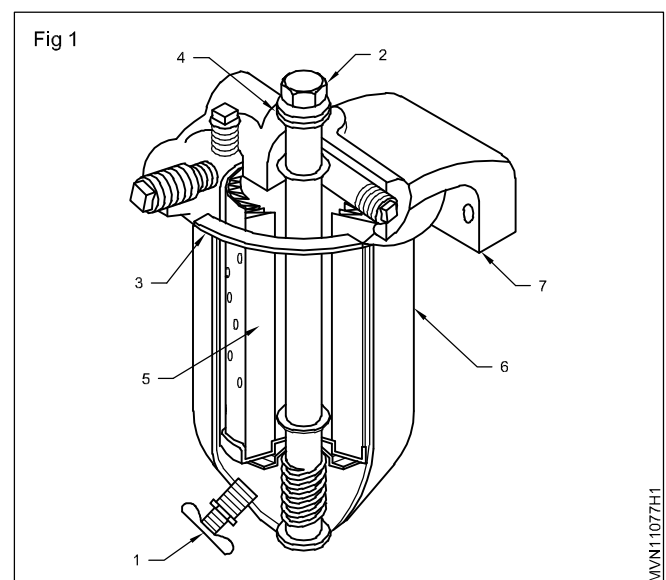
- **dismantle and replace filter element**
- **bleed the fuel system.**

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No,	• Kerosene	- as reqd.
		• Diesel	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• Multicylinder diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Air compressor	- 1 No.	• gasket	- as reqd.
		• filter element	- as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Dismantle and replace the filter

- 1 Disconnect fuel lines from the filter.
- 2 Drain fuel, dirt and water from the filter housing by opening the drain plug (1) (Fig 1).
- 3 Loosen the centre stud bolt (2) located at the top of the assembly.
- 4 Remove the top cover (7)
- 5 Remove the used elements (5) from the filter housing (6). Discard the element.
- 6 Wipe the inside of the filter housing.
- 7 Clean fuel residue and other deposits. Use kerosene/ diesel for cleaning the housing.
- 8 Place a new gasket (4) on the centre stud bolt.
- 9 Place a new gasket (3) in the filter cover assembly.
- 10 Place a new fuel filter element in the filter housing.
- 11 Fit drain plug in the filter housing
- 12 Fill diesel fuel in filter housing (6)
- 13 Assemble the housing with cover and tighten the centre bolt.

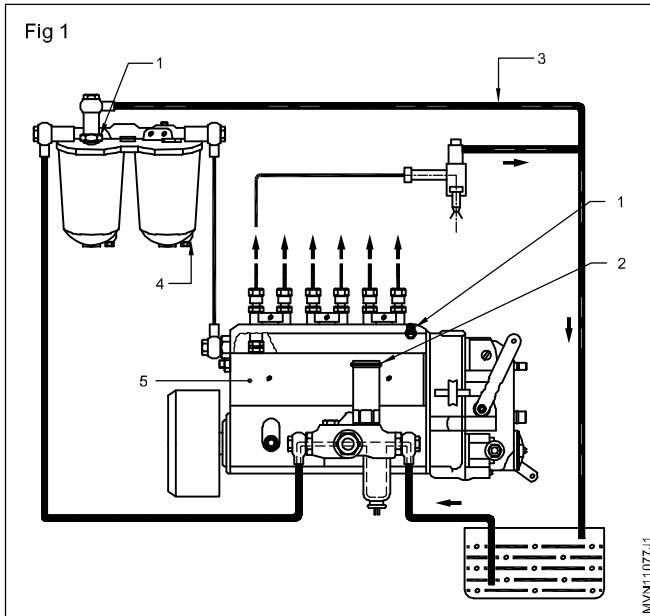


- 14 Connect the fuel hoses with fuel filter

### TASK 2: Bleeding

- 1 Check all fuel line connection joints and leakages in fuel lines before start bleeding
- 2 Operate the hand priming pump till fuel/pressure built up.
- 3 Loosen the fuel filter bleeding screw by one to two turns so that air can escape through the hole in the bleeding screw (Fig 1).
- 4 Tighten the bleeding screw (1) again.
- 5 Repeat the operation till the air in the system is fully drawn out in both filter
- 7 Loosen the bleeding screw (1) at F.I.P. (5) by one or two turns so that air can escape through the hole from the bleeding screw.

Fig 1



- 8 Tighten the bleeding screw (1) again.
- 9 Repeat the operation till the air in the system is fully drawn out.
- 10 Ensure all fuel connections and bleeding screws are securely tighten
- 11 Start the engine and check to performance

## Remove and refit the F.I.P

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the F.I.P from the engine
- check the injection timing by the spill cut off method
- set the fuel injection pump timing.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Multicylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Air compressor - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Diesel - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Cleaning cloth - as reqd.
- New gasket - as reqd.
- Swan neck pipe - 1 No.

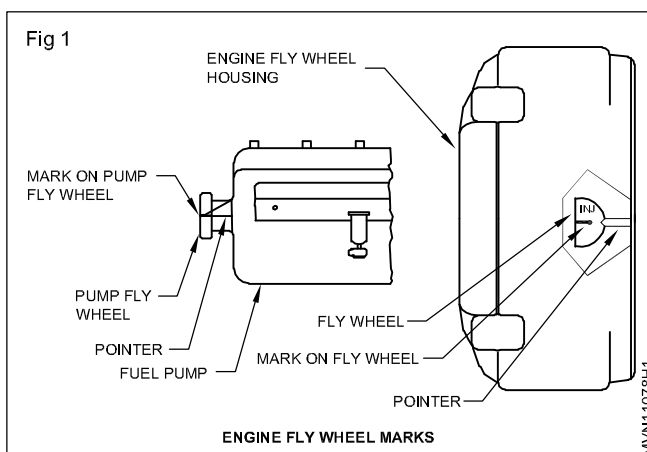
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Removing F.I.P from the engine

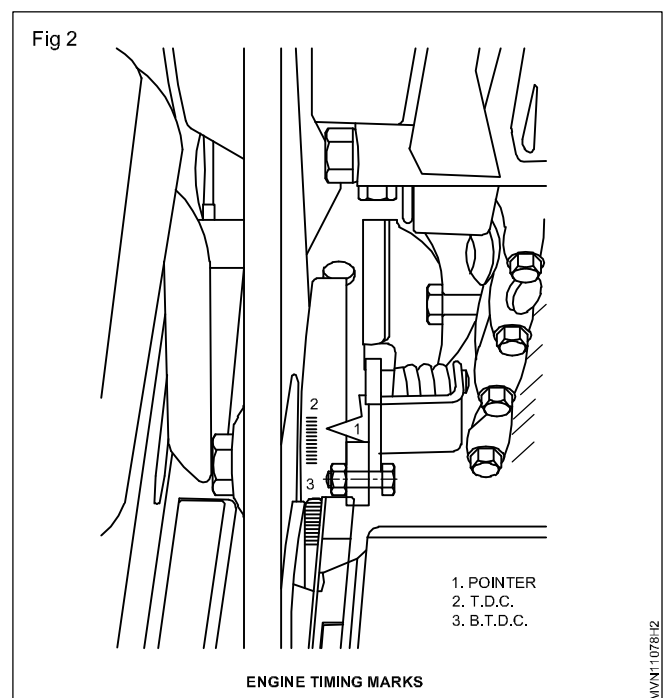
- 1 Disconnect the accelerators linkage connection of F.I.P
- 2 Disconnect the injector's high pressure line from F.I.P delivery valve holder
- 3 Disconnect the F.I.P main gallery fuel connection
- 4 Disconnect the fuel feed pump fuel line connections
- 5 Dismount the F.I.P mounting bolts from engine
- 6 Remove F.I.P from the engine
- 7 Place the F.I.P in a tray on work bench
- 8 Clean the F.I.P with cleaning solvent & tools.

### TASK 2: Setting timing of the fuel injection pump in relation to the engine

- 1 Before coupling the F.I.P pump to the engine for setting timing, the engine piston No.1 cylinder should be positioned at the injection point before T.D.C.
- 2 Align the engine timing marks (Fig 1 & 2)

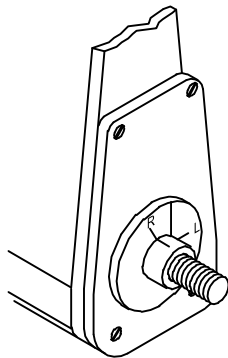


- 3 Observe the TDC/BTDC (Injection marks) and a pointer made in the flywheel, on the 'V' belt pulley or on the vibration damper. (Fig 3)
- 4 Crank the engine in a clockwise direction till the injection mark (3) on the flywheel/vibration damper coincides with the pointer (1) on the flywheel housing or timing gear housing.



**When the above marks are aligned, the piston stands at 23° BTDC. (Ex: TATA vehicle) (Refer to the service manual for other vehicles)**

Fig 3



THIS MARK MERELY INDICATES THE POSITION  
REQUIRED FOR THE INSTALLATION OF THE  
CAMSHAFT-DO NOT USE IT FOR ADJUSTING.

MARKS ON FUEL INJECTION PUMP

MVN11078H3

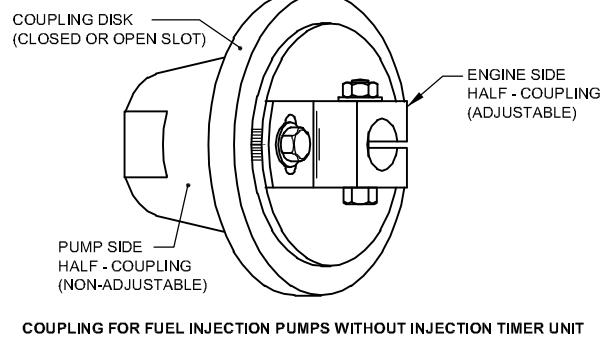
- 5 Now the engine is ready for coupling with the FIP.
- 6 Preparing the F.I.P pump for coupling to the engine.

- 7 The pump plunger next to the drive end must be set to the commencement of delivery position for respective direction of rotation.
- 8 Observe the timing marks on FI pump shaft and housing.
- 9 Rotate the pump camshaft and align the mark on the shaft taper with lines marked as R or L depending on the rotation of the pump shaft.(Fig 3)
- 10 Fix the woodruff key on the taper end of the pump shaft and push the non-adjustable pump side half coupling on the shaft and tap it with a mallet.
- 11 Observe the line mark on the coupling boss aligning with R or L mark on the pump housing.
- 12 Fix the spring washer on the taper end of the shaft-screw in the nut and tighten it to the specified torque value. (Refer to Mico pamphlet) - use correct size spanner and tomy bar.

### TASK 3: Coupling the pump with the engine (Fig 1)

- 1 Assemble the coupling unit on the pump with their zero marks exactly matching. (There are 3 units in all)
- 2 Measure the end clearance between the coupling flange and the coupling disc of the drive. (Use a feeler gauge) (Minimum clearance is 0.02" or 0.5 mm)
- 3 Fix the FI pump on its engine bracket - move it to the engine side - insert the drive side half coupling on the drive shaft of the air compressor or exhauster (depending on the make of the engine).
- 4 Insert the fastening bolts on the pump mounting holes and tighten them with nuts to the specified torque.
- 5 Crank the engine and check for free rotation of the pump shaft along with exhauster/air compressor shaft.

Fig 1

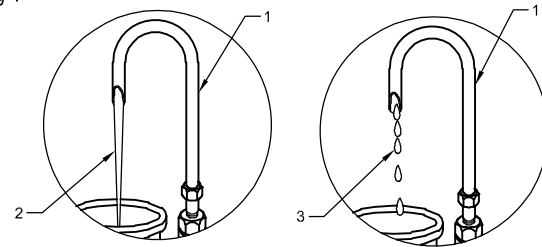


MVN11078.1

### TASK 4: Spill cut method (Fig 1)

- 1 Disconnect the first injector pipe at the FIP's end.
- 2 Remove the 1st delivery valve holder and remove the valve pin and spring and fit the delivery valve holder
- 3 Fit the swan neck pipe (1) on the 1st delivery valve holder. (Fig 1)
- 4 Connect the fuel gallery of the FIP to the fuel container placed at a higher level.
- 5 Move the FIP towards the engine till the fuel (2) starts flowing freely through the swan neck pipe.
- 6 Now move the FIP away from the engine till the fuel flow is cut off completely.
- 7 Again move the FIP towards the engine and stop when the fuel flow regulates in such away that there is a flow of a drop (3) between 15 and 20 seconds; at that time tighten the bolts of the FIP flange without varying the flow of the drop.
- 8 Remove the swan neckpipe (1) and delivery valve holder and replace the pin and spring and fit the delivery valve holder.

Fig 1



MVN11078X1

- 9 Remove the swan neckpipe (1) and delivery valve holder and replace the pin and spring and fit the delivery valve holder.
- 10 Connect the pressure pipes between the injectors and fuel injection pump. Fill the governor lubrication oil. Start the engine and adjust idle speed.



## Reassemble the diesel engine parts

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- assemble the crankshaft and camshaft
- assemble the piston in cylinder bore
- assemble the cylinder head assembly on cylinder block
- assemble fuel, water and electrical components
- adjust tappet clearance

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Torque wrench, Ring expander - 1 No.
- Box spanner set - 1 No.
- Feeler gauge - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.
- Zib crane/engine hoist - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1 : Assembling crankshaft and camshaft

- 1 Clean main oil gallery in the cylinder block.
- 2 Place cylinder block in inverted position on stand.
- 3 Clean the water jackets if necessary.
- 4 Fit main bearing shells in the parent bore of the cylinder block and also in the bearing caps. Ensure that the bearing notches (3 & 4) sit in position and oil holes (2) of bearing shells and cylinder block are aligned. (Fig 1 & Fig 2)

Fig 1

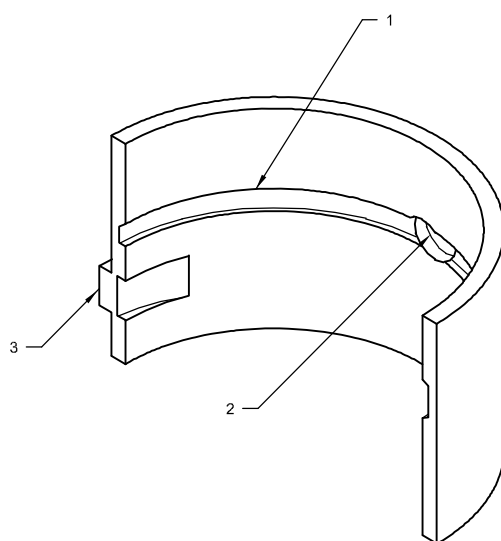
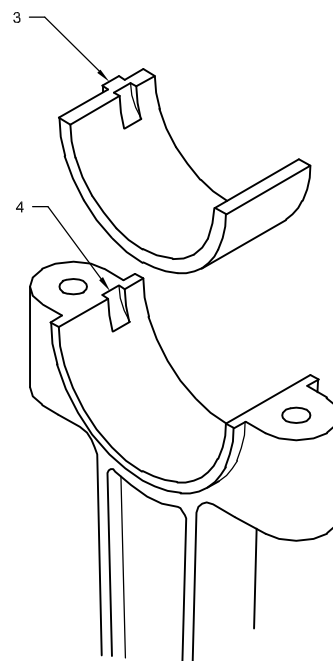
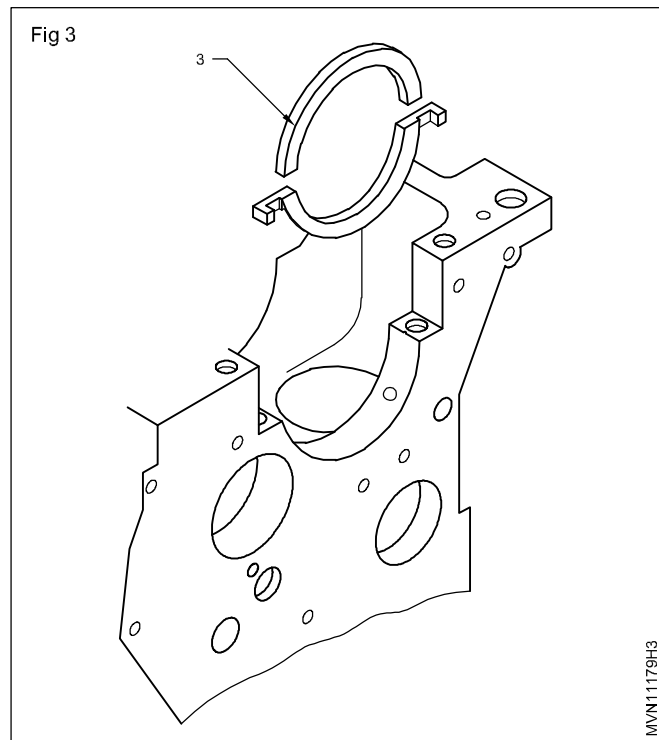


Fig 2



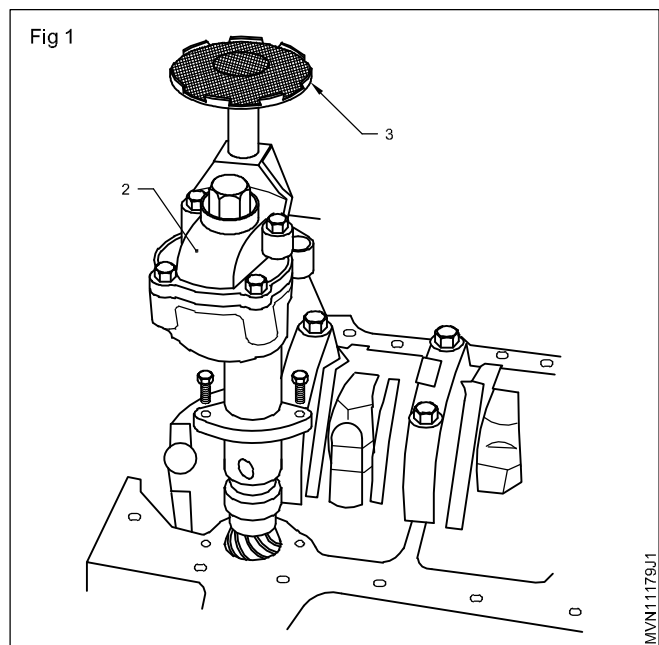
- 5 Apply lub oil on the bearing shells.
- 6 Place the crank shaft.
- 7 Place the thrust washer in its position.

- 8 Fit the bearing caps ensure that the marks are matched, and tighten the caps at the recommended torque in given sequence.
- 9 Check free rotation of crank shaft after tightening each cap.
- 10 Check the end play of crankshaft, If it is not within limits replace the thrust washer to get recommended end play and lock the cap bolts.
- 11 Fit the timing back plate and lock the bolts.
- 12 Fit the camshaft bushes. Ensure that the oil hole in block and bush is aligned.
- 13 Insert camshaft in its position.
- 14 Tighten camshaft thrust plate bolt.
- 15 Check camshaft end play and adjust with shims and lock it. Increasing shims will reduce the end play.
- 16 Fit the flywheel housing and tighten the bolts and lock them.
- 17 Press rear oil seal (3) into retainer and fit the same over the crank shaft. (Fig 3)
- 18 Check for free rotation of crankshaft.
- 19 Fix the flywheel in its position and tighten mounting bolts at the recommended torque.



## TASK 2: Assembling piston and connecting rod assembly in engine

- 1 Tilt the engine block and lubricate cylinder bore.
- 2 Stagger piston rings as specified by the manufacturer. Place the piston in the cylinder till the bottom ring touches the cylinder block's top. Ensure that the piston is placed in the cylinder in the same direction, as specified by manufacturer.
- 3 Bring respective crank pin to TDC.
- 4 Compress piston rings by a ring compressor.
- 5 Push the piston with a wooden block till connecting rod sits on the crankpin. Push the piston and simultaneously rotate the crankshaft till it comes to B.D.C. Ensure that the connecting rod does not dislodge from the crankshaft while rotating crank shaft.
- 6 Fit the connecting rod bearing cap along with the lower bearing shell. Tighten bearing cap bolts/ nuts at the recommended torque.
- 7 Rotate the crankshaft and check for free rotation. Repeat the above steps for fitting all the remaining pistons.
- 8 Fit oil pump (2) and check free rotation of oil pump shaft with the camshaft. (Fig 1)
- 9 Connect strainer (3) with oil pump and fix the oil sump with packing.
- 10 Place the engine vertically mount the engine on the stand properly.



- 11 Fit camshaft gear and coincide its timing mark with mark/ pointer on timing back plate. Coincide flywheel's TDC mark (1/6 or 1/4) with flywheel housing's pointer.
- 12 Fit idler gear and tighten its bolt.

- 13 In some engines timing chain/ belt is provided instead of idler gear to drive camshaft. Follow manufacturer's procedure. (Consult your instructor)
- 14 Replace timing case's oil seal and fit timing case.

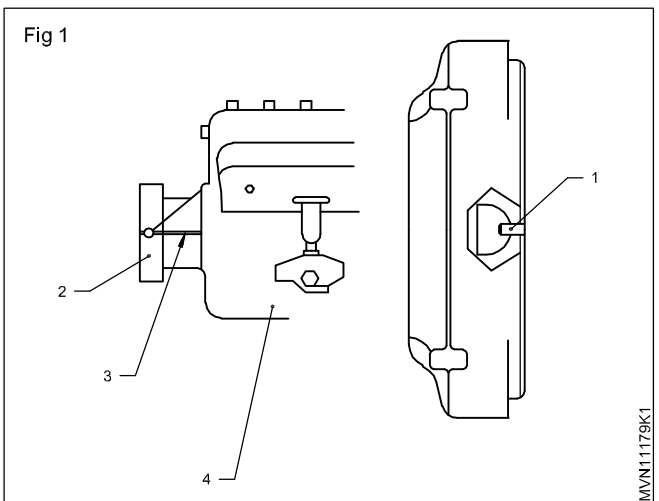
- 15 Lock flywheel with wooden block or special tool.
- 16 Fit damper pulley and tighten damper pulley bolt at recommended torque.

### TASK 3: Fitting cylinder head assembly, rocker arm assembly

- 1 Check the tightness of the cylinder head studs and if found loose, tighten these at recommended torque.
- 2 Clean the cylinder head surface and engine block surface.
- 3 Place the cylinder head gasket on cylinder block.
- 4 Ensure that 'Top' marked on the gasket faces upwards.
- 5 Lower the cylinder head carefully on cylinder block.
- 6 Ensure that the studs are not damaged.
- 7 Tighten the cylinder head nuts in the given sequence at recommended torque.
- 8 Place tappets in tappet bore.
- 9 Place push rods in push rod holes.
- 10 Place the rocker arm assembly on cylinder head. Ensure that the rocker shaft brackets do not hit the studs.
- 11 Loosen the ball pins of rocker levers.
- 12 Tighten rocker shaft mounting bolts at recommended torque.
- 13 Place new injector washers.
- 14 Fit the injectors and tighten at recommended torque.
- 15 Place the new gaskets on inlet and exhaust flanges.
- 16 Fit the inlet and exhaust manifolds and tighten the mounting nuts at recommended torque.

### TASK 4 : Fitting fuel injection pump, fuel filter assembly, oil filter, water pump, air cleaner, starter motor, dynamo/alternator

- 1 Turn flywheel and coincide its T.D.C. 1/4 or 1/6 marks with flywheel housing's pointer (1). Confirm that 1st cylinder is in compression stroke by rotating both the push rods of 1st cylinder by hand. In the compression stroke both the push rods will rotate. If both the push rods do not rotate turn flywheel one full round and again coincide 1/6 or 1/4 mark with flywheel housing. (Fig 1)
- 2 Rotate the FIP camshaft until the mark on its flywheel (2) is in line with pointer (3) on the pump body (4).
- 3 Install the pump on the bracket at the same time pump flange should go inside the drive flange and mount the radiator with proper mountings.
- 4 Ensure that the timing mark is not disturbed.
- 5 Fix bolts and tighten.
- 6 Fit fuel filter assembly and connect fuel lines to feed pump and FIP.
- 7 Connect high pressure lines and fix the clamp.
- 8 Fit overflow lines.
- 9 Fit oil filter assembly and connect the oil pipes.
- 10 Fix the gasket on the water pump body.

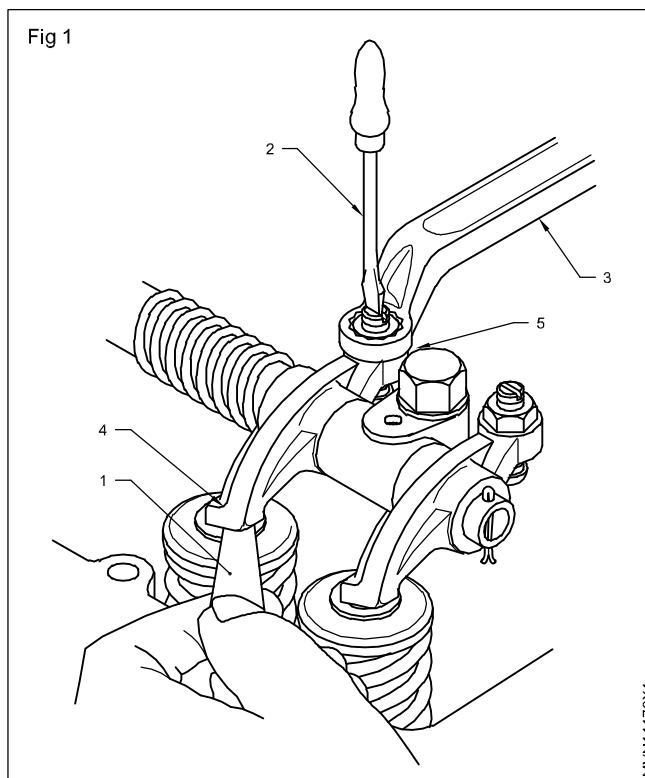


- 11 Fit the water pump and fix the fan leaf and mount the radiator with proper mounting
- 12 Fit self starter motor.
- 13 Fit dynamo/alternator.
- 14 Fit fan belt.
- 15 Fit the air cleaner assembly.

### TASK 5 : Adjusting tappet clearance

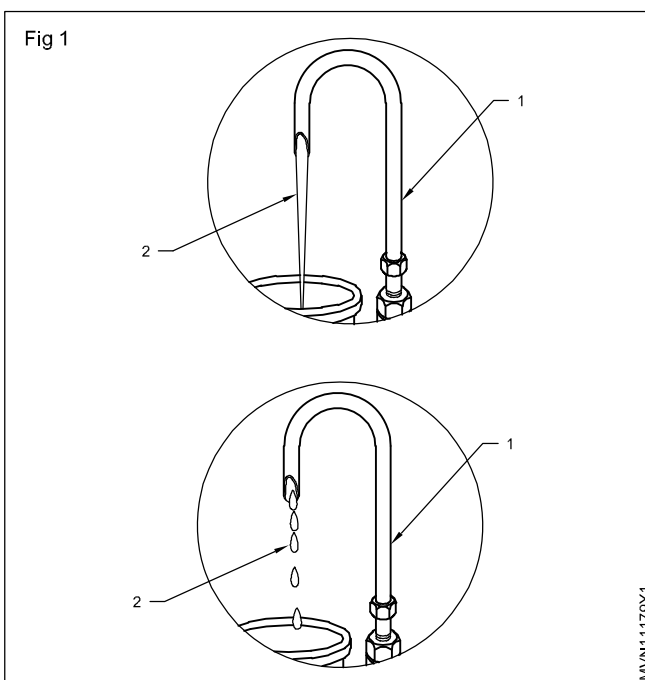
- 1 Turn crankshaft in clockwise direction and coincide flywheel's TDC 1/6 or 1/4 mark with flywheel housing's pointer. Confirm that 1st cylinder is in compression stroke.
- 2 Place ring spanner (3) on the lock nut (5). (Fig 1)
- 3 Place the specified thickness feeler gauge (1) between the valve stem and the rocker tip (4).

- 4 Tighten the adjusting screw by a screw driver and at the same time move feeler gauge to and fro.
- 5 Stop tightening of the adjusting screw when it moves with the load, but it should not be jammed.
- 6 Rotate the push rod, it should also rotate with a slight load; but it should not be jammed.
- 7 Hold the adjusting screw with the screw driver firmly and tighten lock nut by a ring spanner (3).
- 8 Ensure that the adjusting screw (5) does not rotate while tightening the locking nut.
- 9 Check again the movement of the feeler gauge leaf (1) and push rod.
- 10 Repeat the above steps to adjust the tappet clearance for remaining cylinder according to firing order.
- 11 Rotate engine flywheel in clockwise direction to coincide INJ mark on flywheel with flywheel housing pointer.
- 12 Rotate FIP camshaft until the mark on its flywheel is in line with pointer on the FIP flange.
- 13 Tighten the FIP flange bolts.



#### TASK 6 : Checking injection timing by spill cut off method

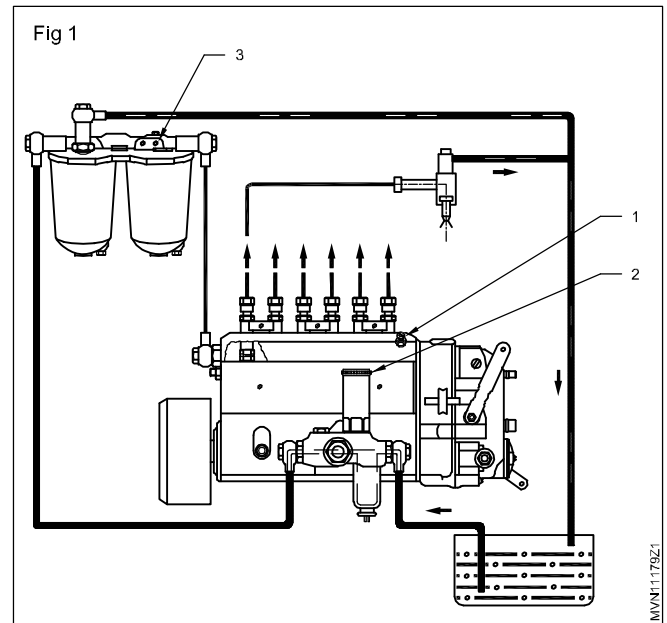
- 1 Loosen F.I.P. flange's bolt.
- 2 Remove 1st delivery valve holder and remove valve peg and spring.
- 3 Fit delivery valve holder.
- 4 Fit swan neck pipe (1) on 1st delivery valve holder. (Fig 1)
- 5 Connect fuel gallery of F.I.P to fuel container placed at a higher level.
- 6 Move F.I.P. towards engine till fuel (2) starts flowing freely through swan neck pipe.
- 7 Now move the FIP away from engine till fuel flow cut-off completely.
- 8 Again move F.I.P. towards engine and stop. When the fuel flow regulates in such a way that there is a flow of each drop between 15 and 20 seconds, at that time tighten the bolts of the F.I.P. flange without varying the flow of drop.
- 9 Remove swan neck pipe (1) and delivery valve holder and replace peg and spring and fit the delivery valve holder.
- 10 Connect the pressure pipes between injectors and fuel injection pump.
- 11 Place the valve door gasket over the cylinder head.



- 12 Fix the valve door cover and tighten bolts.
- 13 Open the oil filling cap/flap and fill the correct grade of engine oil slowly. While filling intermittently check the oil level. This avoids over filling of oil.
- 14 Close the filling cap/flap.

### TASK 7 : Bleed the fuel system

- 1 Loosen bleeding screw (3) of filter one or two turns.
- 2 Pump fuel by hand primer (2) till fuel comes without air through bleeding screw. Tighten bleeding screw. (Fig 1)
- 3 Repeat the above procedure to bleed air from F.I.P. through bleeding screw (1).
- 4 Start and test the engine. (Consult your instructor)



## Test the cylinder compression and replace cam belt

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the compression pressure
- remove and replace timing and engine drive belt.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Compression gauge - 1 No.
- Mallet, Drift punch - 1 No.
- Torque Wrench - 1 No.
- Puller - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

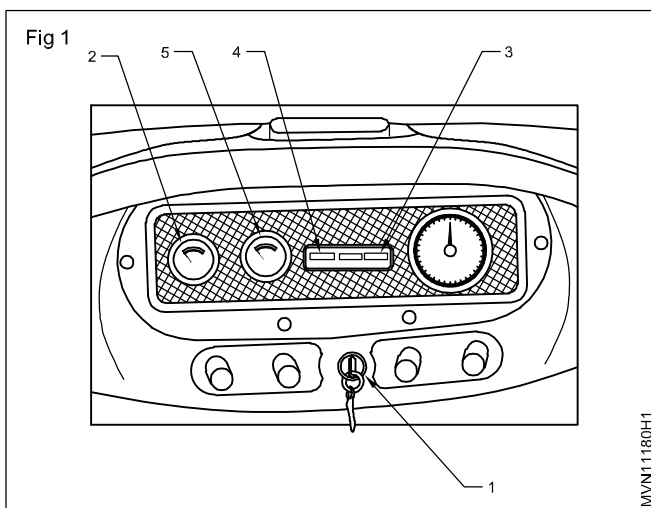
- Multi cylinder diesel engine - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton cloth - as reqd.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Lube oil - as reqd.
- Diesel - as reqd.
- Engine drive belt - as reqd.
- Timing belt - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Check the water level in the radiator and top up if needed.
- 2 Check the engine oil level and top up, if needed.
- 3 Check the electrolyte level in the battery and top up with distilled water if needed.
- 4 Insert the key in the main switch (1) and press fully in and turn the key to the 'ON' position. (Fig 1)



- 5 Observe the ammeter (2) on the instrument panel. The indicator of the meter will show slightly on the discharge side (-ve side) of the meter and the ignition bulb (3) will glow red and also the oil pressure indicator (4) will glow.
- 6 Observe the fuel gauge (5). The indicator indicates the fuel in the tank from empty to full. Note down the quantity of fuel in the fuel tank.
- 7 Depress the accelerator lever fully.

- 8 Press the starter 'button' or turn the ignition key further and crank the engine.
- 9 Release the starter button /key as soon as the engine has started.

**Once the engine starts do not touch the starter switch.**

- 10 If the engine does not start immediately do not keep the starter button pressed or key turned beyond 10 seconds otherwise, the battery will get discharged or the teeth of the flywheel ring and pinion will get damaged or the self-starter motor will get damaged.
- 11 Raise the engine r.p.m. steadily and allow the engine to warm up.
- 12 Observe the ammeter. The indicator on the positive side shows charging of the battery.
- 13 Observe the oil pressure indicator.
- 14 Note down the temperature of the water on the temperature gauge.
- 15 Note down the oil pressure at full throttle.
- 16 Compare the observations made with the manufacturer's specification.
- 17 Depress the accelerator steadily to full throttle, and observe the exhaust smoke.
- 18 Note down the colour of the smoke as black/white/blue.
- 19 Run it at idle speed for a few minutes to bring it to operating temperature.

20 Loosen the injector one or two turns and crank the engine to blow off the carbon and dust around the injectors.

21 Remove all the injectors.

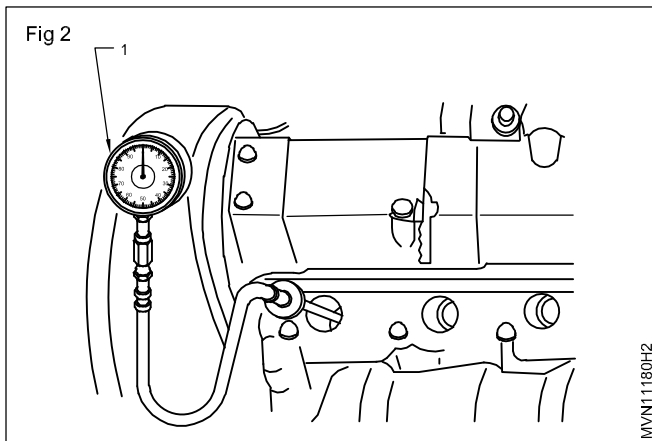
#### Dry test

22 Install the compression gauge '1' on the first cylinder.

23 Press the accelerator lever.

24 Crank the engine with the starter motor and read the highest pressure on the compression gauge.

25 Note the reading and release the pressure from the compression gauge. (Fig 2)



26 Repeat the procedure for all the remaining cylinders and note down the reading.

#### Wet test

27 Put 10 ml of engine oil in the first cylinder.

28 Crank the engine to circulate the oil around the piston and piston rings.

29 Repeat the procedure to take the compression pressure reading as given in the above steps.

30 Take the reading for all cylinders by pouring oil in each cylinder.

31 Note down the difference of the readings in the dry and wet tests.

32 Put back all the injectors and tighten at the recommended torque.

33 Fit the fuel pipe lines and bleed it.

34 Start the engine and check for leakage at the injectors.

35 Check vibration of engine in idle speed.

36 Overhaul the injectors to improve the performance of the engine. If needed.

37 Refit the injectors and connect the fuel lines and start the engine.

38 Adjust and set idle speed of the engine.

#### TASK 1: Removing and replacing cam belt.

1 Rotate the engine and coincide the timing marks (1) with the timing pointer (2).

2 Mark the position of the pointer (2) with respect to the timing cover (3).

3 Place a wooden piece in between the flywheel ring gear and crankcase to prevent rotation of the flywheel.

4 Remove the crankshaft pulley nut (4).

5 Place the puller (5) on the crankshaft pulley (6). Ensure the distance piece (7) does not sit inside the crankshaft threads.

6 Place the puller legs (8) in such a way that the puller's flange (9) is parallel to the pulley (6).

7 Tighten the centre bolt (10) till the pulley (6) comes out from the crankshaft.

8 Remove the timing cover (11) loosening the mounting screws diagonally opposite.

9 Remove the gasket (12) and oil seal (17). (Fig 3)

10 Loosen the mounting of timing belt tensioning pulley.

11 Remove the belt tensioning pulley

12 Remove the timing belt from the timing pulley and crank pulley

13 Inspect the timing belt for defects.

14 Clean the timing pulley, crank pulley and belt tension pulley

15 Check oil seal of cam shaft and crank shaft

16 Ensure no oil leaks from crankshaft and crank shaft oil seals

17 Select the correct size of timing belt for your engine

18 Fix the timing pulley drive belt and coincide the timing marks on flywheel, vibration damper and camshaft timing pulley

19 Adjust the timing belt tension pulley for correct belt tension

20 Crank the engine and check timing belt tension

21 Apply the adhesive on the timing cover gasket and fix the gasket on the timing cover.

22 Fix the timing cover and mount the bolts for correct tightness

23 Mount the crank pulley and nut, tighten the nut as specified torque with help of torque wrench

## TASK 2 : Replacing and adjusting an engine drive belt

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative terminal
- 2 Loosen the alternators mounting
- 3 Loosen the nuts at the link bracket (Fig 1)
- 4 Inspect drive and driver pulley wheel
- 5 Check the side way movement and bearing free rotation.
- 6 Check the belt for excessive wear, and cracks
- 7 Select correct size and type of replacement belt
- 8 compare it with the new belt.
- 9 Install the new belt and ensure it is properly seated in the groove
- 10 Make sure width and squarely aligned in the puller groove (If it not correctly aligned the belt will be thrown off by pulley in heels)
- 11 Push the alternator away from the engine with a suitable lever until the correct tension is obtained
- 12 Check it with a tension gauge as per recommendation
- 13 Tighten the alternator mounting and bracket-nut or bolts
- 14 Connect the battery negative terminal
- 15 Start the engine and observe the belt the make sure that it is seated with proper the tension.
- 16 If necessary, readjust the engine drive belt tension.

**Note: old belt may have stretched in use**

— — — — —



**Start the engine and adjust idling speed in pneumatic governor**

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- adjust idling speed in pneumatic governor.

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cleaning tray	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Diesel engine with pneumatic governor	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• 12V battery with cables	- 1 Set.	• Diesel	- as reqd.
		• Engine oil	- as reqd.
		• Coolant	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Check the F.I.P. mounting bolt and tighten if necessary.
- 2 Check water level in radiator, top up if required.
- 3 Check lubricating oil level in a sump, top up if required.
- 4 Check fuel level in fuel tank and fill if required.
- 5 Connect the battery with cables to the starting motor properly.

**Bleed the fuel system until the system is free from air with help of hand priming device**

- 6 Check the fan belt tension and adjust if required.
- 7 On the ignition switch with help of ignition key.
- 8 Start the engine with help of start or button.

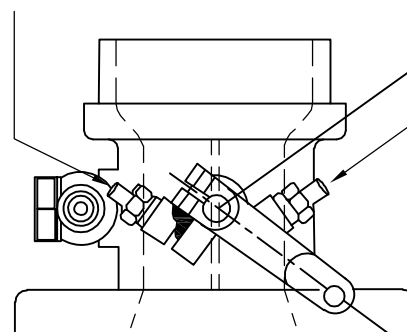
**Do not hold the start or button for longer time to start**

- 9 Release the starter button immediately after engine starts.
- 10 Raise the engine speed slowly with help of accelerator level (or) throttle lever.
- 11 Observe the engine speed to conform the engine to running smoothly with out any leakages and sound.
- 12 Release the accelerator lever, and ensure the engine is running at slow speed.
- 13 Observe any abnormal vibration of the engine.
- 14 Lubricate the spindle and linkages of butterfly valve mounted in the venture throat.
- 15 Loosen the idling adjusting nut with ring spanner
- 16 Adjust the idling screw with screw driver set the proper idling speed RPM of the engine of specified by the manufacturer.
- 17 Keep the screw driver and lock the nut in position
- 18 Adjust the maximum speed similarly. (Fig 1)
- 19 Start the engine and check idling and high speed smooth performance

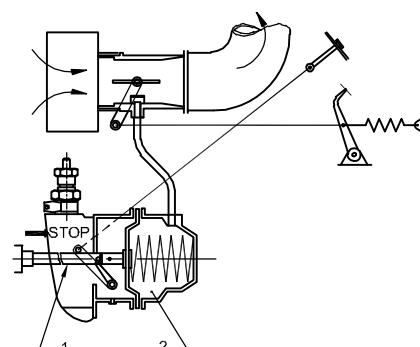
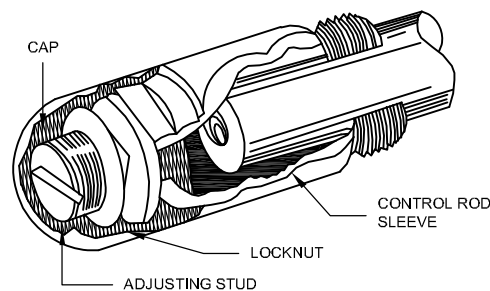
Fig 1

ADJUSTABLE SCREW  
MAXIMUM SPEED

ADJUSTABLE SCREW  
MAXIMUM SPEED



CONTROL STOPS ON VENTURI



**Test the performance of engine with off-load**

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **adjust diesel engine timing in off load condition.**

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cleaning tray	- as reqd.
• Diesel timing meter	- 1 No.	• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Tray	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
Equipments/Machineries		• Diesel	- as reqd.
• Diesel engine	- 1 No.	• Engine oil	- as reqd.
• 12V battery with cables	- 1 Set.		

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Start engine and warm up to a normal operating temperature and switch off the engine
- 2 Use diesel timing meter to accurately read diesel engine timing
- 3 Carefully remove the appropriate glow plug and install the luminosity probe
- 4 Connect the timing meter to vehicle battery
- 5 Check existing timing - Start the engine and check the timing on various intervals to establish an accurate baseline for analysis
- 6 Adjust engine timing increase or decrease engine timing as needed. Retighten the bolts after adjustment of F.I.P
- 7 Refer vehicle manual for proper timing figure
- 8 Always use proper diagnostic equipment to properly accomplish the engine timing
- 9 After adjusting timing, check the power, fuel economy and emissions of diesel engine.

— — — — —

**Start the engine and adjust idling speed in mechanical governor**

**Objective:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **adjust the idle and high speed operation of the engine.**

Requirements			
Tools/Instruments		Materials/Components	
• Trainee's tool kit	- 1 No.	• Cleaning tray	- 1 No.
Equipments/Machineries		• Cotton cloth	- as reqd.
• Multicylinder four stroke diesel engine with mechanical governor	- 1 No.	• Soap oil	- as reqd.
• 12 volt battery with cables	- 1 Set.	• Diesel	- as reqd.
		• Lubrication oil	- as reqd.

**PROCEDURE**

- 1 Check the F.I.P mounting bolt and tighten if necessary.
- 2 Check water level in radiator, top up if required.
- 3 Check lubricating oil level in a sump, top up if required.
- 4 Check fuel level in fuel tank and fill if required.
- 5 Connect the battery with cables to the starting motor properly.

**Bleed the fuel system until the system is free from air with help of hand priming device**

- 6 Check the fan belt tension and adjust if required.
- 7 Observe the timing marks on F1 pump shaft and housing
- 8 On the ignition switch with help of ignition key.
- 9 Start the engine with help of starter button.

**Do not hold the starter button for longer time to start**

- 10 Release the starter button immediately after engine starts.

- 11 Raise the engine speed slowly with help of accelerator lever.
- 12 Observe the engine speed to conform the engine to running smoothly with out any leakages and sound.
- 13 Release the accelerator lever, now the engine is running at slow speed.
- 14 Observe any abnormal vibration of the engine.
- 15 Adjust the idling stop screw with help of spanner and screw driver set the proper idling speed as per manufacturers specification (or) manual.
- 16 start the engine and check the idle and high speed operation performance

**Care should be taken after adjusting idling speed the idling speed lock nut must be lock position**

- 17 Stop the engine with help of 'OFF' level (or) stop level.

— — — — —

## Check performance for missing cylinder and rectify

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- check the engine vibration
- inspect and test the injectors.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- injector cleaning kit - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Multicylinder four stroke diesel engine - 1 No.
- Injector testing machine - 1 No.

- Air compressor - 1 No.

#### Materials/Components

- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Diesel - as reqd.
- Soap oil - as reqd.
- Cotton waste - as reqd.
- Injectors - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

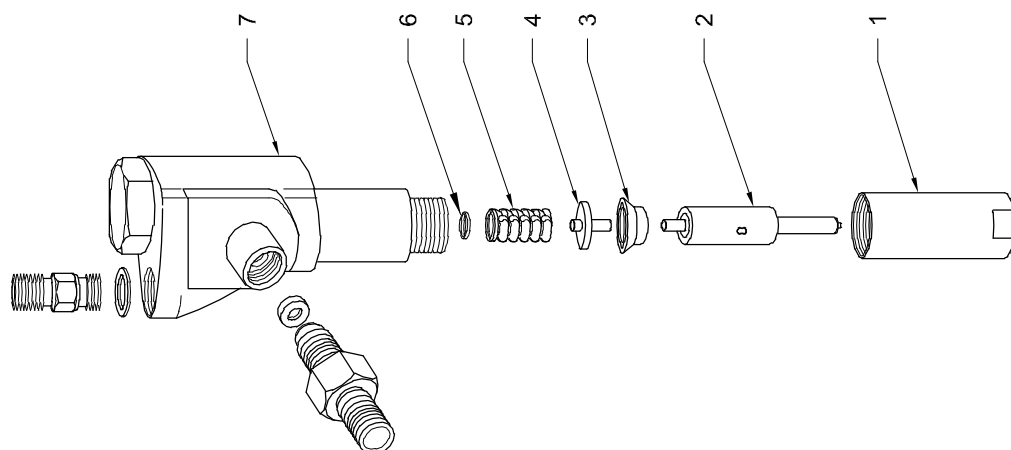
### TASK 1: Identification of defective injector of an engine

- 1 Check the engine oil, water level before start the engine
- 2 Start the engine and run it idle speed
- 3 Record the engine RPM
- 4 Observe the knocking sound/ vibration of the engine
- 5 Remove the high pressure pipe nipple from the 1st cylinder nozzle to one by one
- 6 Check the rpm of the engine variation
- 7 Which injector's fuel line disconnection is not vary the engine operation, Means the injector is defective.
- 8 Faulty injector indicate same the initial reading and knocking sound
- 9 Stop the engine and remove the faulty injector from the cylinder head
- 10 Place it in a tray and dismantle the injector and clean the dismantled injector parts and inspect the parts.
- 11 Replace the damaged or worn out parts
- 12 Assemble the dismantle parts of the injector and adjust it.
- 13 Test the injector with injector test machine
- 14 Fit the injector on the particular cylinder
- 15 Start the engine observe the engine r.p.m and its smooth running.

### TASK 2: Dismantling (Fig 1)

- 1 Remove overflow line of injectors.
- 2 Remove high pressure lines. Ensure that the pipes do not bend.
- 3 Remove injector clamp.
- 4 Remove the injectors from cylinder head

Fig 1



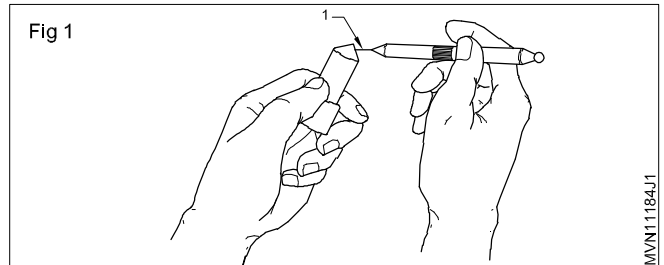
MVN11184H1

- 5 Plug the inlet (injector seating) and leak-off openings.
- 6 Clean the nozzle tip and wipe off the dirt from the injectors.
- 7 Hold the injector in inverted position.

- 8 Unscrew nozzle cap nut (1) and remove the cap nut (Fig 1).
- 9 Remove nozzle (2), intermediate washer (3), pressure bolt (4), spring (5) and shims (6).

### TASK 3: Cleaning and inspection (Fig 1)

- 1 Keep the components in the respective compartments of a standard work tray.
- 2 Rinse nozzle in clean diesel and withdraw nozzle needle from the nozzle body.
- 3 Inspect the nozzle needle for damage, roughness and wear.
- 4 Inspect the nozzle body (7) for damage.
- 5 Clean the nozzle either by blowing air or with a nozzle cleaning wire. Cleaning wire's (1) diameter should be smaller than spray hole's diameter. Ensure that while cleaning wire does not break inside the hole (Fig 1).
- 6 Rinse nozzle needle and nozzle with clean testing oil.
- 7 Hold the nozzle vertically, pull out nozzle needle to 1/3 of its engaged length and release the nozzle needle. Nozzle needle should slide down to its seat on its own weight when it is released.
- 8 If it does not slide, lap the needle and nozzle body with paste.
- 9 Clean carbon deposits from inner and outer surfaces of cap nut.
- 10 Inspect cap nut for any crack/damage.

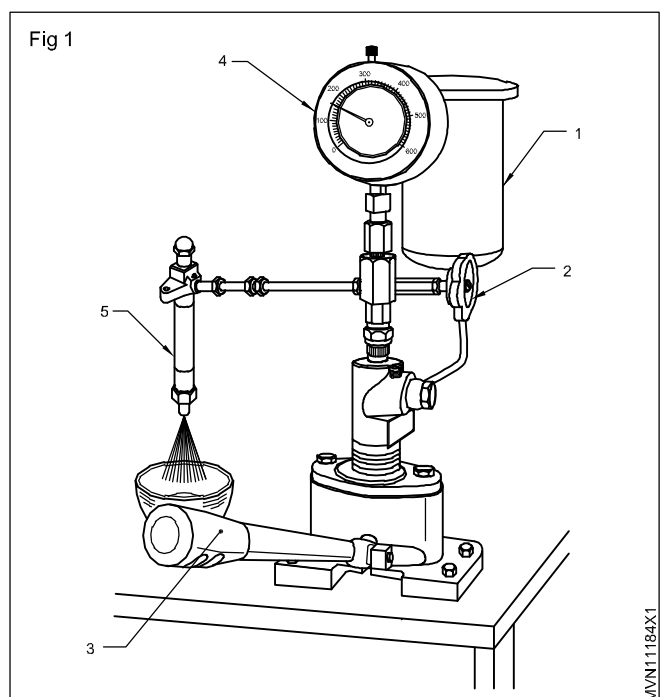


- 11 Inspect spring for crack or any damage, replace if necessary.
- 12 Check spring tension on spring tester. Replace spring if necessary.
- 13 Dip the body and nozzle in clean oil.
- 14 Ensure that nozzle and nozzle needle are not interchanged.
- 15 Hold nozzle body in inverted position on a vice. Place shim, spring, pressure bolt, intermediate washer and nozzle with needle in nozzle body.
- 16 Tighten the nozzle cap nut by hand and centralise the nozzle. Then tighten nozzle cap nut at recommended torque.

### TASK 4: Testing

- 1 Fit injector (5) on injector tester (Fig 1).
- 2 Fill test oil in container (1).
- 3 Close shut-off valve knob (2).
- 4 Operate hand lever (3) as fast as possible and observe that test oil is sprayed through nozzle.
- 5 Caution do not put your hand underneath the injector being tested.
- 6 Open the shut off valve knob.
- 7 Operate hand lever and observe the maximum pressure from gauge (4) at which test oil sprays out of nozzle.
- 8 If this pressure does not match with manufacturer's recommendation, then adjust it with a shim/adjusting screw. Adding a shim/tightening the screw will increase pressure.
- 9 Observe that the test oil is sprayed from all the holes of nozzle. If not, then clean the nozzle hole.
- 10 Observe that the test oil does not dribble after spraying. If it does, then grind the nozzle needle.
- 11 Remove injector (5) from injector tester.
- 12 Fit injector on engine with new seating washer.

- 13 Connect high pressure pipe.
- 14 Connect over flow pipe.



## Perform smoke test in diesel engine

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- use of 4/5 gas analyser
- installation of 4/5 gas analyser
- setup of instrument for measuring emission parameter
- perform leak test
- measure CO, HC, CO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>, X, AFR/NO<sub>x</sub>
- examine the result.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- |                      |         |
|----------------------|---------|
| ū Trainee's tool kit | - 1 No. |
| • 4/5 gas analyser   | - 1 No. |
| • Screw Driver       | - 1 No. |

#### Equipments/Machineries

- |                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| • Diesel Engine vehicle | - 1 No. |
|-------------------------|---------|

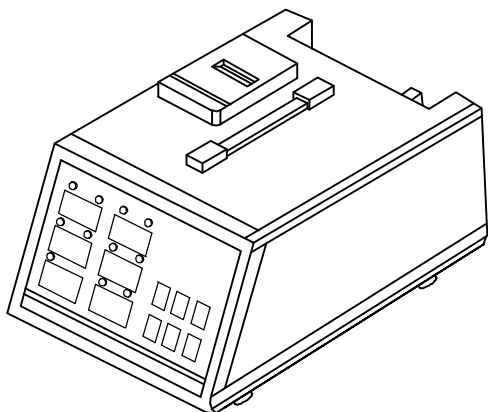
## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Installation

**Note: Safety instructions - This procedure applies to the product of 4/5 gas analyzer**

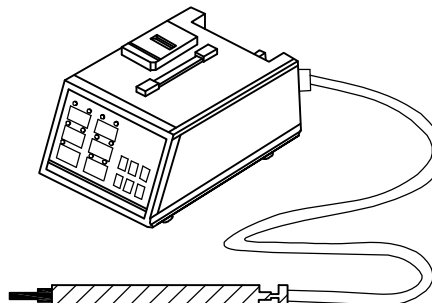
This analyzer (Fig 1 ) is a equipment to measure the gas emission density of an automobile enabling to diagnose the automobile status and its preventive maintenance so that it can provide a function to prevent the air pollution in advance.

Fig 1



- 1 Fit end of the probe hose into the measuring probe and the other end of the hose into the gas inlet in the rear of the analyzer (Fig 2). If the fitting condition is not good and the air comes into flow from outside, it may yield an incorrect measured value. Therefore, please carefully verify the fitting condition before use.

Fig 2

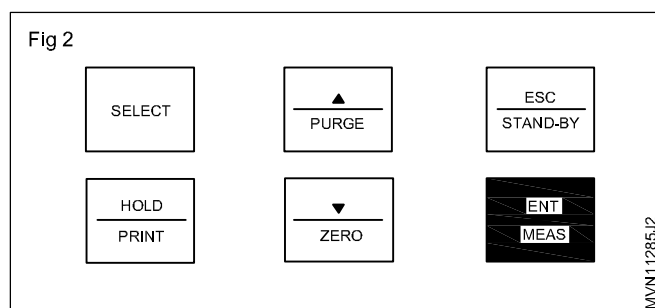
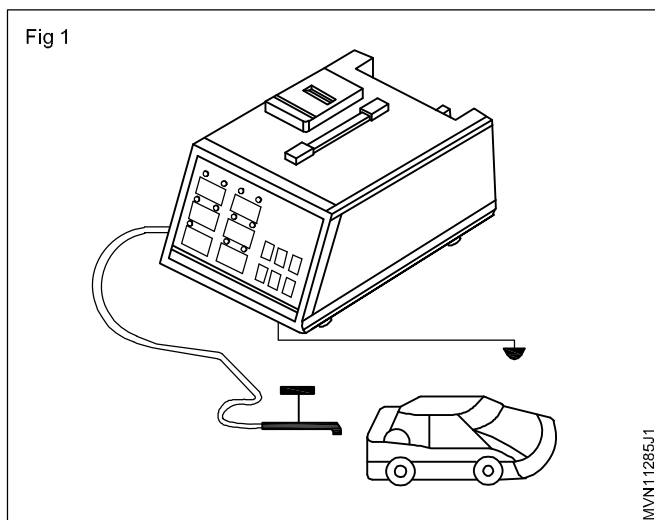


- 2 Turn off the power switch and then connect the power cable to the power socket located in the rear of the analyzer
- 3 Verify the fitting conditions of measuring probe filter and various filters located in the rear of the analyzer.
- 4 Verify again the connection status of the analyzer and then turn on the power switch.

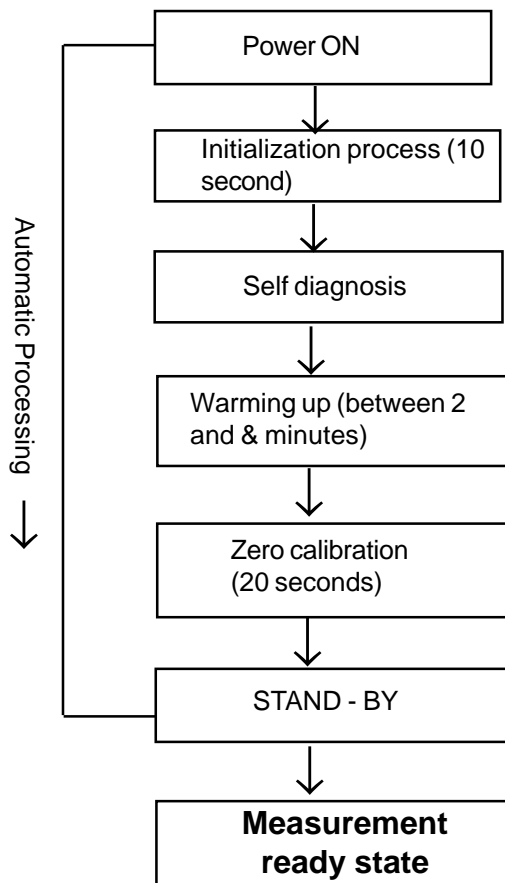
### TASK 2: Measurement

#### Measurement Mode

- 1 Place the probe in the clean air to perform the [Zero calibration].
- 2 Push the probe deep into the exhaust outlet of the vehicle and measure exhaust gas by pressing measurement key (Fig 1 & Fig 2).



- 3 The measurement operates for 30 minutes and the pump is automatically stopped by the activation of the power-saving mode. Press **MEAS** (**M**acro **E**conomic **A**pplication **S**ystem) key again to measure the exhaust gas for more than 30 minutes.
- 4 Pull the probe out of the exhaust outlet of the vehicle. Then clean the inside of analyser with the clean air by pressing the **PURGE** key until the measurement values drop to 0. (Fig 1)

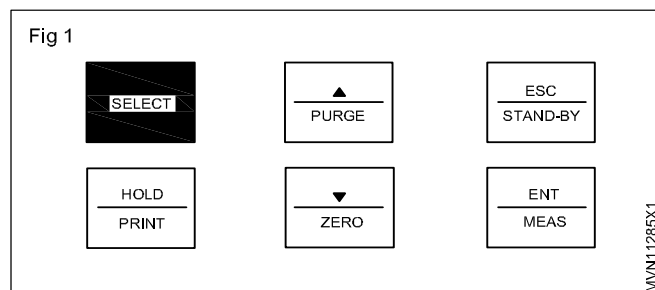


- 5 If all the measurements fall close to 0, press **STAND-BY** key to maintain instrument in a stand by mode.
- 6 Press the **ZERO** key for a series of measurement. Then, repeat 2,3 & 4.

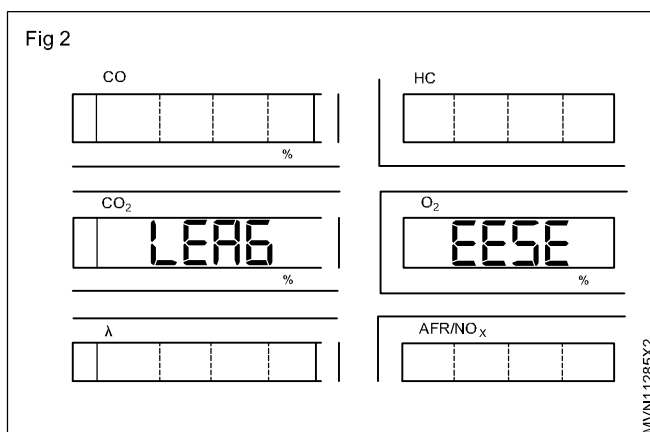
### TASK 3: Leak test

A function that looks for any possible air leakage from the sample-cell in order to indicate the exact result

- 1 Press the **SELECT** key (Fig 1) once in the stand-by mode to select the Leak Test mode



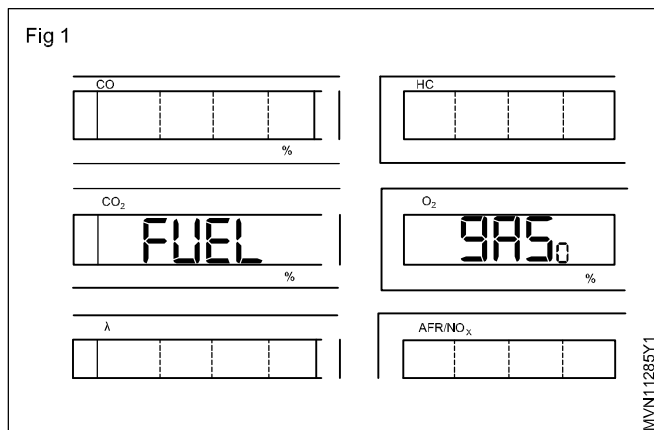
- 2 If the message 'Leak test' is indicated on the indication window as shown above (Fig 2) mount the leak test cap on the front side of the probe.
- 3 Press ENT key. The pump operates and the count values decrease by 1 from 20 during the 20-second leak test.



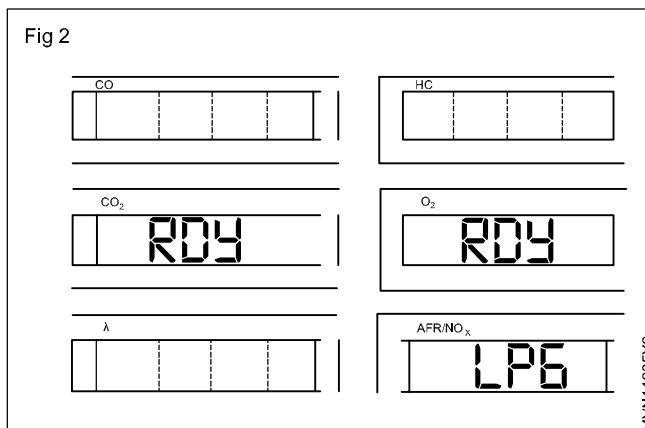
- 4 If the test turns out normal without any leak after 20 seconds, a message is indicated as 'PASS'. If the leak is identified, the message is indicated as 'FAIL'.

#### TASK 4: Selection of fuel

- 1 This is the function that selects fuel for testing vehicle. It is used to calculate air surplus rate (?) and AFR. This analyzer can select the fuel such Gasoline, LPG, CNG, and Alcohol. (Fig 1)
- 2 Selected fuel is indicated as in the above. Use  $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\blacktriangledown$  keys until it indicates the fuel to select.



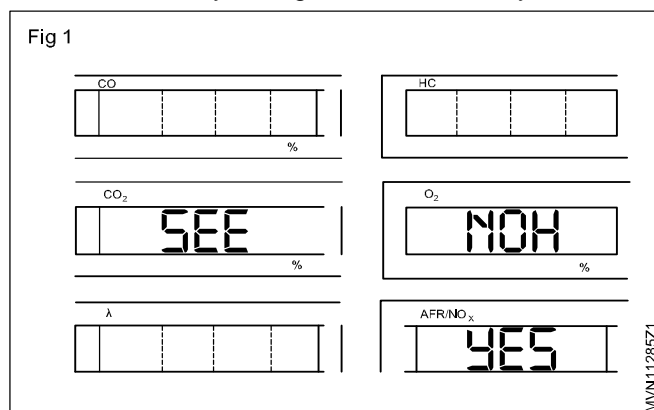
- 3 Press ENT key to setup the selected fuel.
- 4 For Example, If the "LPG" fuel is selected, the window indicates as shown in the below (Fig 2)



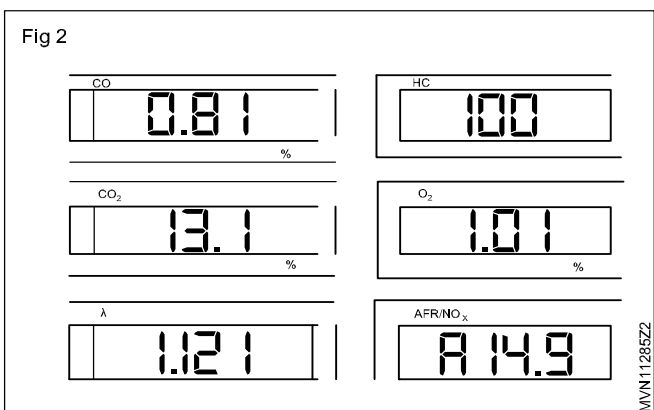
#### TASK 5: NO<sub>x</sub> setup

It is a function selecting where to attach NO<sub>x</sub> sensor.

- 1 Press select key for eight times in standby mode



- 2  $\blacktriangle$  key changes display to YES or to NO.
- 3 Select YES for NOx display mode (fig 1), NO for non-NOx display mode, then press ENT



- 4 "A" is attached as shown below (fig 2) in the AFR(Air/fuel rate) display mode and disappears in the NOx display mode. NOx/AFR mode is changed as the ENT key is pressed in measurement mode.

By measuring NO<sub>x</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>, and O<sub>2</sub>, in addition to HC and CO a mechanic gets a better look at the efficiency of the engine (Fig 3). Maximum limits for the measured gases are set by regulation according to Euro and BS standards. It is always desirable to have low amounts of four of five measured gases at all engine speeds.

The readings of the chemicals in the exhaust can lead the Technician to the cause of a drive-ability problem.

	IDLE	2500 RPM	Probable cause
HC ppm	0-150	0-75	Normal reading
CO%	1-15	0.0.8	
CO <sub>2</sub>	10-12	11-13	
O <sub>2</sub> %	0.5-2.0	0.5-1.25	
NO <sub>x</sub> ppm	100-300	200-1,000	
HC ppm	0-150	0-75	Rich Mixture
CO%	3.0+	3.0+	
CO <sub>2</sub> %	8-10	9-11	
O <sub>2</sub> %	0-0.5	0-0.5	
NO <sub>x</sub> ppm	0-200	100-500	
HC ppm	0-150	0-75	Lean Mixture
CO%	0-1.0	0-0.25	
CO <sub>2</sub> %	8-10	11	
O <sub>2</sub> %	1.5-3.0	1.0-2.0	
NO <sub>x</sub> ppm	300-1,000	1,000+	
HC ppm	50-850	50-750	Lean Misfire
CO%	0-0.3	0-0.3	
CO <sub>2</sub> %	5-9	6-10	
O <sub>2</sub> %	4-9	2-7	
NO <sub>x</sub> ppm	300-1,000	1,000+	
HC ppm	50-850	50-750	Misfire
CO%	0.1-1.5	0-0.8	
CO <sub>2</sub> %	6-8	8-10	
O <sub>2</sub> %	4-12	4-12	
NO <sub>x</sub> ppm	0-200	100-500	



## Check and clean PCV valve

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- inspect PCV hose
- inspect PCV valve.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Equipments/Instruments

- Trainee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Digital multimeter - 1 No.
- 12V battery - 1 No.
- Scan tool - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Diesel Vehicle - 1 No.

#### Materials

- PCV solvent/lacquer thinner - as reqd.
- Baniyan cloth - as reqd.
- PCV valve - 1 No.
- EVAP - 1 No.

## PROCEDURE

**Note:** Be sure to check that there is no obstruction in PCV valve or its hoses before checking engine idle speed/IAC duty, for obstructed PCV valve or hose hampers its accurate checking.

### TASK 1: PCV HOSE Inspection

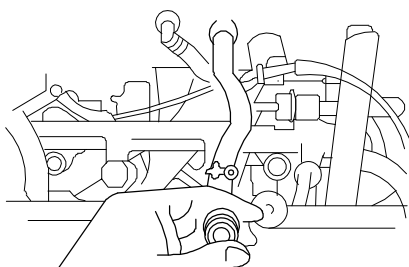
- 1 The PCV valve is usually located next to the valve cover of the engine, or in the intake manifold.
- 2 If you cannot identify it quickly, check with the workshop manual.
- 3 Check hoses for connection, leakage, clog and deterioration. Replace as necessary

-----

### TASK 2: PCV valve inspection

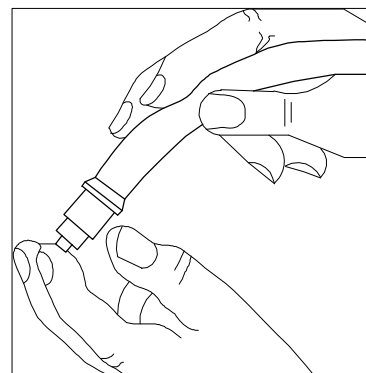
- 1 Switch on the ignition and start the engine. With the engine idling, pinch the hose attached to the PCV valve hard enough to shut off the supply of air through it. If the valve is working correctly, the idle speed should drop enough for you to be able to hear the change.
- 2 Or Disconnect PCV valve from cylinder head cover and install plug to head cover hole (Fig 1).
- 4 Place your finger over end of PCV valve (1) as shown in Fig 2 to check for vacuum. (Fig 2)

Fig 1



MVN11286H1

Fig 2

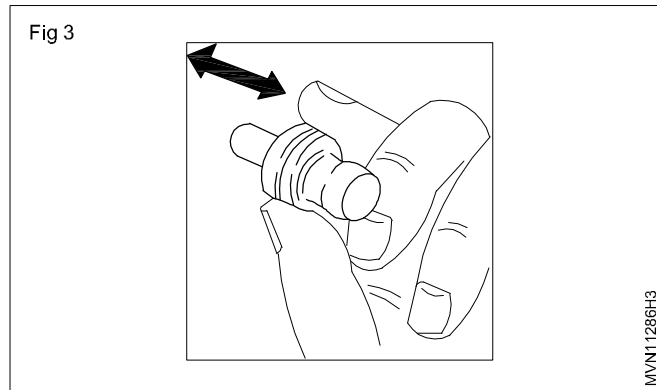


MVN11286H2

- 3 Run engine at idle speed.

- 5 If there is no vacuum, check for clogged valve.

- 6 Try cleaning it and to observe if it is working by with PCV solvent or lacquer thinners or immersing it in carburettor cleaner. There should be no gummy deposits or discoloration on a clean valve.
- 7 If your PCV valve must be replace, buy a new valve, remove the old one, and insert the new one in its place.
- 8 After checking vacuum, stop engine and remove PCV valve Fig 3 (1) Shake valve and listen for the rattle of check needle inside the valve. If valve does not rattle, replace it.
- 9 After checking, remove plug and install PCV valve.



**Inspect the EVAP canister purge system by scan tool**

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- **check for vacuum**
- **inspect vacuum passage**
- **measure the resistance of EVAP canister purge valve**
- **use of 12 V Battery for Inspection.**

**Requirements**

**Tools/Equipments/Instruments**

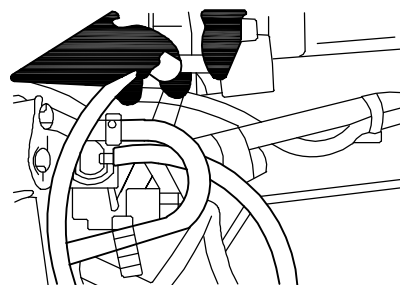
- |                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| • Digital Multimeter / Ohmmeter | - as reqd. |
| • 12 V Battery                  | - as reqd. |
| • Screw Driver                  | - as reqd. |
| • Spanner set                   | - as reqd. |

**PROCEDURE**

**TASK 1: Check vacuum passage**

- 1 To make sure that gear shift lever is in neutral position
- 2 In case of Auto transmission (A / T) model, selector lever in "P" range
- 3 Parking brake lever is pulled all the way up.
- 4 Warm up engine to normal operating temperature.
- 5 Disconnect purge hose as shown in (Fig 1) (1) from EVAP canister
- 6 Place your finger against the end of disconnected hose and check that vacuum is not felt there when engine is running at idle speed.
- 7 check that vacuum is felt when engine speed is increased to higher than about 3000 rpm.
- 8 If check result is not satisfactory, check vacuum passage, hoses, EVAP canister purge valve, wire harness and ECM (PCM).

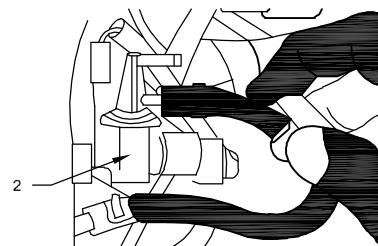
Fig 1



**TASK 2: Vacuum passage inspection**

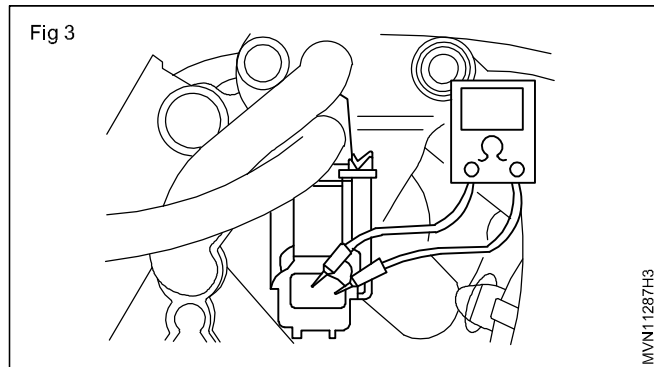
- 1 Start engine and run it at idle speed.
- 2 Disconnect vacuum hose from EVAP canister purge valve (Fig 2) (2). With finger placed against hose disconnected, check that vacuum is applied.
- 3 If it is not applied, clean vacuum passage by blowing compressed air
- 4 Check hoses for connection, leakage, clog and deterioration. Replace as necessary.

Fig 1



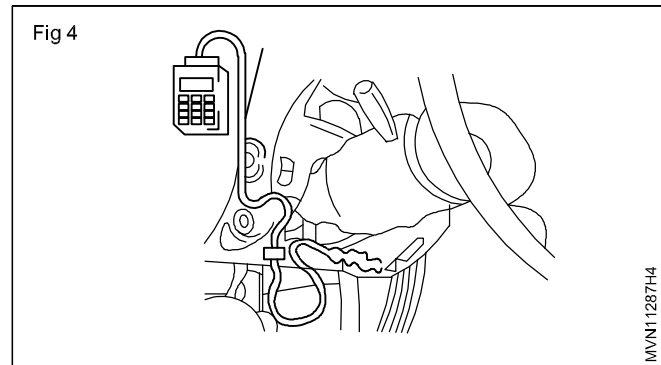
### TASK 3: EVAP canister purge valve inspection by use of scan tool

- 1 With ignition switch OFF, disconnect coupler from EVAP canister purge valve.
- 2 Check resistance between two terminals of EVAP canister purge valve. (Fig 3)



- 3 Resistance of EVAP canister purge valve to be 30-34 at 20°C
- 4 If resistance is as specified as per manual, proceed to next operation check.
- 5 If not, replace the EVAP canister purge valve

- 6 Disconnect vacuum hoses from intake manifold.
- 7 Blow into hose "A". Air should not come out of nozzle "B". as shown in (Fig 4)

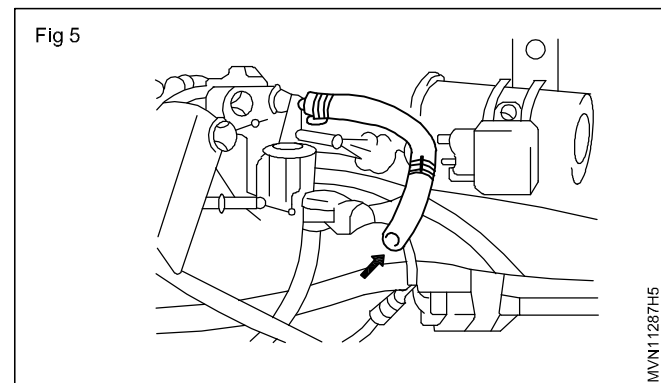


### TASK 4: Use of 12V battery for inspection

- 1 Connect 12V-battery to EVAP canister purge valve terminals. In this state, blow hose "A". Air should come out of hose "B". (Fig 5)

**Warning: Do not suck the air through valve. Fuel vapor inside valve is harmful.**

- 2 If check result is not as described, check wire harnesses for open or short. If it is in good condition, replace EVAP canister purge valve and recheck
- 3 Connect vacuum hoses
- 4 Connect EVAP canister purge valve coupler securely.



## Remove and refit EGR valve

**Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- identify EGR Valve
- disconnect EGR valve connection
- measure EGR Valve Resistance
- remove EGR Valve
- inspect EGR valve
- replace EGR Valve

### Requirements

#### Tools/Equipments/Instruments

- Traniee's tool kit - 1 No.
- Screw Driver set - 1 No.
- Box Spanner set - 1 No.
- Digital Multimeter/Ohmmeter - 1 No.

#### Equipments/Machineries

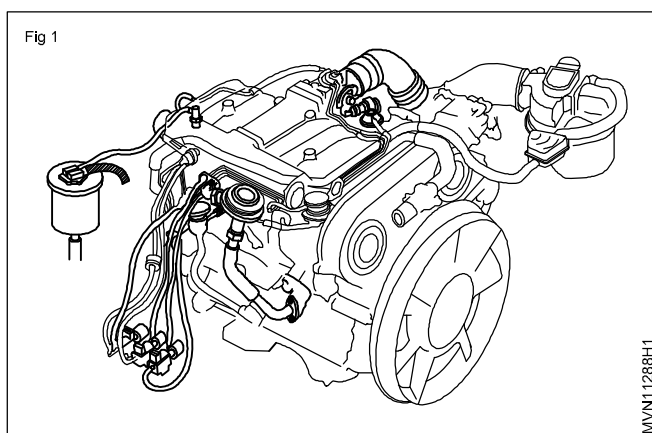
- Diesel Vehicle - 1 No.

#### Material

- Tray - 1 No.
- Cotton waste - 1 No.
- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Vacuum hose - as reqd.
- EGR valve - 1 No.

## PROCEDURE

- 1 Locate the EGR Valve (Fig1)

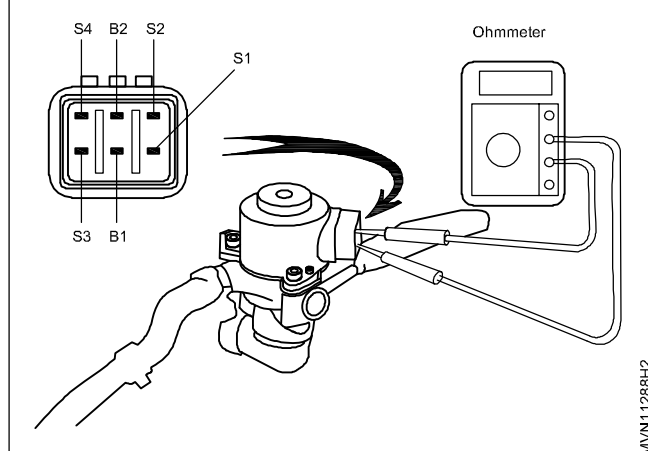


- 2 Disconnect negative terminal cable from battery.

**Warning : Work must be started after 1min from the time ignition switch is turned on to LOCK position and the negative (-) terminal cable is disconnected from the battery.**

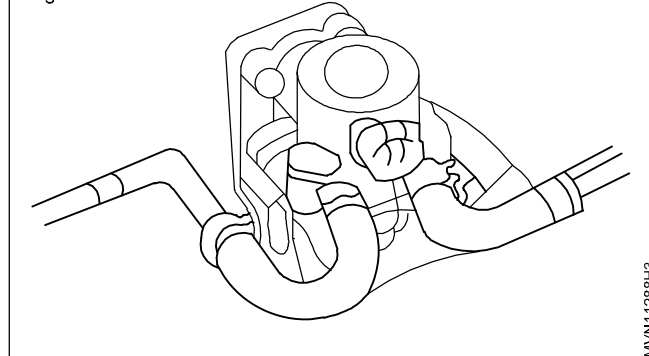
- 3 Disconnect exhaust gas recirculation valve connector (Fig 1)
- 4 Inspect exhaust gas recirculation valve resistance
- 5 Using an ohmmeter measure the resistance between terminal B1 (or B2) and other terminals (S1, S2, S3 and S4) (Fig 2)
- 6 Resistance (Cold) should be 19.9 to 23.4 Ohms
- 7 Drain engine coolant
- 8 Remove exhaust gas recirculation valve

Fig 2



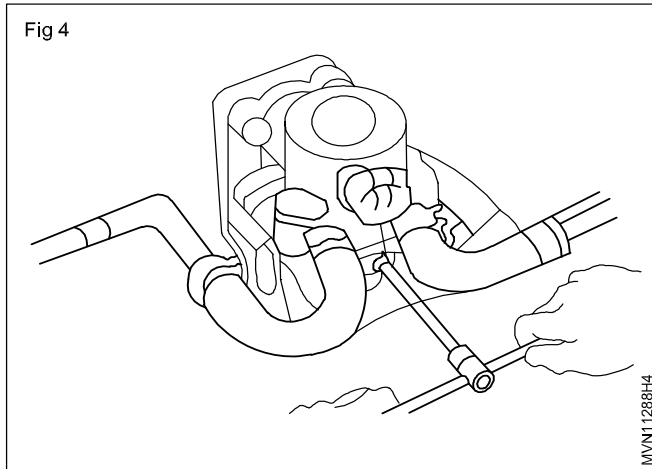
- 9 Disconnect the water bypass hose (from IAC Valve (Fig 3) (1)

Fig 3

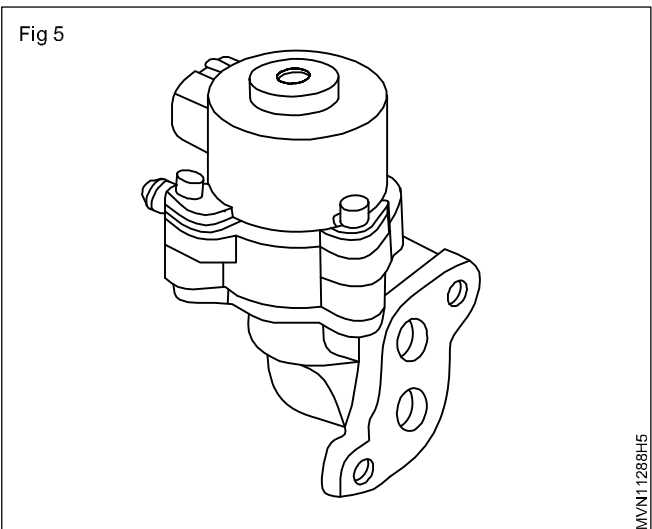


10 Disconnect water bypass hose (from rear water bypass joint) (Fig 3) (2)

11 Remove the nuts of exhaust gas recirculation valve and gasket (Fig 4)



12 Visually inspect EGR valve for sticking and heavy carbon deposits (Fig 5)

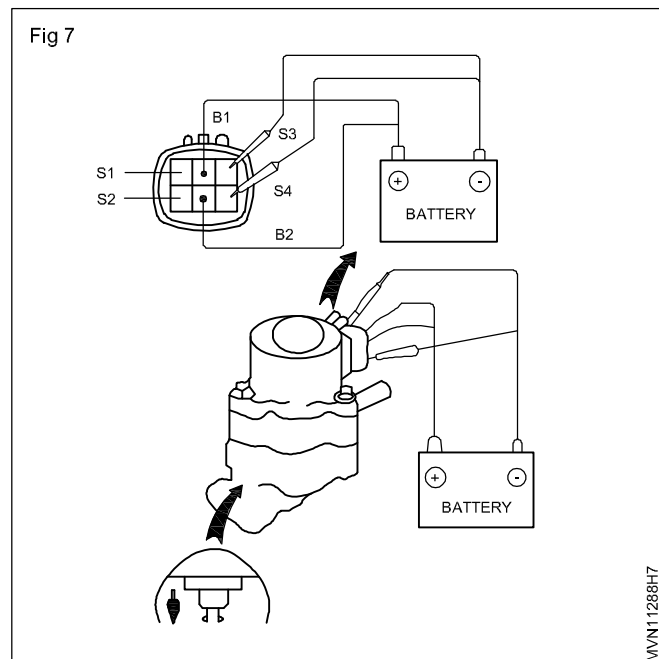
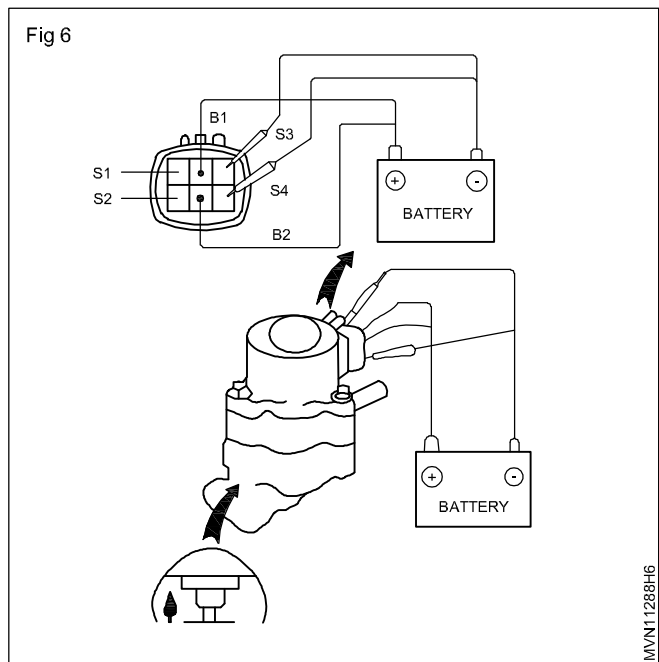


13 If problem is found replace the EGR valve assembly

14 If not, Inspect EGR valve operation

15 Apply battery voltage to terminal B1 and B2, and while repeatedly grounding (Fig 6) (\*S4) - (S4 and \*S3) - (S3 and \*S2) - (S2 and \*S1) - (S1 and \*S4) in sequence, and check that the valve moves towards the open position. (Hint: Keep the terminal marked with an asterisk (\*) grounded to the next grounding.)

16 Apply battery voltage to terminal B1 and B2, and while repeatedly grounding (Fig 7) (\*S1) - (S1 and \*S2) - (S2 and \*S3) - (S3 and \*S4) - (S4 and \*S1) in sequence, and check that the valve moves towards the closed position. (Hint: Keep the terminal marked with an asterisk (\*) grounded while proceeding to the next grounding.)



17 Perform this operation after opening the valve by performing the step above.

18 If operation is not as specified, replace the EGR Valve assembly.

## Overhaul and test alternator

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- locate the circuit from the alternator to the battery
- remove the alternator
- dismantle the alternator
- check the stator
- check the rotor
- check the diodes
- check the condition of the brushes
- check the slip-rings
- assemble the alternator.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tools kit - 1 No.
- Socket spanner set - 1 No.
- 12 volt lead acid battery - 1 No.
- Test lamp and cables - as reqd.

#### Equipments/Machineries

- Diesel Engine - 1 No.

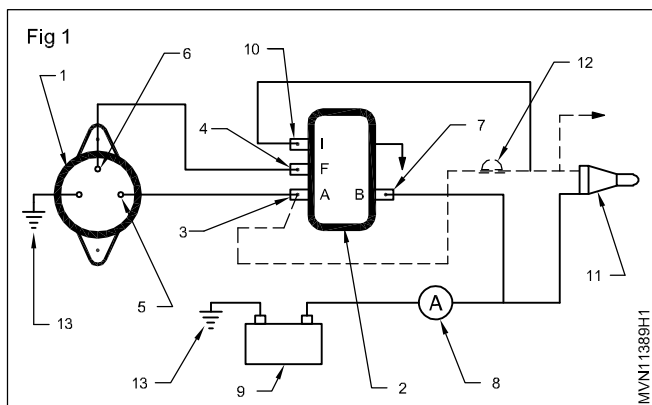
#### Materials

- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Emery paper - as reqd.
- Rotor - as reqd.
- Banian cloth - as reqd.
- Grease - as reqd.
- Diodes - as reqd.
- Bearing - 2 Nos.

## PROCEDURE

### TASK 1: Identify the alternator circuit

- 1 Locate the circuit from the alternator's (1) output terminal (5) to the voltage regulator's (2) terminal A (3). (Fig 1)

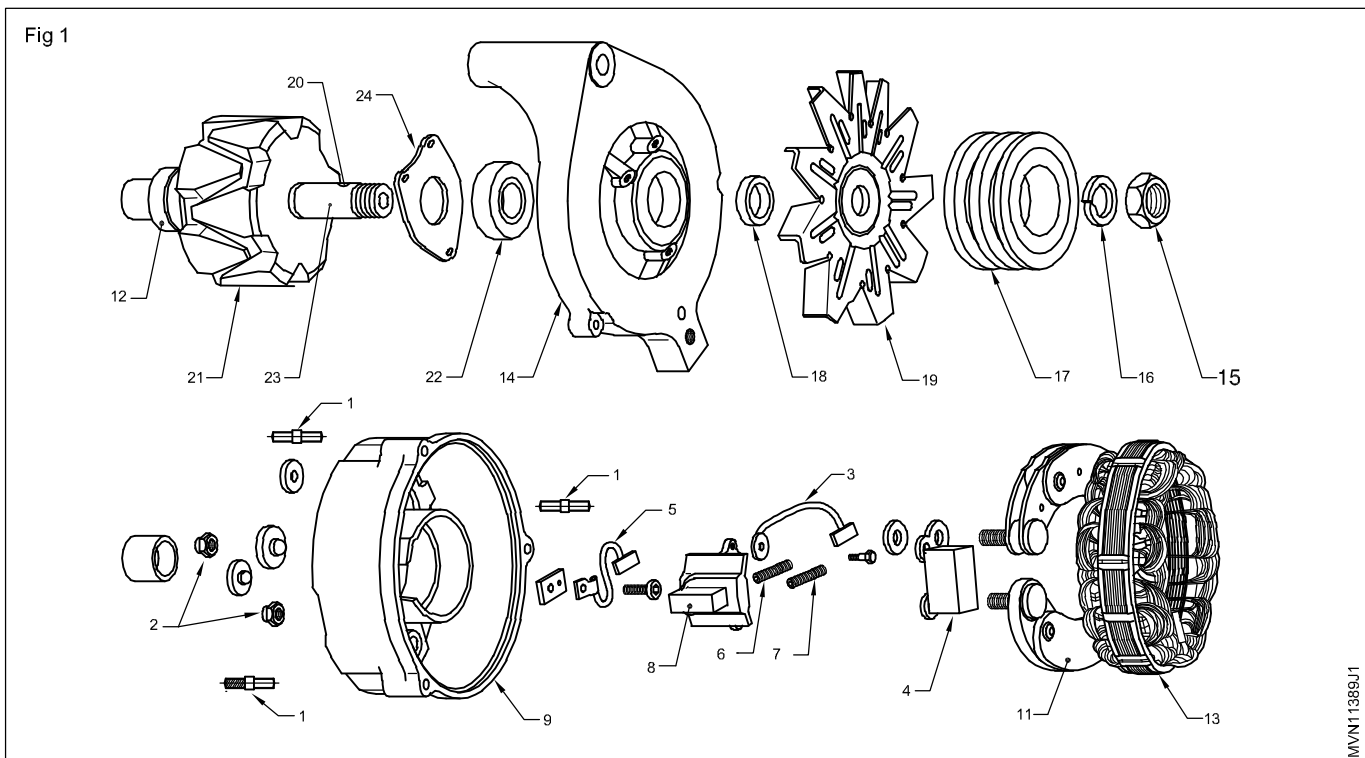


- 2 Locate the feedback circuit from the voltage regulator's (2) 'F' terminal (4) to the alternator's (1) field terminal (6).
- 3 Locate the circuit from the voltage regulator's (2) 'B' terminal (7) to the ammeter (8).
- 4 Locate the circuit from the ammeter (8) to the battery (9).
- 5 Locate the circuit from the voltage regulator's (2) 'A' terminal (3) to the indicator lamp (12).
- 6 Locate the circuit from the indicator lamp (12) to the ignition starting switch (11).
- 7 Locate the ground connection (13).
- 8 Locate the circuit from the ammeter (8) to the ignition starting switch (11).

### TASK 2: Removing alternator

- 1 Disconnect the earth cable of the battery.
- 2 Disconnect the wires from the alternator.
- 3 Dismount the bolts which secure the alternator with the bracket.
- 4 Take out the alternator.

### TASK 3: Dismantling (Fig 1)



- 1 Mark a line across both the end shields (14 & 9) and the stator to facilitate alignment during reassembling.
- 2 Remove the cover securing studs and nuts (1 & 2) and lift the cover. (Fig 1)
- 3 Disconnect the regulator leads (3) and (5) (+ve, -ve).
- 4 Remove the screw securing the regulator (4) to the brush box and remove the regulator (4).
- 5 Remove both the brushes (6) & (7). Note down the position of the sealing pad.
- 6 Remove the screws securing the brush-box (8) to the slipping end bracket (11) and lift out the brush-box (8).
- 7 Release the stator winding cable ends from the rectifier by applying a hot soldering iron to the terminal tags of the rectifier.
- 8 Gently pull out the cable end when the solder melts.
- 9 Remove the screws securing the rectifier assembly (11) to the slip-ring end bracket and lift out the rectifier assembly.
- 10 Remove the fixing bolts.
- 11 Take out the slip-ring end bracket (11).
- 12 Take out the stator assembly (13) from the drive end bracket (14).
- 13 Remove the shaft nut (15), washers (16) and take out the pulley (17), fan (19), woodruff key (20) and spacers (18).
- 14 Push at the rotor shaft (23) end with your thumb to separate the drive end bearing (22) and rotor assembly (21).

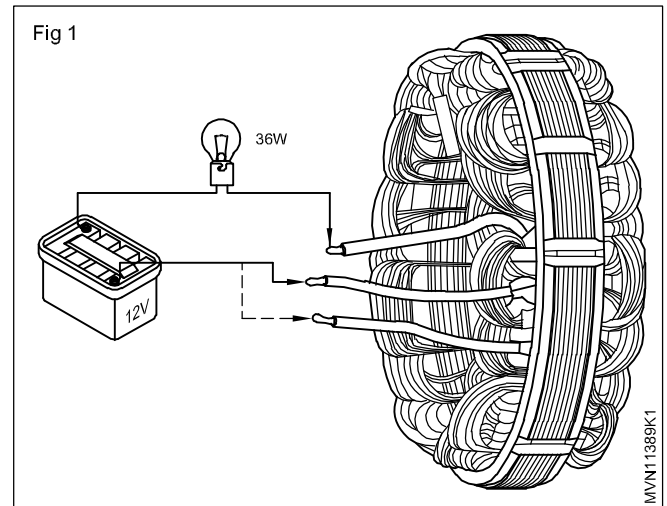
### TASK 4: Cleaning and inspection

- 1 Clean all the parts with kerosene and a nylon brush except the carbon brushes.
- 2 Clean the slip-ring (12) with fine emery-paper and wipe with a clean rag.
- 3 Clean the brushes with petrol.
- 4 Check the bearings visually for any damage. If necessary, replace the bearing with a new one.
- 5 Check the brushes for correct dimension, according to the manufacturer's specification; replace, if required.
- 6 Check the brush spring tension; replace if required.
- 7 Check for the external crack on drive end bracket and slip end bracket.



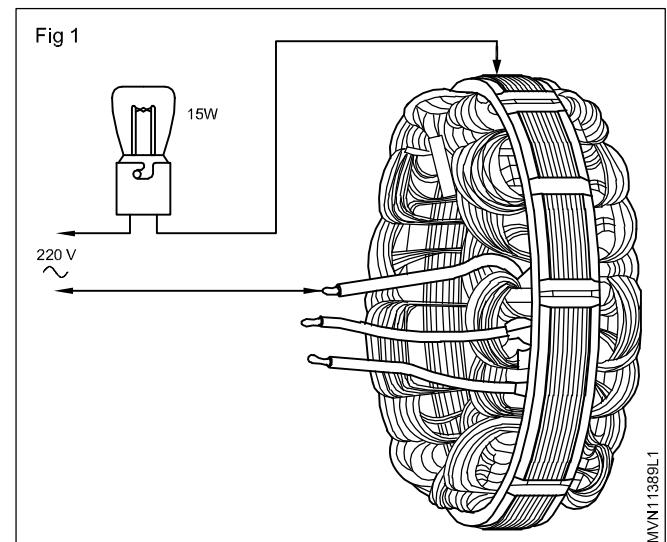
#### TASK 5: Test for open circuit in the stator

- 1 Check the continuity of the stator windings (Fig 1). First connect any two of the stator winding leads to a 12 V battery in series with a 36 W test lamp.
- 2 The lamp should glow. If the first part of the test is satisfactory, transfer one of the test lamp leads, to the third lead in the stator.
- 3 The test lamp should glow. If there is any damage or burning or overheating of the winding, renew the stator assembly.



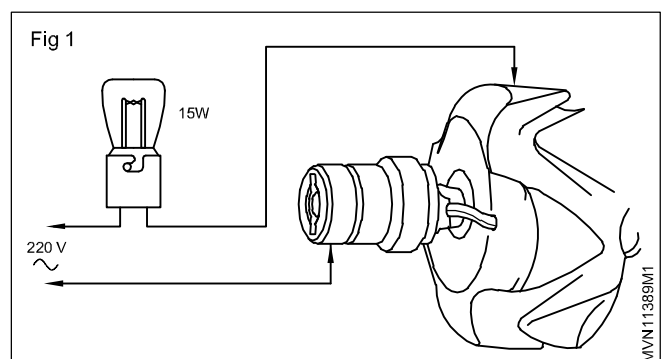
#### TASK 6: Test for short circuit in stator

- 1 Check the insulation of the stator windings by connecting a 220 V AC mains with a 220 Volt. 15 W test lamp in series between the stator laminators and each one of the three stator lead one by one. The lamp should not glow. If the test lamp glows then the stator winding is defective, renew the same (Fig.1).



#### TASK 7: Test for short circuit in rotor

- 1 Check the rotor winding insulation by connecting to a 220 V AC mains with a 220 V 15 watt test lamp in circuit between either of the slip-rings and the rotor body. The lamp should not glow. If the lamp glows then the rotor winding is defective; rotor assembly need renewal (Fig 1).

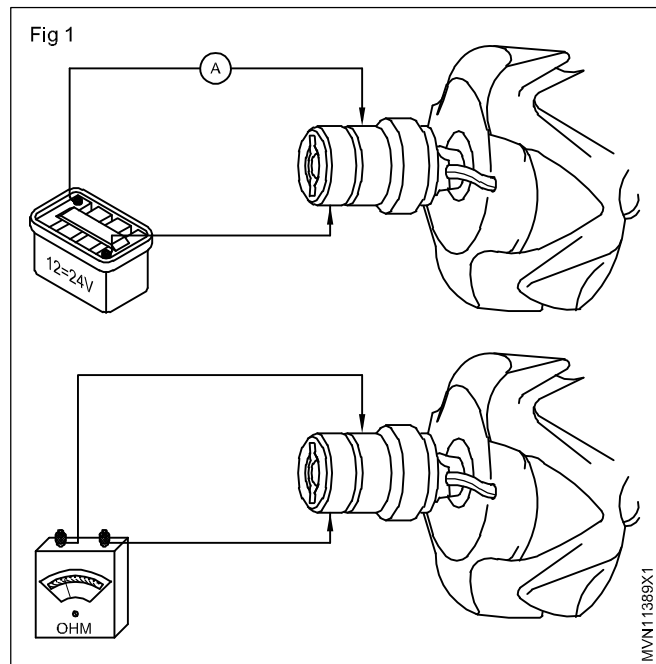


### TASK 8: Test for open circuit in Rotor winding

- 1 Check the motor winding continuity by connecting a 12 V/ 24 V battery and the moving coil ammeter between the slip-rings. (Fig 1)

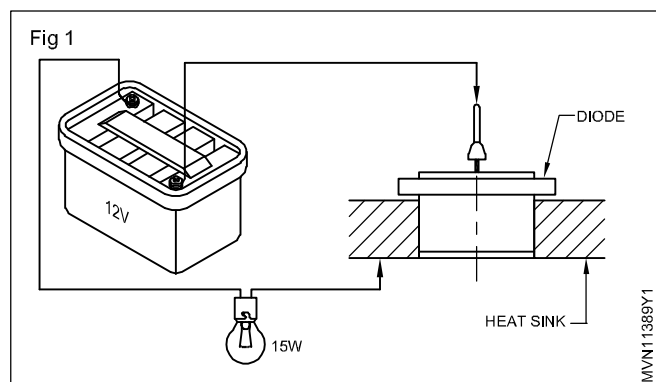
**The current should be 2 to 2.5 A approximately for 12 V. If it is not of the correct value then renew the rotor.**

- 2 Check the resistance of the rotor winding with an ohmmeter.
- 3 The resistance should be 9.6 to  $\pm 1$  ohms for a 24 V alternator and 3.2  $\pm 0.5$  ohms for a 12 V alternator. If the readings are not within the limit, renew the rotor assembly.



### TASK 9: Testing diodes

- 1 Test each diode separately by connecting a 12 V battery and 12 V, 15 W bulb in series with the diode. Connect one test lead to the diode connecting pin and the other lead to the heat sink. (Fig 1)
- 2 Watch if the lamp glows. Then reverse the test lead connections. The lamp should glow during one direction of the test connection only.
- 3 Replace the diode if required.



### TASK 10: Check the slip rings

- 1 Check the slip-rings(12) for their trueness in a lathe and with a dial test indicator. Check the surface of the slip-ring for burnt or dirt. Replace the slip-ring, if required.

**While assembling ensure that the scribed reference lines are in alignment.**

- 2 Assemble the rotor assembly (21) with the drive and bearing (22) to the drive end bracket (14) and fix the bearing retainer (24) with screws.
- 3 Assemble the spacer (18) woodruff key (20), fan (19) and pulley (17) on the rotor shaft (23).
- 4 Assemble the stator assembly (13) to the drive end bracket (14).
- 5 Place the rectifier assembly to the slip-ring end bracket and fix the screws.

- 6 Place the slip-ring end bracket (9) and fix the fixing bolt/stud.
- 7 Solder the stator winding cable ends to the rectifiers.
- 8 Place the brush-box on the slip-ring end bracket (9) and fix the screws.
- 9 Place the sealing pad and place both the brushes.
- 10 Place the delivery brush mounting plate in position and fix the screws.
- 11 Place the regulator (4) on the brush-box and connect the regulator leads (3) & (5) and fix the screws.
- 12 Place the cover and fix the cover securing studs (1) and washer (10) and tighten the nuts (2) firmly.

## Refitting alternator on the vehicle and testing

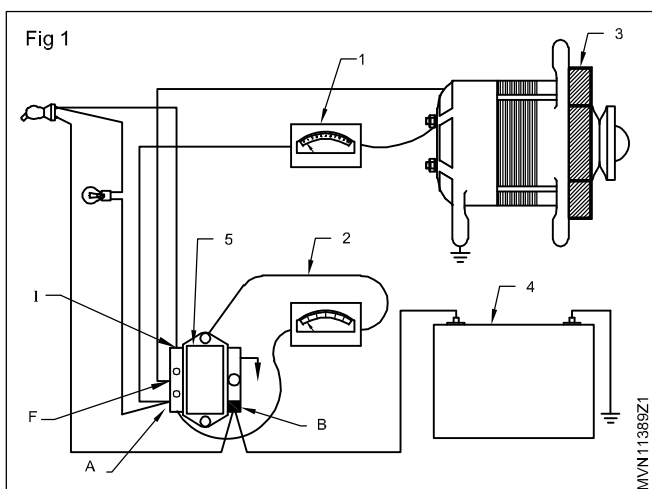
**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- refit an alternator to the diesel engine
- connect the battery to the circuit
- test the alternator's performance
- adjust the fan belt play.

### Refitting alternator to the vehicle

- 1 Place and secure the alternator in its bracket using bolts & nuts.
- 2 Connect all the wires of the alternator which you disconnected earlier. Connect the battery cables to the circuit. (Fig 1)

### Testing alternator's performance



- 3 Check the fan belt for overstretched or damaged condition.
- 4 Check if all the ends of the battery cables are clean. check all the wire connections for loose, dirty or broken connections.
- 5 Disconnect the battery earth cable. Connect the ammeter (1) in series. Connect the voltmeter (2) parallel to the alternator terminal and earth. Connect a wire across the field output terminal in the alternator (3). Connect the battery cable and put on the starting switch. Note the ammeter reading.

**The ammeter reading should be 2A approximately in the field current drawn from the battery (4).**

**The 'F' lead should be disconnected from the regulator, and the wire end should be insulated to avoid accidental earthing.**

- 6 Run the engine at medium speed .Switch on the lights and other electrical appliances.

**The voltmeter reading should be of 14.2 V approximately.**

**The ammeter reading should also be the maximum.**

- 7 If the voltmeter (2) and ammeter (1) read low, the regulator (5) needs replacement.

### Adjusting fan belt tension

- 8 Check the fan belt for proper tension.
- 9 If the fan belt tension is low/high adjust by removing the alternator to the appropriate side.

### General maintenance of alternator.

- Clean the alternator periodically.
- Check the mounting bolts for tightness.
- Check the fan belt condition and tension to the recommended value.
- Check the specific gravity of the battery electrolyte.
- Check the battery terminals for tightness and cleanliness.
- Check the brush once in a year (1000 hours). If necessary replace it.
- Check the bearings once in two years. renew, if worn out.
- Use fine emery-paper to clean the slip rings.

## Overhaul and test starter motor

**Objectives :** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to

- remove the starter motor
- dismantle the starter motor
- test the magnetic switch
- test the armature
- clean and test the commutator
- check continuity of field coils
- check over-running clutch
- check end cover's shaft bushes
- assemble the starter motor
- test the starter motor for performance
- fit the starter motor on the engine.

### Requirements

#### Tools/Instruments

- Trainee's tools kit - 1 No
- Socket spanner set - 1 No
- Star/screw driver set - 1 No
- Circlip plier - 1 No
- Multimetre - 1 No
- 'V' block - 2 No
- Dial gauge - 1 No

#### Equipment/ Machine

- Running engine - 1 No.
- Vernier caliber - 1 No.
- Spring tension tester - 1 No.

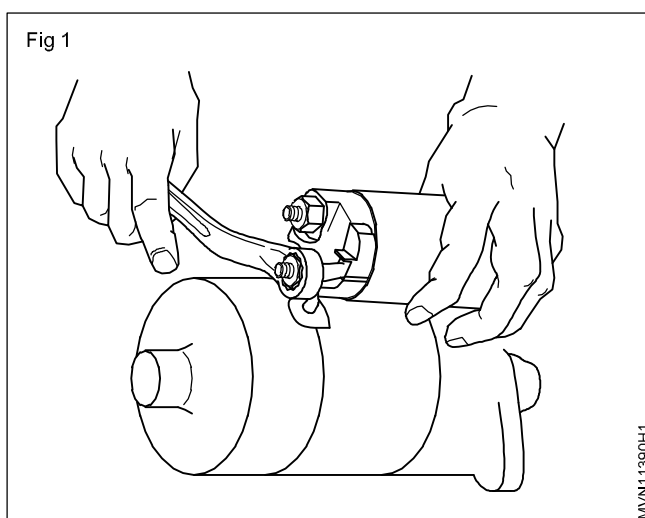
#### Materials

- Kerosene - as reqd.
- Grease - as reqd.
- Emery paper - as reqd.
- Hacksaw blade - as reqd.
- Cleaning brush - as reqd.
- Copper/ carbide brush - as reqd.

## PROCEDURE

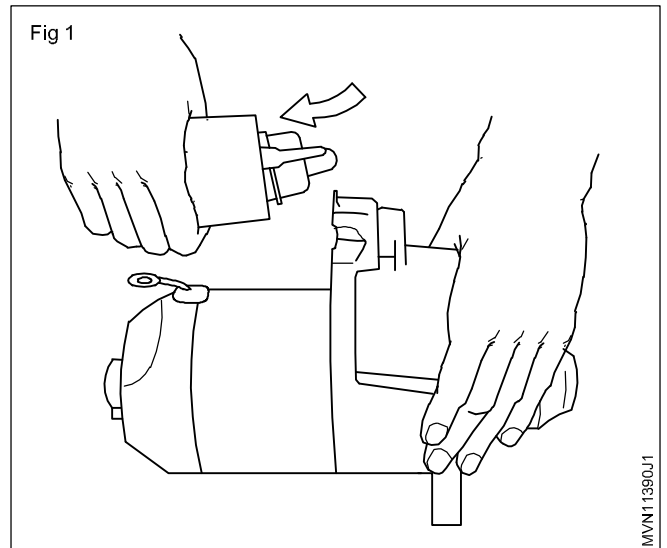
### TASK 1: Dismounting the starter motor

- 1 Disconnect the earth lead from the battery.
- 2 Disconnect the Solenoid (Magnetic) switch lead wires (1) and the battery cable(2) from the starting motor terminals.
- 3 Remove the starter motor mounting bolts (3) (Fig 1)
- 4 Remove the starter motor.



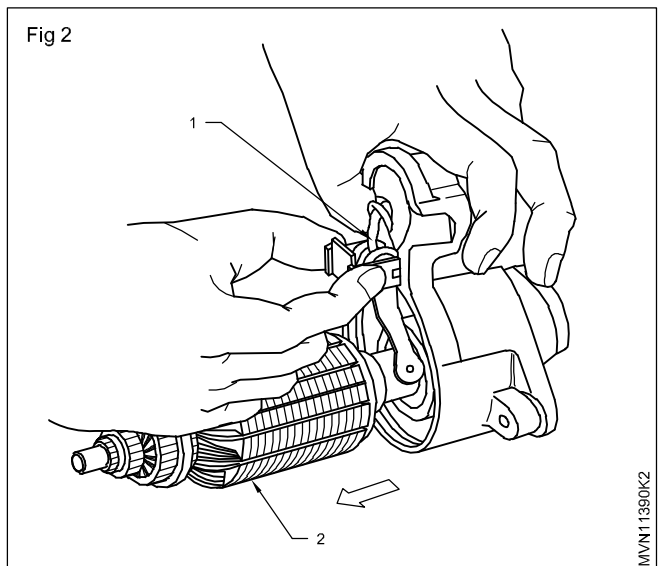
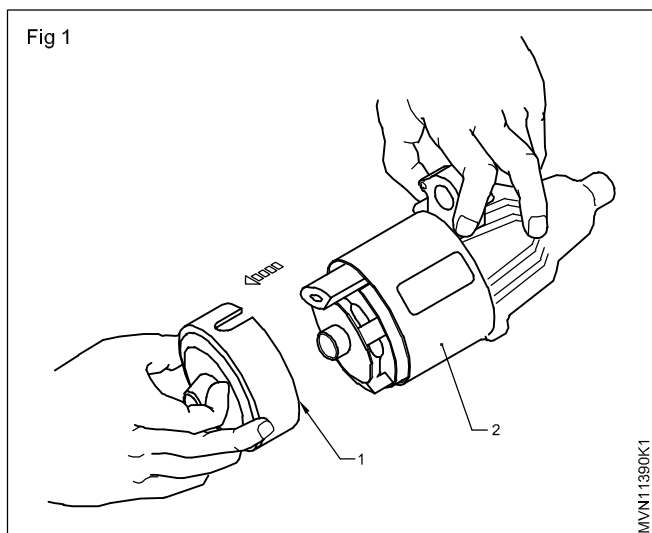
## TASK 2: Removal of the Solenoid switch assembly

- 1 Remove the cable terminal nut and disconnect the lead wires (4) from the solenoid magnetic switch.
- 2 Remove the two mounting nuts (1) and then take out the magnetic switch by slight tilting. (Fig 1)

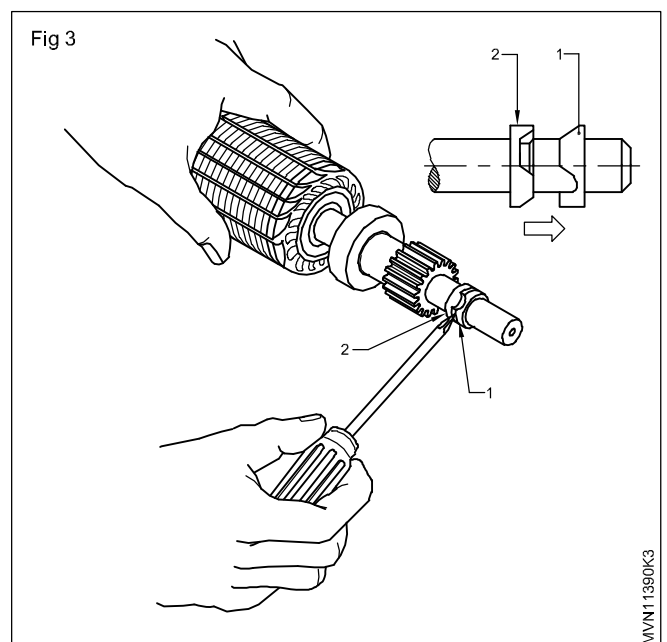


## TASK 3: Dismantling of the motor assembly

- 1 Remove the through bolts.
- 2 Remove the commutator end cover (1). (Fig.1)

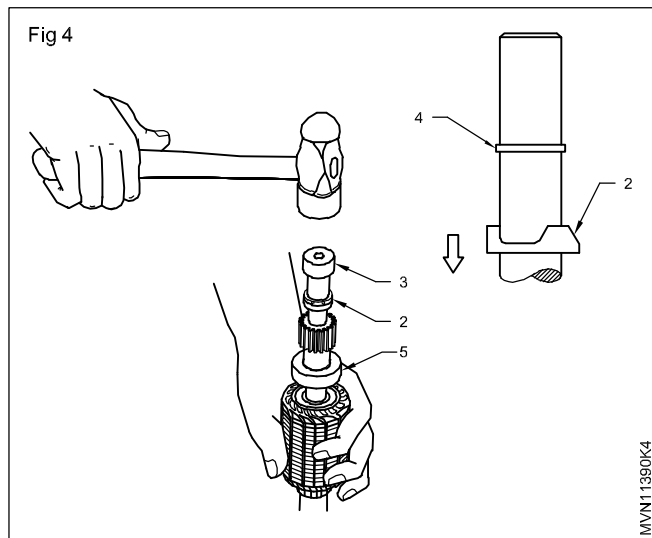


- 3 Remove the brush holder cover from the brush holder (2).
- 4 Remove the brush springs and copper brushes, and Starter body (3).
- 5 Remove the yoke assembly (Fig 2)
- 6 Remove the armature (2) along with the pinion drive lever (1).
- 7 Insert the screwdriver tip in the gap between the two stop collars (1) and (2). (Fig.3)
- 8 Push the front collar (1) outward.

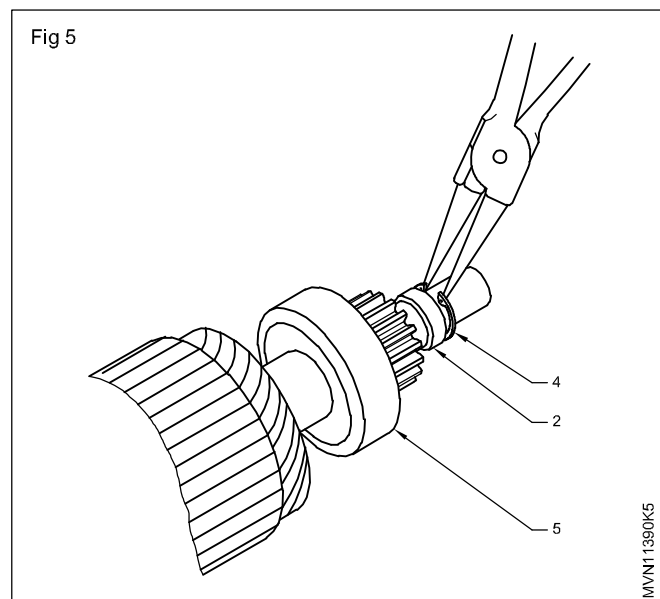


9 Using a 14 mm socket (3) push the rear stop collar (2) downwards. (Fig.4).

10 Remove the armature circlip (4) by using a circlip plier, and with the help of a screw driver.



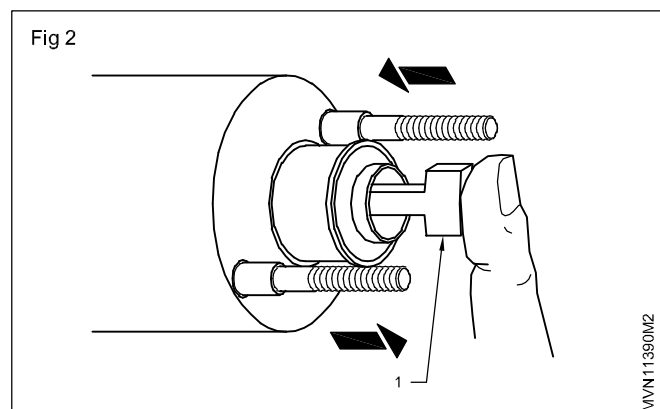
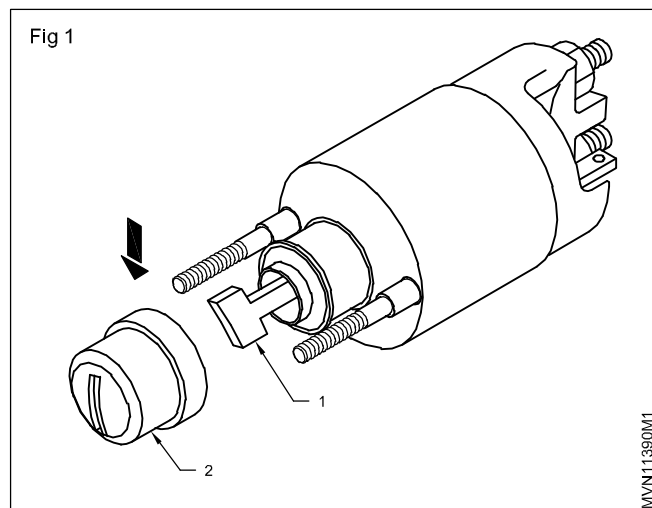
11 Pull out the rear pinion stop collar (2), and over-running clutch (5). (Fig 5)



#### TASK 4: Magnetic Switch (Solenoid switch)

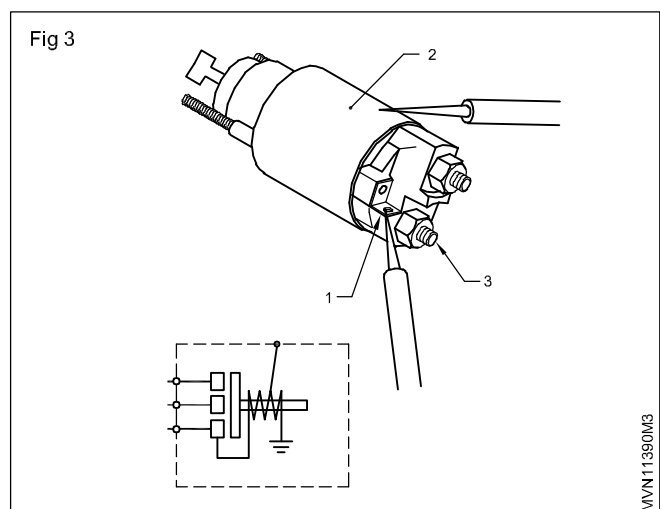
1 Inspect the magnetic switch boot (2) for breakage.

2 Inspect the plunger (1) for wear or damage. Replace if necessary. (Fig 1)



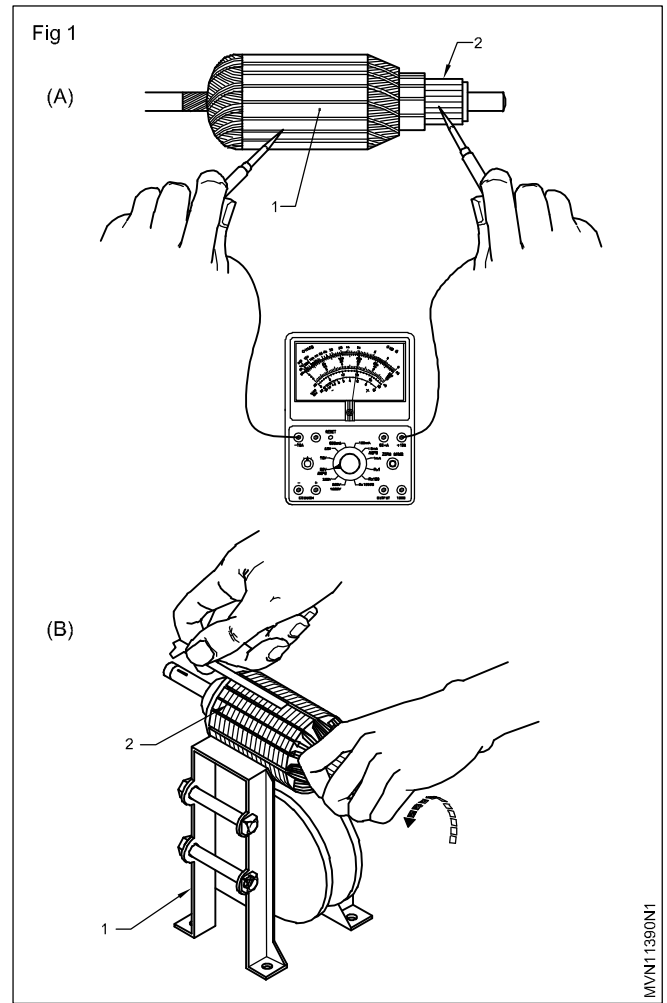
3 Push the plunger (1) in and release it. The plunger should return quickly to its original position. Replace if necessary. (Fig 2)

4 Check for continuity across the magnetic switch's terminal (1) and coil case (2). If no continuity exists, the coil is open and should be replaced. (Fig.10) Check for continuity across magnetic switch terminal (1) and terminal (3). If no continuity exists, the coil is open and should be replaced. (Fig 3)



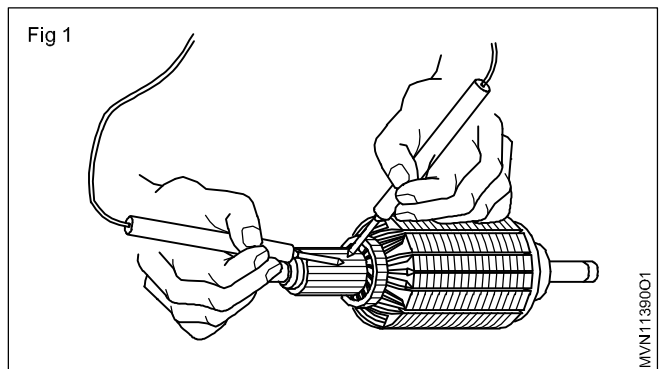
### TASK 5: Armature for ground

- 1 Using an ohmmeter test for continuity between the commutator (2) and armature core (1). The ohmmeter will indicate infinite resistance if the insulation is in sound condition. (Fig 1A)
- 2 Placing armature (2) on the growler (1) and switch on.
- 3 Lay a thin steel strip (4) on the armature core with small air gap.
- 4 Rotate the armature slowly by hand. (Fig 1B)
- 5 The steel strip will vibrate if a coil is shorted. Then replace the armature.



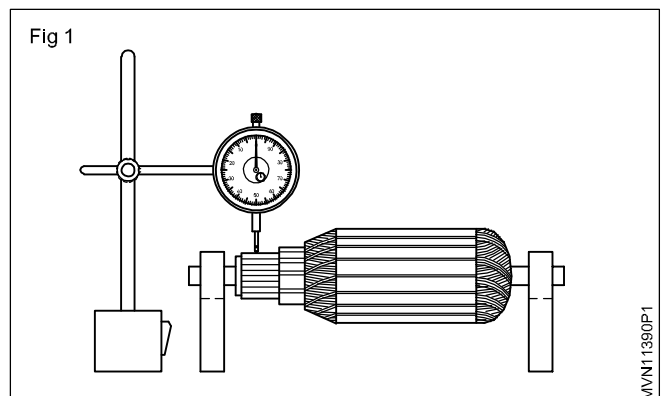
### TASK 6: Open circuit

- 1 Check for continuity between each pair of adjacent commutator segments, using an ohmmeter. (Fig 1).
- 2 If there is any discontinuity the ohmmeter needle will not deflect. Replace the armature assembly. (Fig 1)

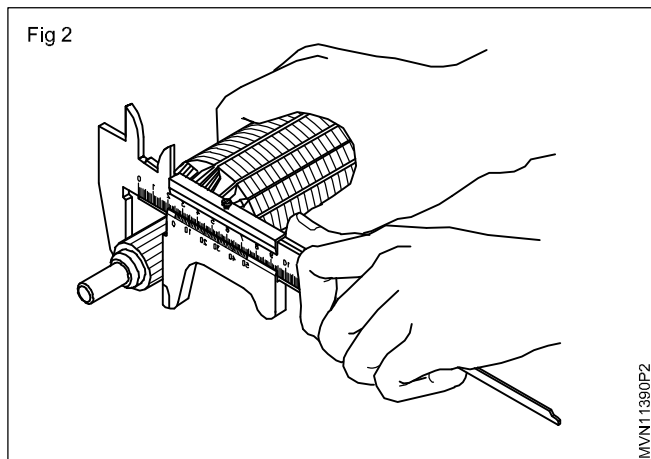


### TASK 7: Commutator run out

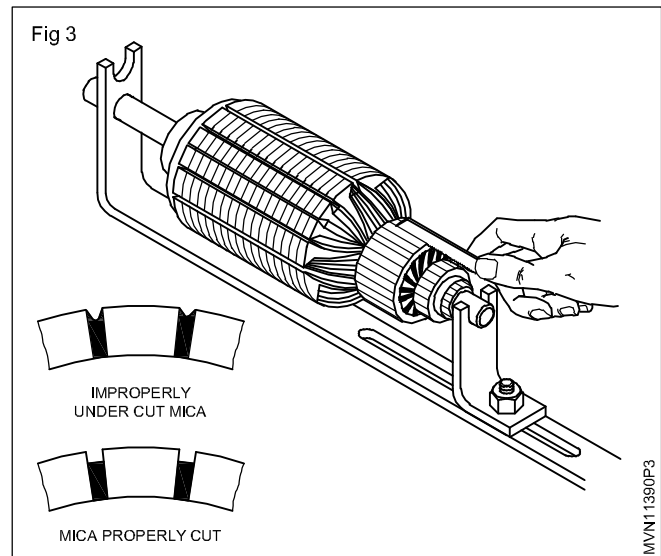
- 1 Place the armature between two 'V' blocks. (Fig.1) or stand.
- 2 Using a dial gauge check the commutator for run out by slowly rotating it by hand. (Fig 1)



- 3 Correct it on lathe if required. (Fig 2)
- 4 Check for wear and replace the commutator if the diameter is below limit. (Fig 2)

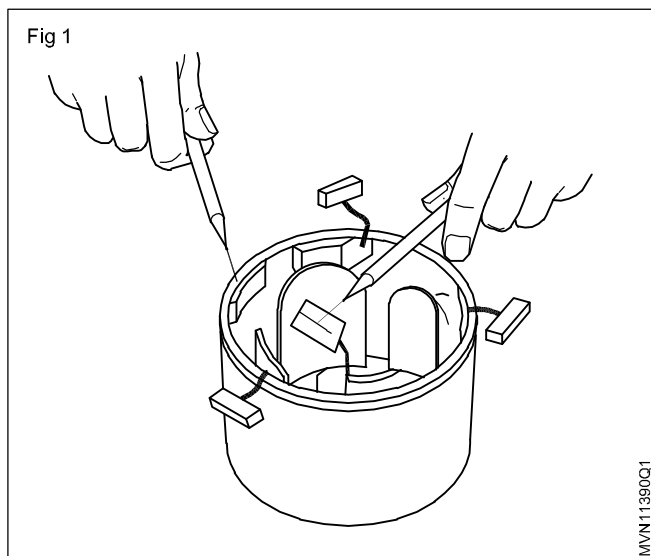


- 5 Clean the surface by using 400 emery cloth. Check the mica depth to a minimum of 0.2 mm and correct by using a hacksaw blade or knife, if required. (Fig 3)

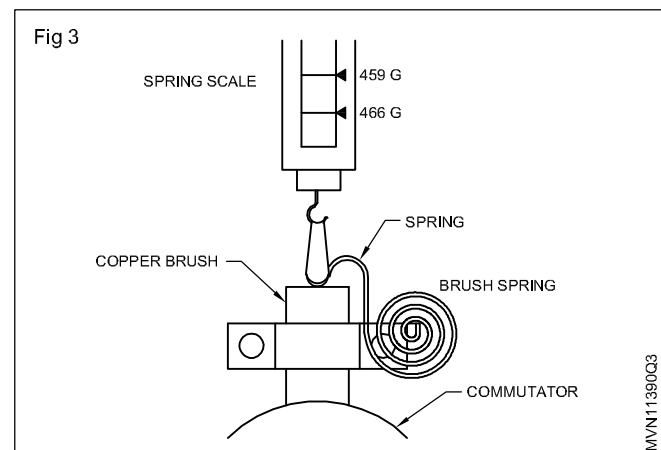
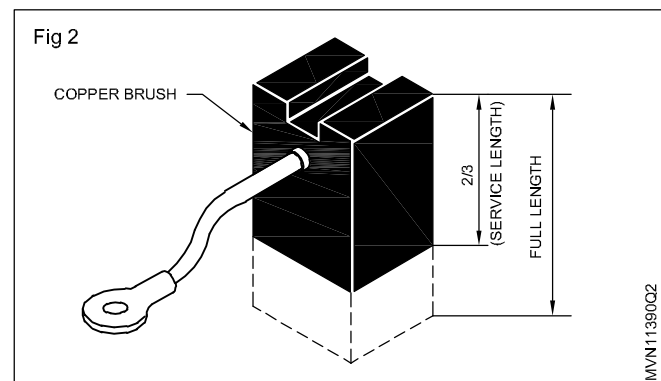


#### TASK 8: Check field coil

- 1 Open circuit and short circuit. (Fig 1) Using an ohmmeter or test lamp, check for continuity between the field coil and the insulated brushes. If continuity is not indicated, the insulation has failed. Replace the field coil. Check each field coil for short circuit with self body. If coil is short with body, replace it.



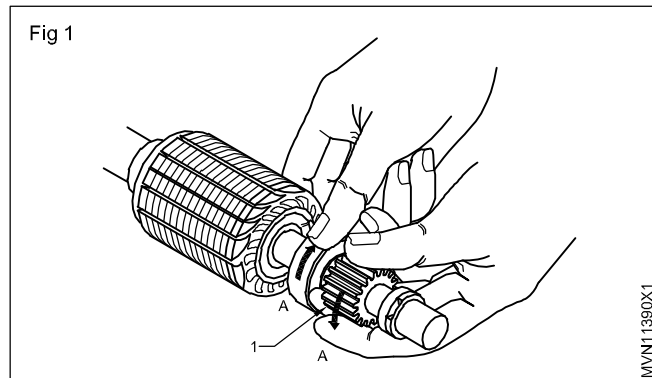
- 2 Measure the length of the copper brushes (Fig 2). If brushes are worn down to the service limit, replace them and self proper bedding.
- 3 Check the brush springs (1) for tension, rust or breakage. (Fig 2)
- 4 Check brush holder for insulation and earth (Fig 3)



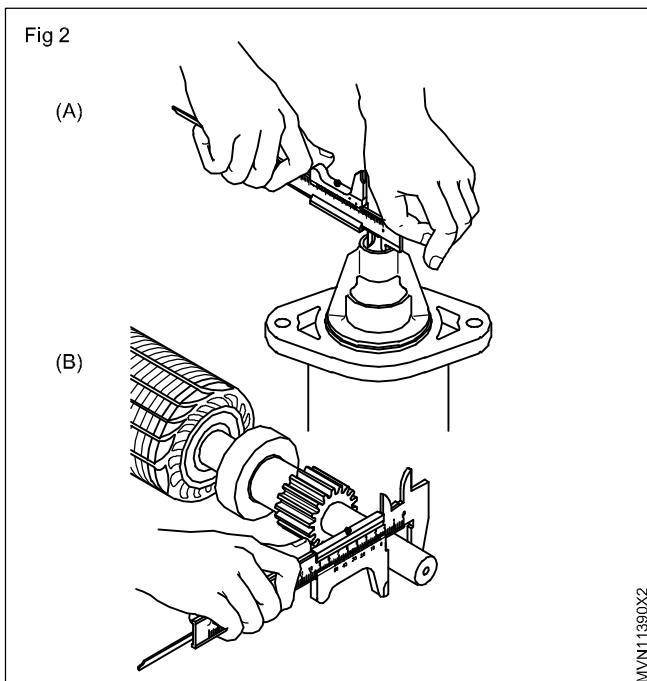


## TASK 9 : Over-running clutch

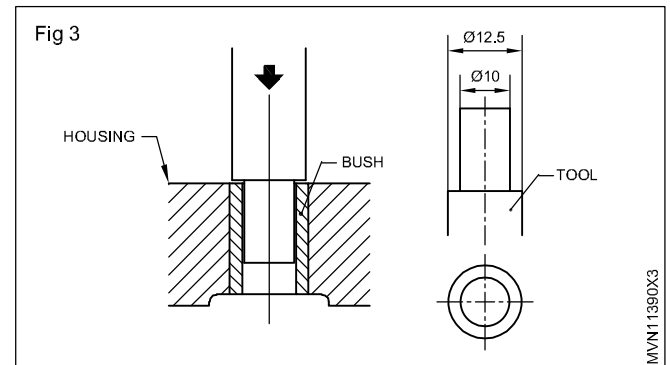
- 1 Inspect the one way clutch for free rotation in direction 'A', and locked up the other way round. (Fig 1)
- 2 Check the pinion(1) for abnormal wear and replace it as assembly if required.(Fig 1)



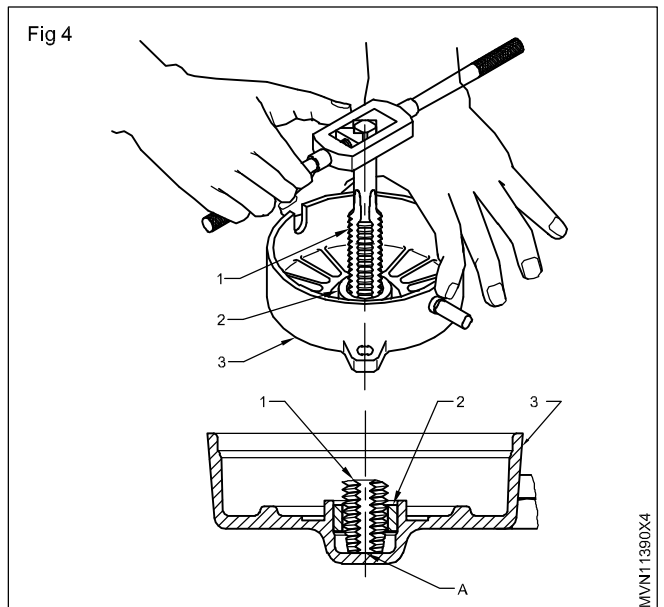
- 3 Armature shaft and drive end cover bush
- 4 Using a 10 mm rod, take out the bush cap.
- 5 Measure the internal diameter of the drive bush. (Fig. 2A)
- 6 Measure the outer diameter of the armature shaft at the drive end. (Fig.2B)
- 7 If clearance exceeds the limit, replace the bush.



- 8 Using the tool as shown in the (Fig 3), remove the bush from the drive housing on the arbour press.



- 9 Measure the outer diameter of armature shaft at the commutator end.
- 10 If clearance exceeds the limits, replace the bush. (Fig 4)

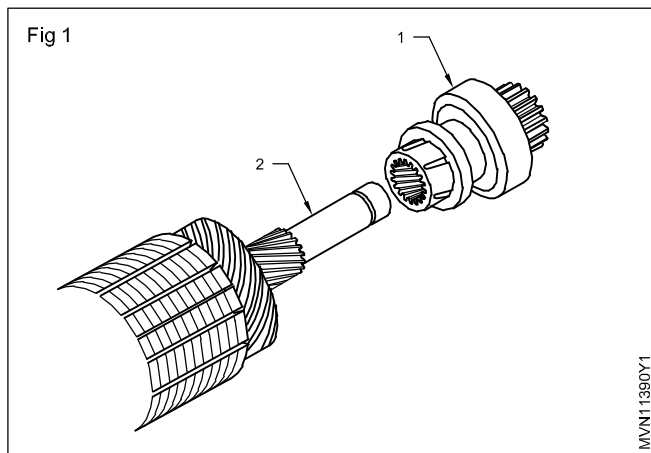


- 11 Thread in with a suitable tap (1) in the bush.
- 12 When the end of the tap reaches the bottom of the frame (3), tighten it further.
- 13 The bush will come out.
- 14 Fit new bushes as press fit on the arbour press.
- 15 Ream the inside surface of the bush to obtain oil clearance (0.05 mm) between the armature shaft and bush.

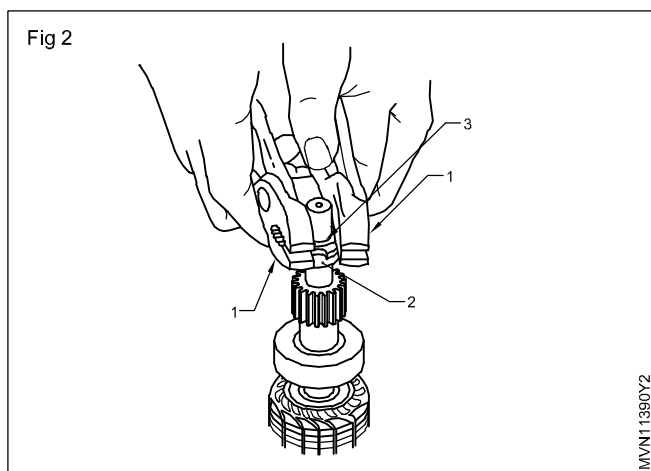
-----

## TASK 10: Assembly

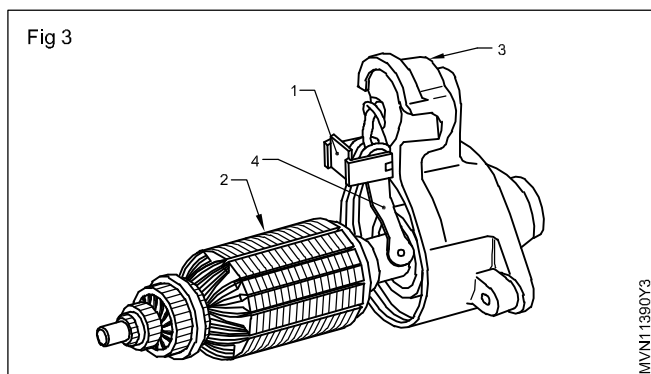
- 1 Apply grease and install the over-running clutch (1) to the armature shaft (2) as shown in the (Fig 1).



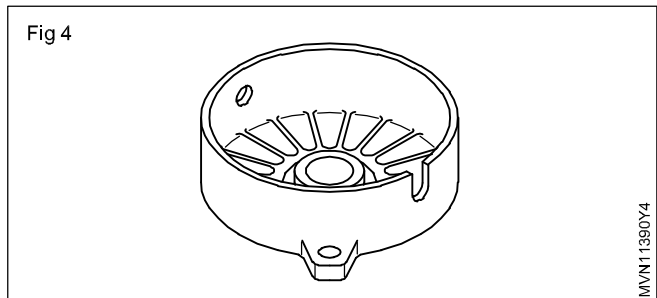
- 2 Insert the rear stop collar (2) in the armature shaft (Fig 2)



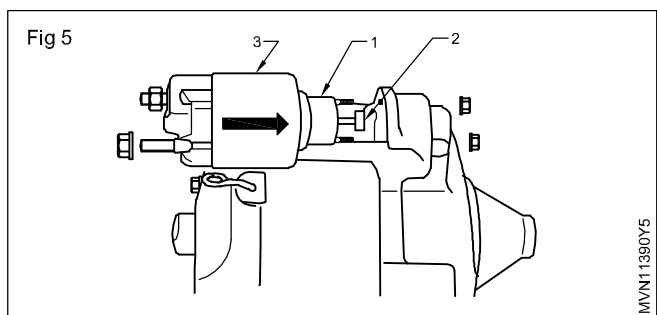
- 3 Insert a circlip in the armature shaft.
- 4 Insert the front stop collar (3) in the armature shaft.
- 5 Press by two pliers (1) as shown in the (Fig 3).
- 6 Apply grease to the drive lever (1). (Fig 3)
- 7 Combine it with the armature (2). (Fig 3)



- 8 Assemble them with the drive housing (3).
- 9 Install the yoke (4).
- 10 Install the brush holder.
- 11 Install 4 sets of brushes with the springs.
- 12 Install the brush holder cover.
- 13 Apply grease and install the commutator end housing as shown in the (Fig 4).



- 14 Replace the magnetic switch (3) and its boot (1) with a new one if required. (Fig. 5)
- 15 Apply grease to the plunger's (2) hook. (Fig 5)



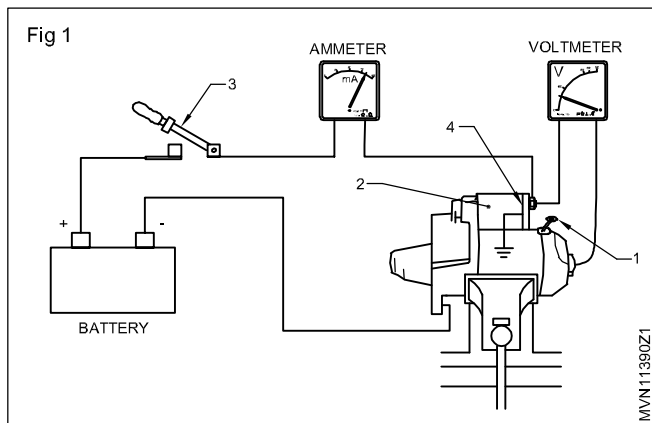
- 16 Hook the switch plunger with the drive lever. (Fig. 5)
- 17 Fasten the switch assembly with nuts.
- 18 Connect the lead wires.

-----

## TASK 11: Performance test and remounting

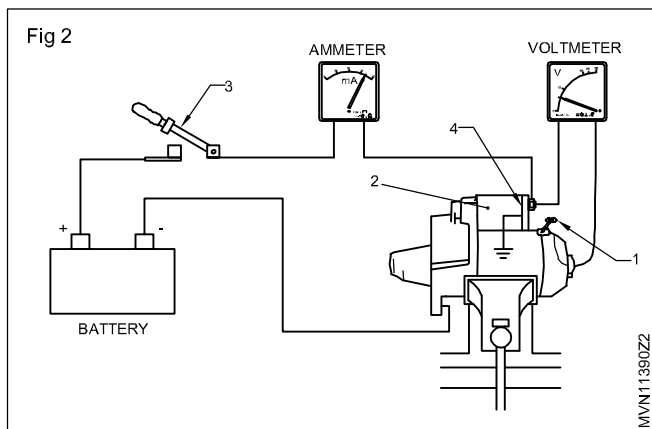
### 1 pull in test

- Hold starting motor in vice or stand.
- Disconnect field coil terminal (1) from solenoid switch.
- Connect the test lead, switch, Ammeter, Voltmeter, as shown in the Fig 1
- Operate switch (3) and check that the pinion (overrunning clutch) jumps out if does not rectify the fault.



### 2 Hold Test

Remove (Disconnect) negative lead from terminal (4).  
(Fig 2)

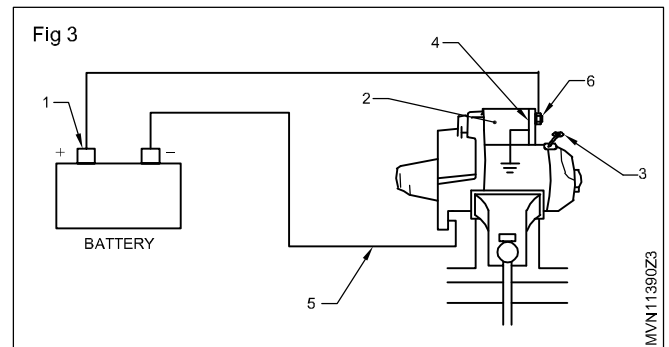


- Check that the pinion remains out, if not rectify the fault of magnetic switch. If necessary replace it.

### 3 Pinion return test

- Disconnect the switch (3).
- Check to make sure that the pinion returns inward quickly.

### 4 No Load performance test (Fig 3)



- Connect the battery leads (5) as shown in the Fig (30). From Battery Terminal (1) to solenoid switch terminal (6) second battery lead (5) to the starting motor.
- Operate solenoid switch (4) and check the starting motor runs without fail with the pinion moved out.

### 5 Place the starter motor in its position on the vehicle

### 6 Tighten the two mounting bolts.

### 7 Connect the battery cable and magnetic switch lead wires to the starter motor terminals.

### 8 Connect the negative lead to the battery.

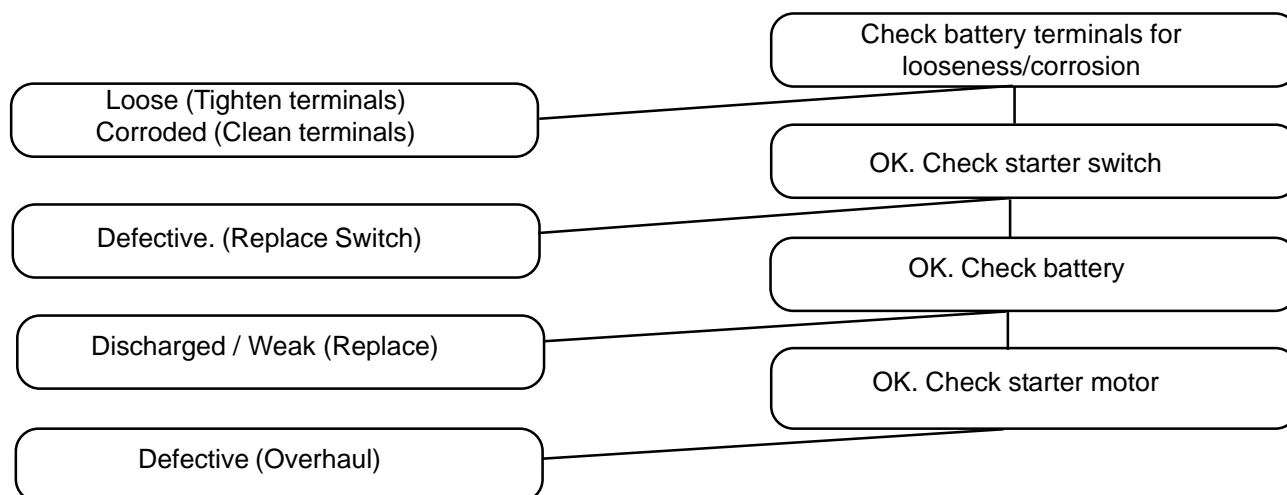
### 9 Start the vehicle and check the operation of starter motor.

-----

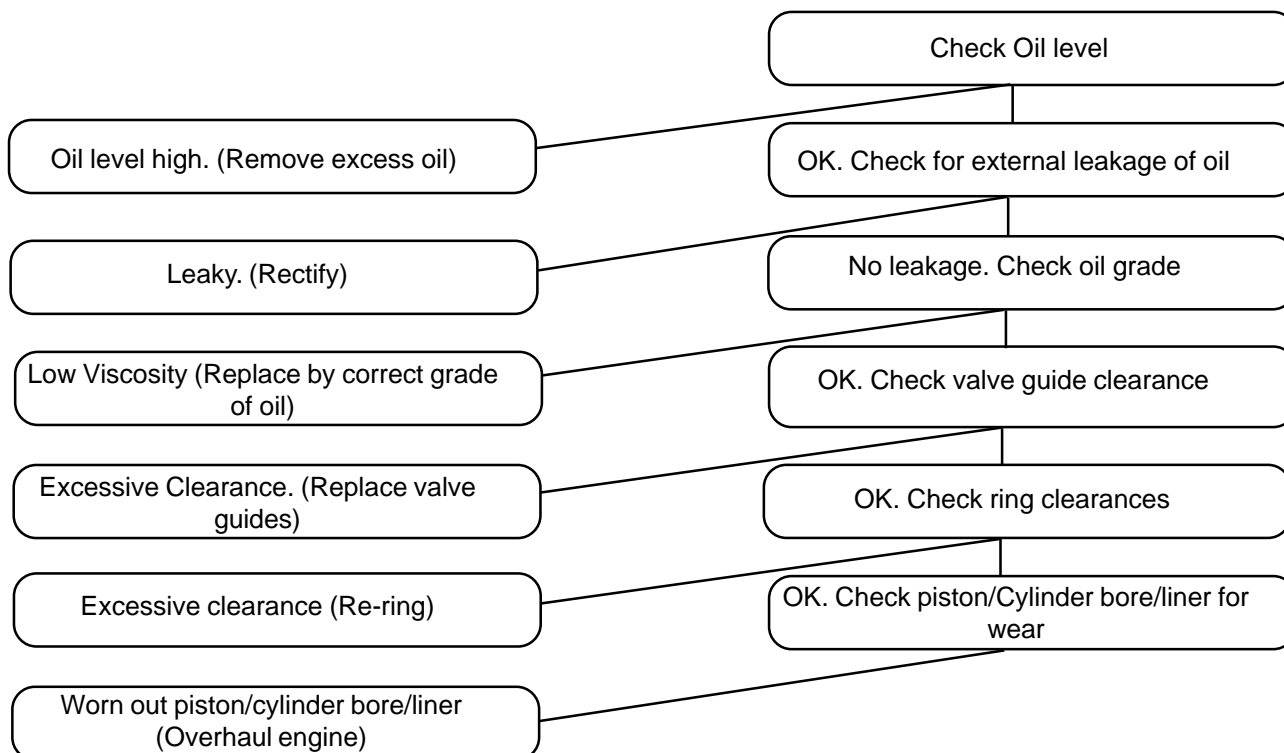
**Perform troubleshooting in diesel engine**

- Objectives:** At the end of this exercise you shall be able to
- rectify the causes for engine does not start (Mechanical)
  - rectify the causes for engine does not start (Electrical)
  - rectify the causes for high fuel consumption
  - rectify the causes for engine over heating
  - rectify the causes for low power generation
  - rectify the causes for excessive engine oil consumption
  - rectify the causes for low/high engine oil pressure
  - rectify the causes for engine noise.

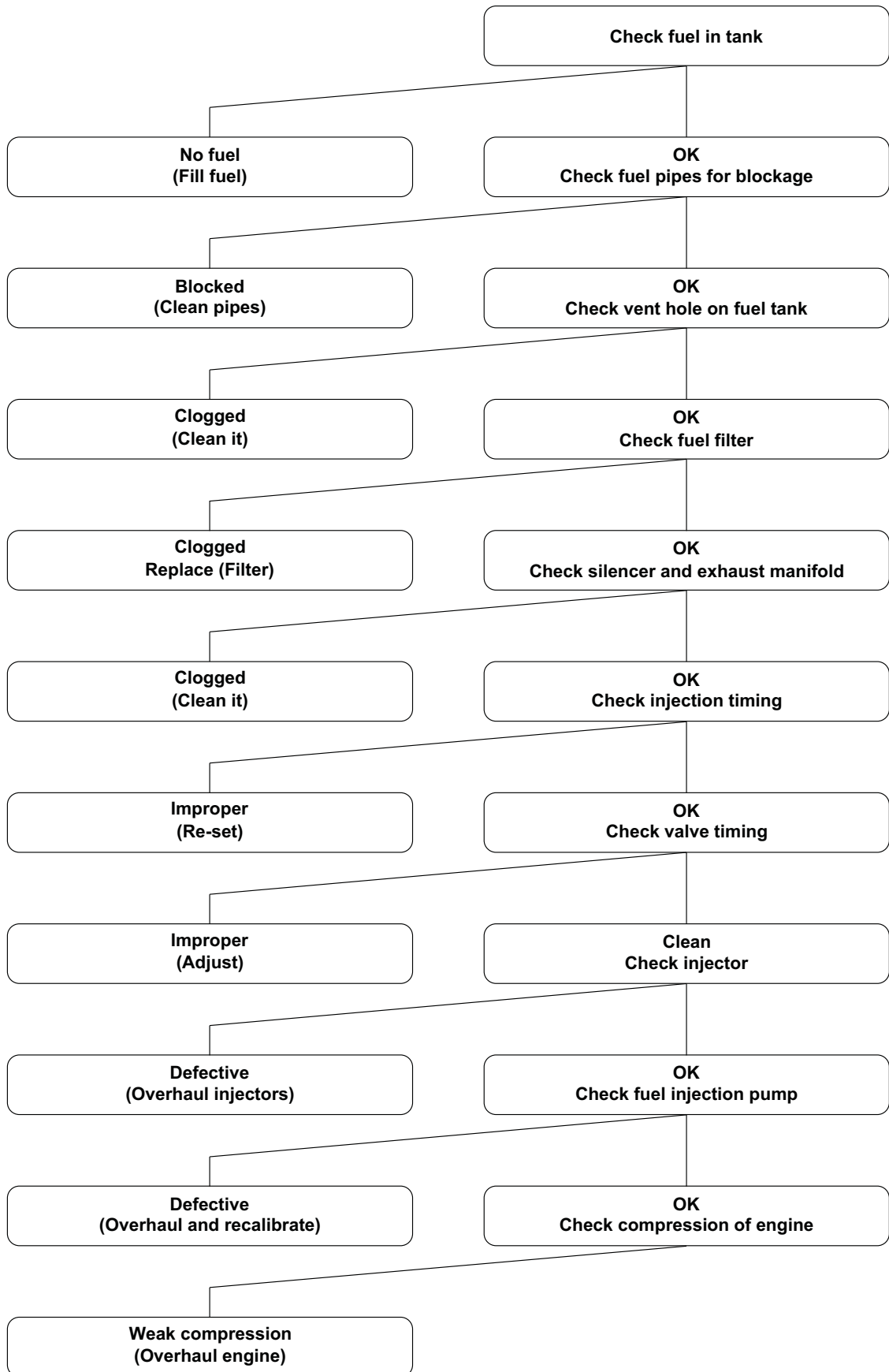
**(I) Engine does not start (electrical causes)**



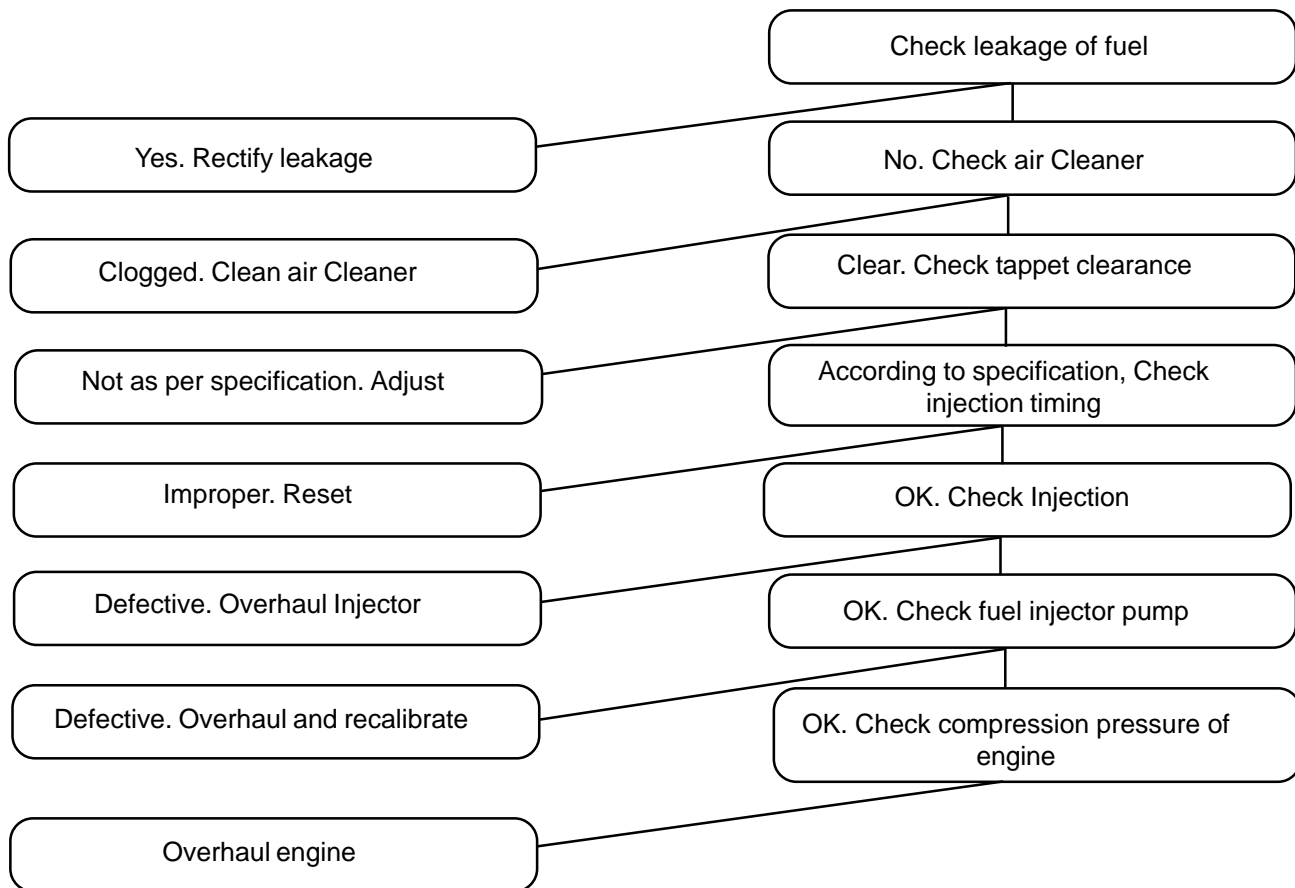
**(II) Excessive oil consumption**



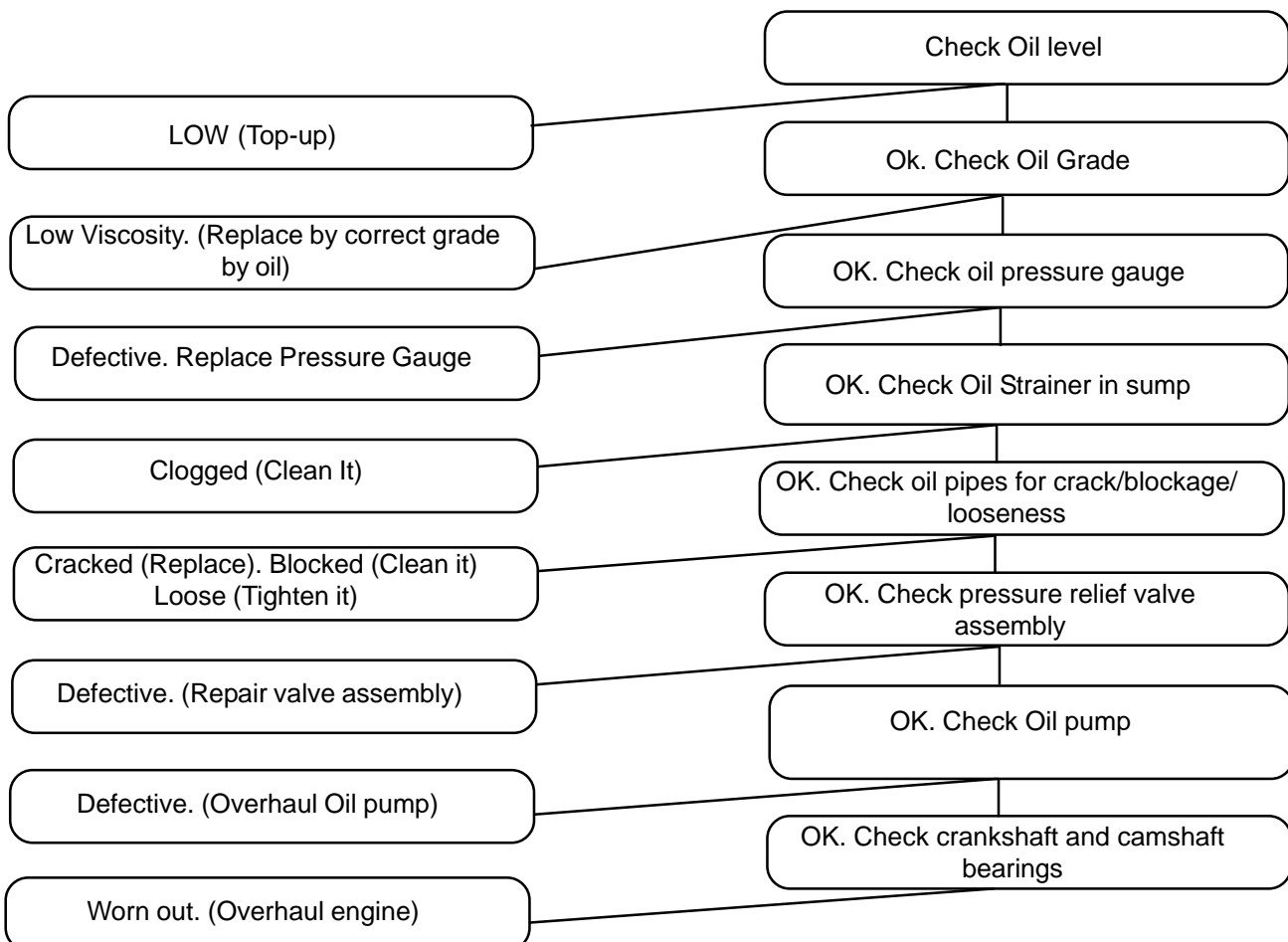
### (III) Engine does not start (mechanical causes)



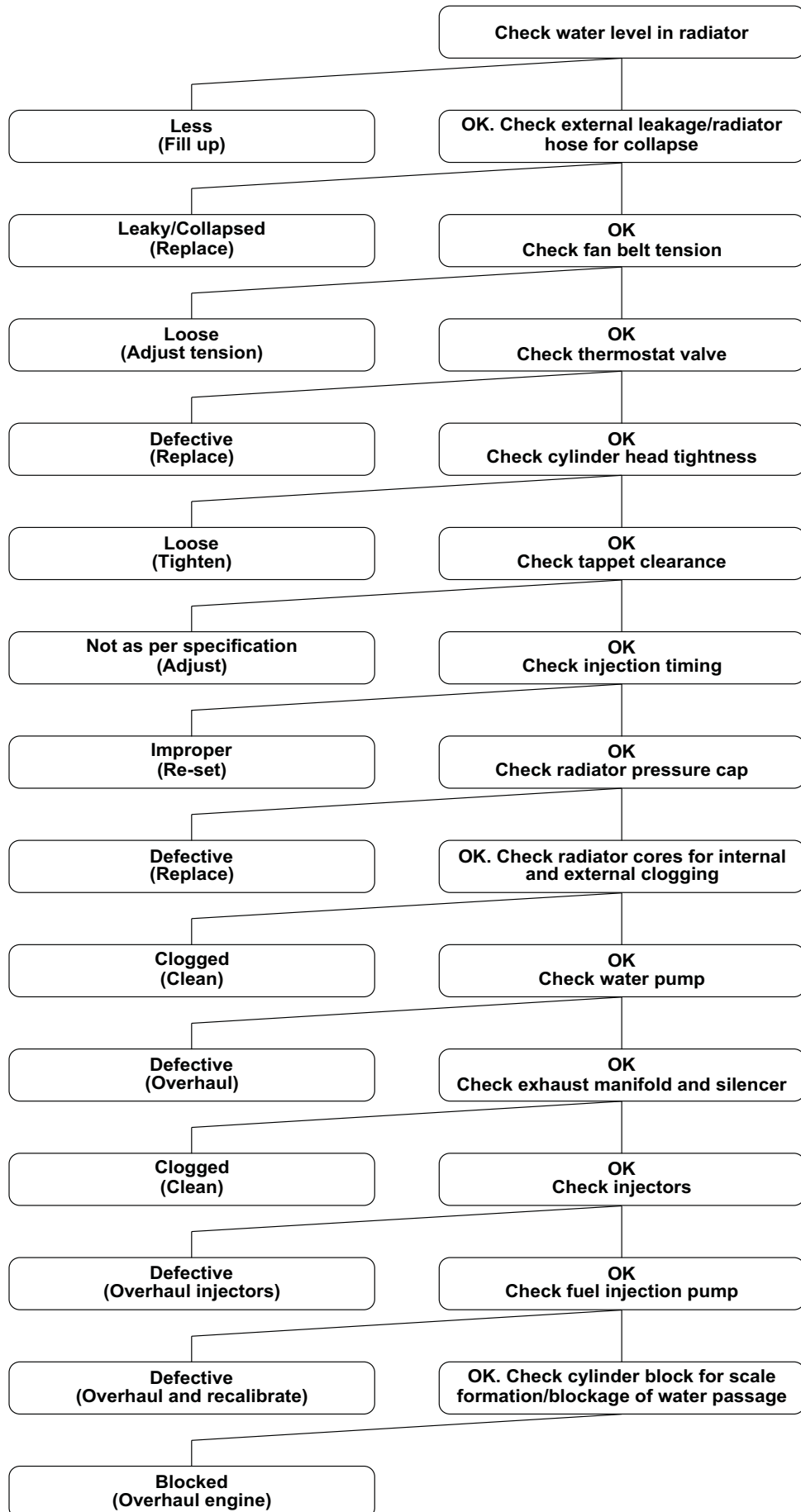
#### (IV) High fuel consumption (diesel)



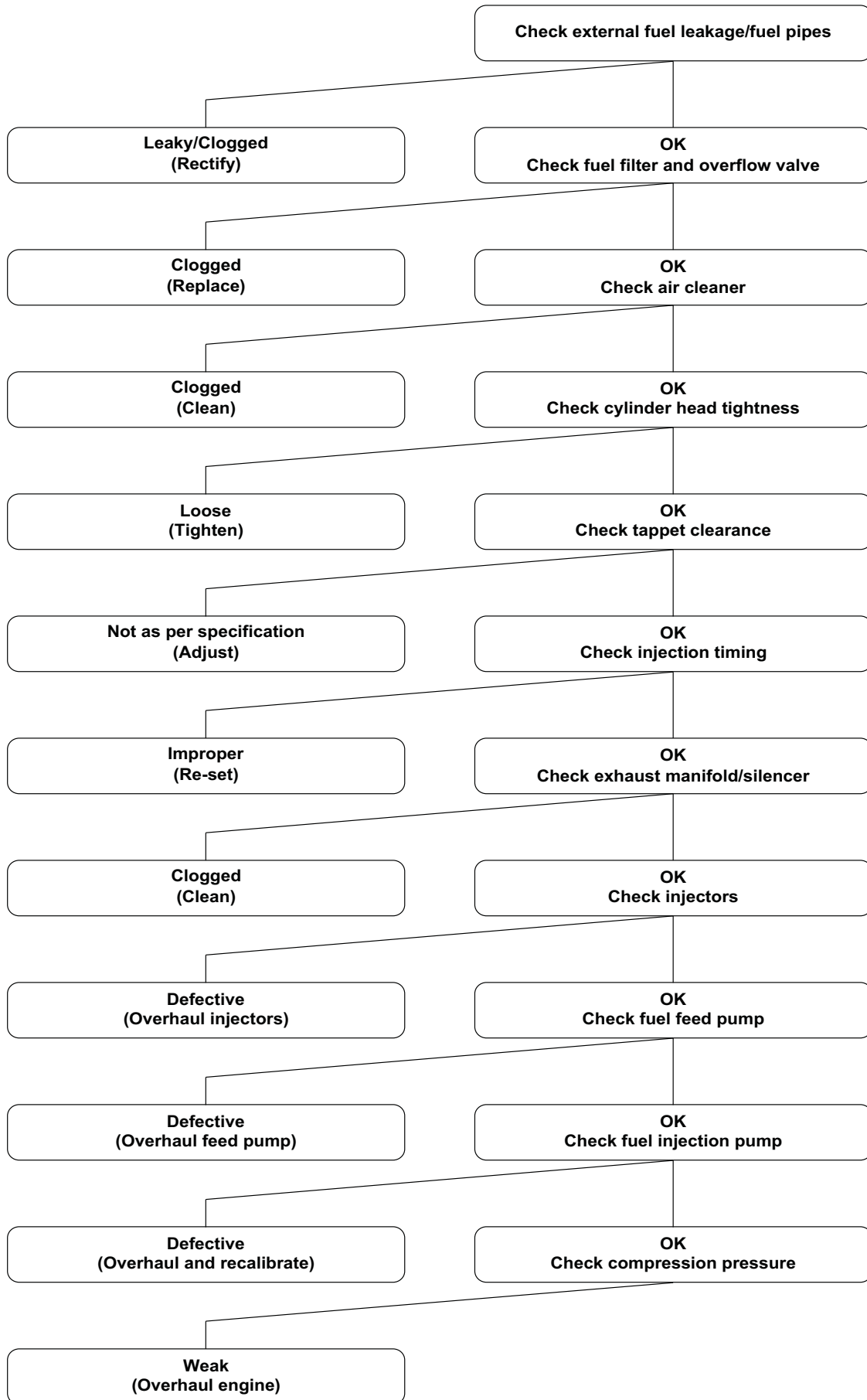
#### (V) Low Oil Pressure



## (VI) Engine over heating

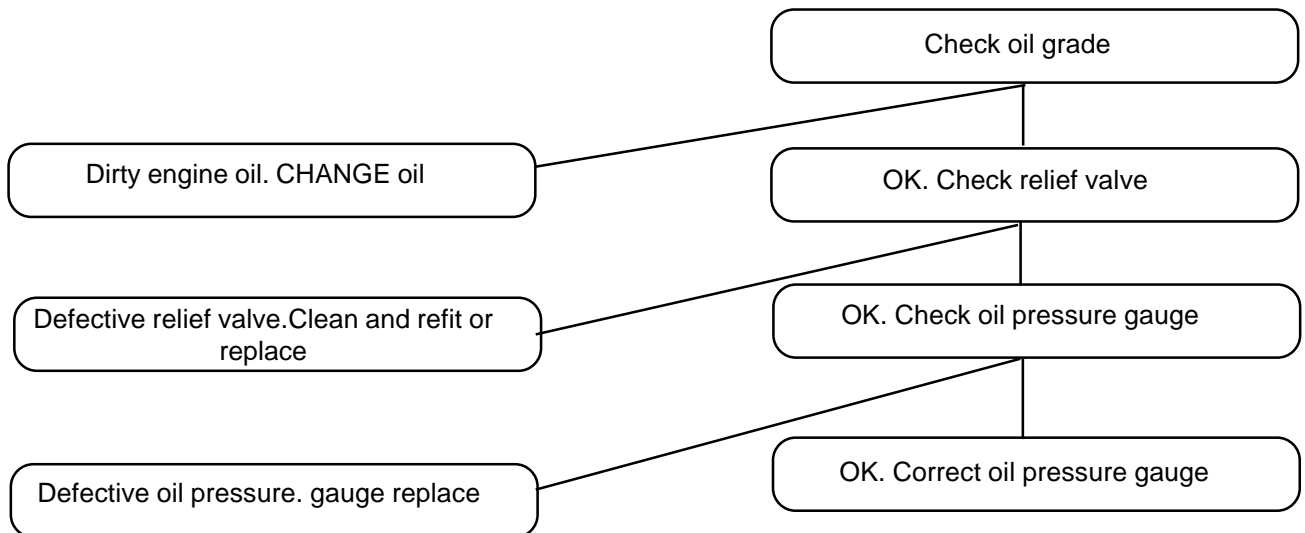


## (VII) Low power generation

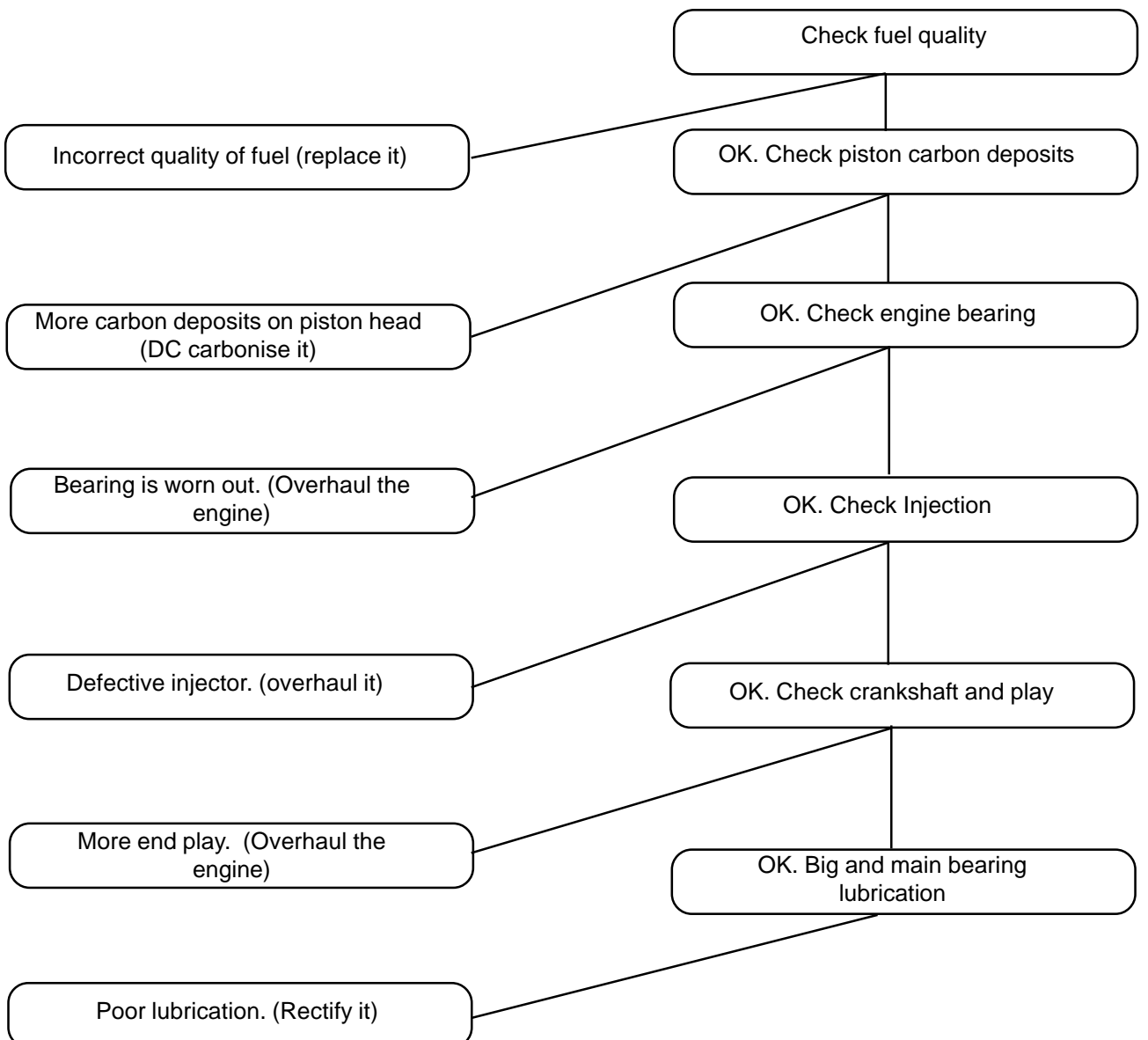




### (VIII) High oil pressure



### (IX) Engine noise



## Fault Finding chart - All Applications

	Engine Running Hot	Poor Transient Response	Smoke	Engine Lacks Power	Black Exhaust Smoke	Blue Exhaust Smoke	High Oil Consumption	Turbocharger Noisy	Cyclic Sound from the Turbocharger	Oil Leak from Compressor Seal	Oil Leak from Turbine Seal
<b>Dirty air cleaner</b> Clean or replace element according to manufacturer's recommendations	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			●	
<b>Restricted compressor intake duct</b> Remove restriction or replace damaged parts as required	●	●	●		●	●	●	●	●	●	
<b>Restricted air duct from compressor to intake manifold</b> Remove restriction or replace damaged parts as required	●	●		●	●			●			
<b>Restricted intake manifold</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and remove restriction	●	●		●	●			●			
<b>Air leak in feed from air cleaner to compressor</b> Replace seals, gaskets or tighten fasteners as required	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			
<b>Air leak in feed from compressor to intake manifold</b> Replace seals, gaskets or tighten fasteners as required	●		●	●	●	●	●	●			
<b>Air leak between intake manifold and engine</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and replace gaskets or tighten fasteners as required				●	●	●	●	●		●	
<b>Foreign object in exhaust manifold (from engine)</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and remove obstruction	●			●	●					●	
<b>Restricted exhaust system</b> Remove restriction or replace damaged parts as required		●	●	●	●			●			
<b>Exhaust manifold cracked, gaskets blown or missing</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and replace gaskets or damaged parts as required											

	Engine Running Hot	Poor Transient Response	Smoke	Engine Lacks Power	Black Exhaust Smoke	Blue Exhaust Smoke	High Oil Consumption	Turbocharger Noisy	Cyclic Sound from the Turbocharger	Oil Leak from Compressor Seal	Oil Leak from Turbine Seal
<b>Gas leak at turbine inlet/exhaust manifold joint</b> Replace gasket or tighten fasteners as required		●	●	●	●			●			
<b>Gas leak in ducting after turbine outlet</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and repair leak		●						●			
<b>Restricted turbocharger oil drain line</b> Remove restriction or replace damaged parts as required						●	●			●	●
<b>Restricted engine crankcase breather</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual, clear restriction						●	●			●	●
<b>Turbocharger bearing housing sludged or coked</b> Change engine oil and oil filter, overhaul or replace turbocharger as required		●	●	●	●						
<b>Fuel injection pump or fuel injectors incorrectly set</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and replace or adjust faulty components as required				●	●						
<b>Engine valve timing incorrect</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for correct settings and adjust as required				●	●	●	●			●	●
<b>Worn engine piston rings or liners</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and repair as required				●	●	●	●			●	●
<b>Burnt valves and/or pistons</b> Refer to engine manufacturer's manual and repair as required				●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
<b>Excessive dirt build up on compressor wheel and/or diffuser vanes</b> Contact your local approved dealer											
<b>Turbocharger damaged</b> Find and correct cause of failure, or replace turbo-charger as necessary				●	●	●	●	●		●	●

## Fault Finding chart - Wastegate Applications

	Engine Running Hot	Poor Transient Response	Smoke	Engine Lacks Power	Black Exhaust Smoke	Blue Exhaust Smoke	High Oil Consumption	Turbocharger Noisy	Cyclic Sound from the Turbocharger	Oil Leak from Compressor Seal	Oil Leak from Turbine Seal
<b>Failed actuator diaphragm</b> Replace using correct Actuator Service Kit	●							●			
<b>Seized waste gate valve (in turbine housing)</b> Free valve in accordance with details in the appropriate Holset publication replace complete turbine housing sub-assembly	●	●									
<b>Leaking actuator hose</b> Replace hose and clips	●							●			
<b>Waste gate mechanism set incorrectly</b> Contact your approved Holset agent for correct setting procedure	●	●	●	●				●			

---

## Project Work

---

**Objective:** At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **prepare project report of the project selected**
  - **Draw circuit diagram/layout diagram**
  - **list the specification of the material/component to be procured**
  - **list the plan of action to be executed**
  - **develop the project, complete and submit it.**
- 
- Select the project work and study the current working method
  - Find the innovative method to simplify the technical terms
  - Discuss with your team on your innovative method with respect to the existing method
  - Explain the economic benefit on your project
  - Prepare the engineering drawing on your selected project work
  - Prepare the estimate for your project work
  - Prepare the tools and materials required for your project work
  - Discuss with your project guide in broad base of your idea and innovation
  - Consult your instructor to help for your project work
  - Select the appropriate place to start the work
  - Start and complete the work stage by stage as your team expectation
  - Give demo on your innovative experiments and brief it is simplification and economic benefits with respect to the existing one.
- 

## Industrial Visit

---

- Explain the importance and usefulness of an industrial visit which should supplement their academic knowledge gained in the classroom
- Give awareness to the trainees about industrial visit, getting of prior permission from the principal
- Arrange the vehicle to take the trainees and keep the permission letter for the visit, to ensure smooth visit
- Instruct the trainees to maintain perfect discipline during the visit, creating good image to the institution
- Report to the reception section/Security section and submit the permission letter and request them to provide a guide
- Trainees follow the guide and carefully, listen and watch each sections, working procedure and employees activities.
- Trainees note the machineries and technology used in each section, the process followed, special opted etc.
- Consolidate all the data collected and discuss with your instructor, on technical doubts if any.
- Make out a report on the industrial visit incorporating what ever special operations observation by your, pay-out of machinery and production.
- Get it approved by your Instructor